StorageTek SL8500 Modular Library System

Systems Assurance Guide

Part Number: MT9229
May 2010
Revision: L

Submit comments about this document by clicking the Feedback [+] link at: http://docs.sun.com

StorageTek SL8500 Modular Library System - Systems Assurance Guide

MT9229 Revision: L

Copyright © 2004, 2010, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

This software and related documentation are provided under a license agreement containing restrictions on use and disclosure and are protected by intellectual property laws. Except as expressly permitted in your license agreement or allowed by law, you may not use, copy, reproduce, translate, broadcast, modify, license, transmit, distribute, exhibit, perform, publish, or display any part, in any form, or by any means. Reverse engineering, disassembly, or decompilation of this software, unless required by law for interoperability, is prohibited.

The information contained herein is subject to change without notice and is not warranted to be error-free. If you find any errors, please report them to us in writing.

If this is software or related software documentation that is delivered to the U.S. Government or anyone licensing it on behalf of the U.S. Government, the following notice is applicable:

U.S. GOVERNMENT RIGHTS Programs, software, databases, and related documentation and technical data delivered to U.S. Government customers are “commercial computer software” or “commercial technical data” pursuant to the applicable Federal Acquisition Regulation and agency-specific supplemental regulations. As such, the use, duplication, disclosure, modification, and adaptation shall be subject to the restrictions and license terms set forth in the applicable Government contract, and, to the extent applicable by the terms of the Government contract, the additional rights set forth in FAR 52.227-19, Commercial Computer Software License (December 2007). Oracle USA, Inc., 500 Oracle Parkway, Redwood City, CA 94065.

This software or hardware is developed for general use in a variety of information management applications. It is not developed or intended for use in any inherently dangerous applications, including applications which may create a risk of personal injury. If you use this software or hardware in dangerous applications, then you shall be responsible to take all appropriate fail-safe, backup, redundancy, and other measures to ensure the safe use. Oracle Corporation and its affiliates disclaim any liability for any damages caused by use of this software or hardware in dangerous applications.

Oracle is a registered trademark of Oracle Corporation and/or its affiliates. Oracle and Java are registered trademarks of Oracle and/or its affiliates. Other names may be trademarks of their respective owners.

AMD, Opteron, the AMD logo, and the AMD Opteron logo are trademarks or registered trademarks of Advanced Micro Devices. Intel and Intel Xeon are trademarks or registered trademarks of Intel Corporation. All SPARC trademarks are used under license and are trademarks or registered trademarks of SPARC International, Inc. UNIX is a registered trademark licensed through X/Open Company, Ltd.

This software or hardware and documentation may provide access to or information on content, products, and services from third parties. Oracle Corporation and its affiliates are not responsible for and expressly disclaim all warranties of any kind with respect to third-party content, products, and services. Oracle Corporation and its affiliates will not be responsible for any loss, costs, or damages incurred due to your access to or use of third-party content, products, or services.

Summary of Changes

Date	Revision	Description
May 2004	First (A)	Initial release
June 2004	Second (B)	Refer to this revision for the list of changes (artwork change)
July 2004	Third (C)	Refer to this revision for the list of changes (power updates)
October 2004	Fourth (D)	Refer to this revision for the list of changes (specifications)
May 2005	Fifth (E)	Refer to this revision for the list of changes (pass-thru port)
September 2005	Sixth (F)	Refer to this revision for the list of changes (handbots and drives)
March 2006	Seventh (G)	Refer to this revision for the list of changes (features)
September 2006	Eighth (H)	Refer to this revision for the list of changes (SPL, TCP/IP)
March 2007	Ninth (J)	Refer to this revision for the list of changes (SPL, Host connectivity)
January 2008	Tenth (K)	Refer to this revision for the list of changes.
January 2010	Tenth (KA)	Refer to this revision for the list of changes.
May 2010	Eleventh (L)	Changes to this revision include: • Updated with Oracle's branding • Removed reference to Sun Microsystems, Inc. (other than Web site references) • Added LTO4 and LTO5 information • Added T10000 B information • Updated ISV information • Added information for Redundant Electronics • Added information for the PUE Ethernet card/switch • Added Rack Stop Installation Tools • Updated with engineering comments • Updated marketing order numbers

Note: Change bars are included in this revision.

Contents

Summary of Changes iii

Contents v

Figures xiii

Tables xv

Preface xix
Terminology and Usage xix
Related Publications xix
Documentation, Support, and Training xx
Oracle Welcomes Your Comments xx

1: Introduction 1
Library Overview 1
Modules 2
Library Walls, Arrays, and Slots 4
Capacities 7
Expansion Modules and Library Capacities 7
RealTime Growth™ Capability 8
Capacity on Demand 8
Total Library Physical Capacities 9
Partitioned Physical Capacities 9
Reserved Slot Capacities 9
Power 10
N+1 Power Configuration 10
2N Power Configuration 11
AC Power Options 12
Delta or Wye? 12
Load Sharing DC Power Supplies 13
Power Connections 14
Electronics Control Module 16
HBC Card 16
HBT Card 16
HBK Card 16
Firmware 17
Audits and Initialization 18
Robotic Rail Assemblies 19
Cartridge Access Ports 20
Pass-thru Mechanisms 21

Elevators 21
Pass-thru Ports 22
Library Cameras 24
Accessory Racks 25
Operator Panels 26
Keypad 26
Remote Operator Panel 27
Touch Screen Operator Control Panel 27
Service Safety Door and Mode 28
Emergency Robotic Stop 28
Host Interface Connections 29
Host Connectivity Checklist 31
Library Complex 32
Dual TCP/IP 33
Partitioning 35
Multi-Host 36
Redundant Electronics 38
Library Management Software 41
Nearline Control Solution 42
Virtual Storage Manager 44
HTTP Server 44
Extended High Performance Data Mover 44
Expert Library Manager 45
Expert Performance Reporter 45
Enterprise Library Software 46
Automated Cartridge System Library Software 47
Client System Component 47
LibraryStation 48
Independent Software Vendors 48
Simple Network Management Protocol 49
Management Information Base 50
Tape Drives 51
Media and Labels 52
Safety Features 53
Emergency Robotic Stop 53
Door Switches 53
Smoke Detection 53
Service Mode 53
Interlocks 54
Mechanical Access Door Mechanism 54
Service Safety Door 54
Interior Lighting 54
Fire Suppression 54
Regulatory Agencies 55
Safety 55
Electromagnetic 55
Fiber-optic 56
Laser Product Label 56

Shock, Vibration, and Impact Tests 56

2: System Assurance 57
System Assurance Planning Meetings 57
Customer Team Member Contact Sheet 58
StorageTek Team Member Contact Sheet 59
Engagement Methodology 60

3: Site Survey Forms 61
Interoperability 61
System Configuration 62
Applications 64
MVS General Information 66
ACSLS General Information 67
Data Bases 68
Hardware Configurations 69
Library 69
Tape Drives 69
Tape Cartridges 70
Network 71
ESCON Directors 73
FICON Directors 74
Cables and Connectors 75
Planning for Content 76

4: Site Preparation. 79
Site Planning Checklist 79
Physical Planning 84
Environmental Requirements 85
Air Flow Requirements 86
Seismic or Earthquake Ratings 86
Accessory Racks 87
Tape Drive and Cartridge Specifications 88
AC Power Planning 89
Floor Template 90
Floor Requirements 91
Co-planar Requirements 92
Floor Cutouts 93
Cable Routes 94
Ceiling Requirements 96
Height Adjustments 97
Clearances 97
Drive and Electronics Module Planning 98
Electronic Module Planning 99
Tape Drive Cable Plan 100
Fire Suppression Planning 101
Pass-thru Port Planning 102
Obtaining a Password 103
Installing the Library Console 103

Preparing for the Installation 104
Personnel 104
Power 104
Floor 105
Installation Tools 105
Shipping Weights and Dimensions 108
Moving Unpacked Components 110
Adjustable Jacks 113
Moving Libraries 114
Remote Support 115
Service Delivery Platform 115
Technical Excellence Center 115

5: Ordering Information 117
Library Features and Locations 118
Physical Configuration 119
Hardware Options 120
HandBots 120
Service Safety Door 120
Cartridge Access Ports 120
Touch Screen Operator Control Panel 121
Accessory Racks 121
Redundant Electronics 121
Pass-thru Ports 122
WebCam Monitoring 122
Power 123
AC Power 123
HandBot Power Supplies 124
Tape Drive Power Supplies 125
Software Options 126
Activated Slot Capacity 126
Partitioning 127
Dual TCP/IP 127
Multi-Host TCP/IP 127
Add-ons 128
Library Management Software 128
Tape Drives 128
Cables 129
Ethernet Cables 129
Fiber-Optic Cables Work Sheet 130
ESCON Cables Work Sheet 131
Special Parts 132
Order Number Listing 133

A: Content Management 135
Dedicating Rails 136
Managing Cartridges 137
Grouping Tape Drives 138
Minimizing Elevator and PTP Activity 139

Cartridge Access Port Guidelines 140
Planning for Content 140

B: Software 143
From a Software Point of View 143
Structural Elements 143
Addressing 144
Tape Drives 145
Cartridge Access Ports 146
Elevators 147
Operational Differences 147
Host Software Component 147
Enterprise Library Software 148
Automated Cartridge System Library Software 149
ACSLS Differences with a SL8500 150
Upgrading ACSLS 150
AS/400 Configuration Requirements 150
VSM 151
Independent Software Vendors 151
Tier 1 and 2 Partners 151
Software Feature Codes 152
ACSLS Feature Codes 152
HSC Feature Codes 153

C: Tape Drives 155
T9840 Tape Drives 156
T9940 Tape Drives 156
T10000 Tape Drives 157
HP LTO Specifications 157
IBM LTO Specifications 158
Super DLT600 158
Dynamic World Wide Name 159
Arbitrated Loops 159
Tape Drive Comparisons 160

D: Media 161
Disclaimer 161
9840 Tape Cartridge 162
9940 Tape Cartridge 163
T10000 Tape Cartridges 164
LTO Tape Cartridges 165
Super DLT Tape Cartridges 166
VolSafe Cartridges 167
Barcode Labels 168
Barcode Standards 169
Media Domain and ID Labels 170
Media Label Requirements 170
Cleaning and Diagnostic Labels 172
Ordering Tape Cartridges and Labels 173

Volume Serial Numbers 173
9840 and 9940 Cartridge Labels 173
Media Comparisons 174

E: Electrical Conversions 175
Symbolic 175
To Find Volts, Watts, and Amperes 175
To Find Volt-Amperes (VA) 176
To Find Kilovolt-Amperes (kVA) 176
To Find Kilowatts 176
To Convert Between kW and kVA 177
To Find British Thermal Units From Electrical Values 177

F: Comparisons 179
Contrasts Between Libraries 179
Capacity Comparison with 9310 Libraries 181
Library Comparisons 182

G: TCP/IP Connectivity 187
Differences, Benefits, and Terminology 188
Differences 188
Benefits 189
Terminology 190
Network Addressing 191
Subnet Masks 192
Netmask Quick Reference 194
ACSLS and Dual TCP/IP Support 195
HSC and Dual TCP/IP Support 196
Multi-Homed Configuration on Two Subnets 197
CLI Commands 198
Multi-Homed Configuration with Different Subnets 199
CLI Commands 200
Single Interface Host with Multi-Homed SL8500 201
CLI Commands 202
Service Connection 203
Potential Problems 204
Shared Networks 204
Diagnosing TCP/IP Problems 205
Solutions 205
Gigabit Ethernet Connections 205

H: Partitioning 207
Purpose 207
Guidelines 208
Software and Firmware Requirements 210
Capacities 211
Tasks 212
Planning 213

I: Multi-Host Connectivity 221
Requirements 221
Library Management Software 222
Specifics for ACSLS 222
Specifics for HSC 222
Host Connections 222
Multi-Host Network Entries Work Sheet 223
Configuration Examples 224

J: Work Sheets 227
Host Selection Checklist 228
Network Entries Work Sheet 229
Multi-Host Network Entries Work Sheet 230

Glossary 239

Index 245

Figures

Figure 1. SL8500 Modular Library System 1
Figure 2. Library Modules 2
Figure 3. Panel Numbering 6
Figure 4. Expansion Modules and Capacities 7
Figure 5. N+1 Power Configuration 10
Figure 6. 2N Power Configuration (Optional Feature) 11
Figure 7. Delta or Wye? 14
Figure 8. HandBot and Rail Assembly 19
Figure 9. Cartridge Access Port 20
Figure 10. Elevators 21
Figure 11. Pass-thru Port Mechanism 22
Figure 12. Library Cameras 24
Figure 13. Keypad 26
Figure 14. Touch Screen Operator Control Panel 27
Figure 15. Service Safety Door 28
Figure 16. Emergency Robotic Stop Switch 28
Figure 17. TCP/IP Connections 29
Figure 18. Example: A Nearline Control Solution using HSC, ExLM, and VSM Products . . 42
Figure 19. ACSLS Example 47
Figure 20. SNMP Block Diagram 49
Figure 21. Management Information Base Hierarchy 50
Figure 22. Content Management Plan 76
Figure 23. Accessory Rack Power 87
Figure 24. Drive Tray 88
Figure 25. PDU Connections 89
Figure 26. Terminal Block 89
Figure 27. Floor Planning Template 90
Figure 28. Weight Distribution Pad Locations 91
Figure 29. Co-planar – Floor Slope Diagram 92
Figure 30. Floor Cutouts for Power and Signal Cables 93
Figure 31. Cabling Routing 94
Figure 32. Internal Conduit and Cable Routing 95
Figure 33. Upper Module Installation 96
Figure 34. Minimum and Maximum Height Specifications 97
Figure 35. Drive and Electronics Module Planning 98

Figure 36. Electronic Control Module 99
Figure 37. Cabling Tape Drives (Example, figure is not exact) 100
Figure 38. Fire Suppression Ceiling Access 101
Figure 39. Pass-thru Port Planning Example 102
Figure 40. Rack Stops Per Library 107
Figure 41. Adjustable Jack 113
Figure 42. Jack Positioning 113
Figure 43. Ordering Process 117
Figure 44. Features and Their Locations 118
Figure 45. Fiber Optic Duplex Connectors 130
Figure 46. ESCON Cable Connectors 131
Figure 47. Content Management Example 135
Figure 48. Content Management Work Sheets 141
Figure 49. 9840 Tape Cartridge 162
Figure 50. 9940 Tape Cartridge 163
Figure 51. Tape Cartridge Types 164
Figure 52. LTO Tape Cartridge 165
Figure 53. DLT and SDLT Tape Cartridges 166
Figure 54. VolSafe/WORM Tape Cartridge Example 167
Figure 55. Barcode Label Examples 168
Figure 56. Barcode Design 169
Figure 57. Label Examples 171
Figure 58. Cleaning and Diagnostic Label Examples 172
Figure 59. Multi-Homed Host, Multi-Homed SL8500 on Two Subnets 197
Figure 60. Multi-Homed Host, Multi-Homed SL8500, Interfaces on Different Subnets . . . 199
Figure 61. Single Interface Host and Multi-Homed SL8500 201
Figure 62. Dual TCP/IP Port 2A Service Connection 203
Figure 63. Partition Planning and Capacities 211
Figure 64. Partition Planning Example 214
Figure 65. Base Library Partition Planning 215
Figure 66. One Expansion Module Partition Planning 216
Figure 67. Two Expansion Modules Partition Planning 217
Figure 68. Three Expansion Modules Partition Planning 218
Figure 69. Four Expansion Modules Partition Planning 219
Figure 70. Five Expansion Modules Partition Planning 220
Figure 74. Content Management Work Sheet 231
Figure 75. Partition Planning—Base Library 232
Figure 76. Partition Planning—One Expansion Module 233
Figure 77. Partition Planning—Two Expansion Modules 234
Figure 78. Partition Planning—Three Expansion Modules 235
Figure 79. Partition Planning—Four Expansion Modules 236
Figure 80. Partition Planning—Five Expansion Modules 237

Tables

Table 1. Module Descriptions . . . 3
Table 2. Addressing Descriptions . . . 5
Table 3. Physical Data Cartridge Capacity . . . 9
Table 4. Partitioned Capacities . . . 9
Table 5. Reserved Slots . . . 9
Table 6. Load Sharing Power Supplies . . . 13
Table 7. Hubbell Connectors and Plugs (IEC 309) . . . 15
Table 8. Circuit Breaker Ratings . . . 15
Table 9. Accessory Rack Installation Guidelines . . . 25
Table 10. Library Console Remote Operator Panel Requirements . . . 27
Table 11. Host Connection Checklist and Requirements . . . 31
Table 12. Library Software Compatibility Matrix . . . 41
Table 13. HSC Large Library Support . . . 43
Table 14. Independent Software Vendors . . . 48
Table 15. Supported Tape Drives . . . 51
Table 16. Media . . . 52
Table 17. System Assurance Task Checklist . . . 57
Table 18. Engagement Methodology . . . 60
Table 19. Questions About the Customers Operating Systems . . . 62
Table 20. System Configuration . . . 63
Table 21. Questions About the Customers Applications . . . 64
Table 22. Backup and Archive Software . . . 65
Table 23. Network Management Software . . . 65
Table 24. Library Attachment Software . . . 65
Table 25. MVS Information . . . 66
Table 26. ACSLS Information . . . 67
Table 27. Questions About the Customers Data Base . . . 68
Table 28. Existing Libraries . . . 69
Table 29. Tape Drive Types . . . 69
Table 30. Existing Tape Drives . . . 70
Table 31. Existing Tape Cartridges . . . 70
Table 32. Fibre Channel Switches . . . 71
Table 33. Ethernet Hubs and Switches . . . 71
Table 34. Fibre Channel Switch Connections . . . 72
Table 35. ESCON Directors . . . 73

Table 36. FICON Director Worksheet 74
Table 37. Cables and Connectors 75
Table 38. Site Planning Checklist 79
Table 39. Library Weights and Measures 84
Table 40. Environmental Specifications 85
Table 41. Environmental Definitions 85
Table 42. Air Flow Requirements 86
Table 43. Rack Guidelines 87
Table 44. Drive Tray Weights and Measures 88
Table 45. Tape Drive Weights 88
Table 46. Cartridge Tape Weights 88
Table 47. Overhead Clearances 97
Table 48. Installation Tools 106
Table 49. Shipping Pallets – Weights and Dimensions 108
Table 50. Total Pallet Weights for a Selected Library Configuration 109
Table 51. Component Weights and Dimensions 109
Table 52. Unpacked Components 110
Table 53. Base Library Order Numbers – Required 119
Table 54. Additional Library Module Order Numbers – Required 119
Table 55. Expansion Module Order Numbers – Optional 119
Table 56. Rail Order Numbers – Required 119
Table 57. HandBot Order Numbers 120
Table 58. Service Safety Door Order Numbers 120
Table 59. Cartridge Access Port Order Numbers 120
Table 60. Touch Screen Operator Panel Order Numbers 121
Table 61. Accessory Rack Order Numbers 121
Table 62. Redundant Electronics Order Numbers 121
Table 63. Pass-thru Port Order Numbers 122
Table 64. WebCam Order Numbers 122
Table 65. Power Distribution Order Numbers – Required 123
Table 66. HandBot Power Supply Order Numbers 124
Table 67. Tape Drive Power Supply Order Numbers 125
Table 68. Slot Upgrade Order Numbers 126
Table 69. Tape Drive Power Supply Order Numbers 127
Table 70. Tape Drive Power Supply Order Numbers 127
Table 71. Tape Drive Power Supply Order Numbers 127
Table 72. Ethernet Cables 129
Table 73. Two Gigabit Fiber-Optic Cables 130
Table 74. ESCON Cable Part Numbers 131
Table 75. Special Parts Order Numbers 132
Table 76. Order Number Listing 133
Table 77. Slot Addressing 144

Table 78. Software Drive Numbering 145
Table 79. Physical Drive Numbering 145
Table 80. ACSLS Requirements 149
Table 81. Supported Independent Software Vendors 151
Table 82. Tier 1 and Tier 2 Partners 151
Table 83. ACSLS Feature Code Work Sheet 152
Table 84. HSC Feature Codes 153
Table 85. Supported Tape Drives and Microcode Levels 155
Table 86. Tape Drive Comparison 160
Table 87. Media Domain and Media ID Designators 171
Table 88. EDP Trioptic Support 173
Table 89. Old versus New Terminology 179
Table 90. Comparisons Between PowderHorn and the SL8500 Library 182
Table 91. Power Requirement Comparisons 185
Table 92. Network IP Classes and Address Ranges 192
Table 93. Netmask Quick Reference 194
Table 94. Partitioned Capacities 211
Table 95. Steps and Tasks for Partitioning 212
Table 96. HSC LMU Path and Address Parameters 222
Table 97. Host Selection Checklist and Requirements 228

Preface

The system assurance process is the exchange of information among team members to ensure that no aspects of the sale, order, or installation of Oracle's StorageTek SL8500 Modular Library System are overlooked. This process promotes an error-free installation and contributes to the overall customer satisfaction.

This *System Assurance Guide* is intended for account executives, marketing and sales representatives, system engineers, professional services, installation coordinators, service representatives, plus anyone interested in information about the SL8500 modular library system.

Important:
This guide is intended to be *shared* with customers that are interested in planning for, purchasing of, and using the SL8500 modular library system.

Terminology and Usage

The following terminology is used throughout this document and mean the same unless otherwise noted:

- SL8500 modular library system, SL8500 library, SL8500, or just "library"
- Media, cartridges, tape cartridges, volumes, tape volumes, or just "tapes"
- Tape drives, or just "drives"
- Rail (hardware) and library storage module or LSM (software)
- Slots (hardware) and cells (software)
- Library complex (hardware) and automated cartridge system ACS (software). An ACS can contain multiple libraries within a complex.

Related Publications

The following publications contain more information about the installation and using the library.

Document Title	Part Number
SL8500 Modular Library System Installation Manual	96138
SL8500 Modular Library System User's Guide	96154
SL8500 Modular Library System Best Practices Guide	TM0017
SL8500 Modular Library System Customer Orientation Checklist	TM 0005
SL8500 Modular Library System Optimization Checklist	TT0017*x*

Documentation, Support, and Training

Function	URL	Description
Web Site	http://www.oracle.com/index.html	General information and links.
Documentation Customer: Employee: Partner:	 http://docs.sun.com/ http://docs.sfbay.sun.com/ https://spe.sun.com/spx/control/Login	Search for technical documentation. Download PDF/HTML documents. Order printed documents.
Downloads Customer: Employee:	 http://www.sun.com/download/index.jsp http://dlrequest.sfbay.sun.com:88/usr/login	Download firmware and graphical user interfaces, patches, and features.
Support	http://www.oracle.com/us/support/index.htm	Obtain and escalate support.
Training	http://www.oracle.com/education/training_formats.html	Access training resources. Learn about Oracle courses.
Online Account	https://reg.sun.com/register	Register for an Online Account.

Oracle Welcomes Your Comments

Oracle is interested in improving its documentation and welcomes your comments. Submit your comments by clicking the Feedback [+] link at:

http://docs.sun.com

Please include the title and part number of your document with your feedback:

SL8500 Modular Library System - Systems Assurance Guide
PN: MT9229, Revision L

Introduction

1

This chapter provides an overview of Oracle's StorageTek SL8500 Modular Library System.

Library Overview

Figure 1 shows an example of the SL8500 library, which stands 2.37 m (7.76 ft) tall, 1.7 m (5.6 ft) wide, and from 2.76 m (9.1 ft) to 7.5 m (24.7 ft) deep.

Figure 1. SL8500 Modular Library System

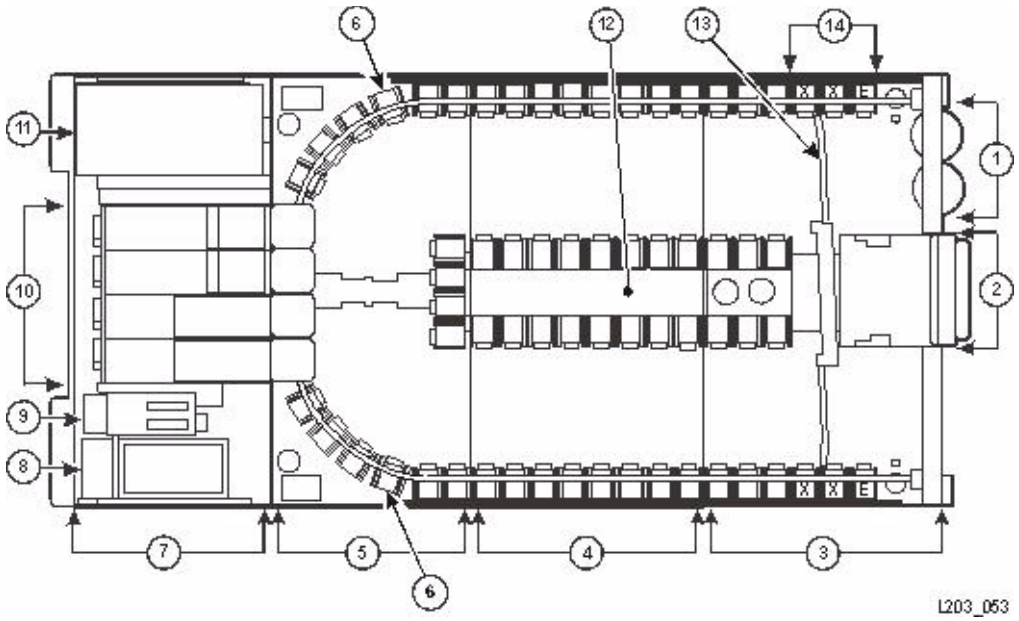
The basic library has slots for 1,448 cartridges and depending on the model and features selected, one SL8500 library can store up to 10,088 tape cartridges with 64 tape drives.

Currently, a Library Complex of 10 SL8500 libraries that connect together using pass-thru ports (PTPs), can store over 100,000 customer usable data tape cartridges with up to 640 tape drives.

Modules

Figure 2 shows a view of the library with an example of each type of module and the location of certain components.

Figure 2. Library Modules



1. "Cartridge Access Ports" on page 20
2. Facade—may contain up to 2 operator panels (Keypad and the Library Console)
   The two elevators (vertical pass-thru) are located behind the operator panels).
3. Customer Interface Module (CIM)—only 1 module per library. See "Capacities" on page 7
4. Storage Expansion Modules (SEM)—up to 5 modules per library. See "Capacities" on page 7
5. Robotics Interface Module (RIM)—only 1 module per library. See "Capacities" on page 7
6. Pass-thru Ports—columns 6 and –6. See "Pass-thru Ports" on page 22
7. Drive and Electronics Module (DEM)——only 1 module per library
8. AC Power and Electronics Control Modules—can have two modules per library
9. DC Power supplies—can have up to 24 modules per library
10. Tape drive bay—holds up to 64 tape drives
11. Accessory racks—may have up to 4 racks that can hold servers, network switches, and the SDP
12. Inner wall cartridge slots
13. "Service Safety Door and Mode" on page 28
14. "Reserved Slot Capacities" on page 9
    - E = End stop
    - X = Diagnostic cartridges

Table 1. Module Descriptions

Module	Description
Customer Interface Module	The customer interface module is the first module in the library and measures 95.25 cm (37.5 in.) deep. This module contains: • 648 data cartridge slots (see "Library Walls, Arrays, and Slots" on page 4) • 198 slots for diagnostic and cleaning cartridges (see "Reserved Slot Capacities" on page 9) • 24 end slots (eight 3-slot arrays) for targeting and drop-off cells (see "Reserved Slot Capacities" on page 9) • One LED display and keypad (see "Keypad" on page 26) • Touch screen operator control panel (*optional* feature) (see "Touch Screen Operator Control Panel" on page 27) • Two "Load Sharing DC Power Supplies" on page 13 • One service safety door for maintenance activity (*optional* feature) • One standard "Cartridge Access Ports" on page 20 • Two elevator assemblies that can transfer up to four cartridges from one rail to another.
Storage Expansion Modules	The SL8500 library can accommodate up to *five* storage expansion modules (callout #4). Each expansion module: • Increases the depth of the library by 95.25 cm (37.5 in.) (see "Physical Planning" on page 84) • Adds 1,728 customer usable *data* cartridge slots per expansion module. (see "Library Walls, Arrays, and Slots" on page 4)
Robotics Interface Module	The robotics interface module (callout #5) is the next module and measures 76.2 cm (30 in.) deep. This module contains: • 800 data cartridge slots (see "Library Walls, Arrays, and Slots" on page 4) • Pass-thru ports (see "Pass-thru Ports" on page 22) • One of two robotic configurations (see "Robotic Rail Assemblies" on page 19)
Drive and Electronics Module	The drive and electronics module (callout #7) is the last module in the library and measures 76.2 cm (30 in.) deep. This module contains the: • AC power distribution units (see "Power" on page 10) • "Electronics Control Module" on page 16 • "Load Sharing DC Power Supplies" on page 13 • "Accessory Racks" on page 25 • Slots for 1 to 64 tape drives (see "Tape Drives" on page 51)

Library Walls, Arrays, and Slots

The library has two types of walls with arrays and slots that hold cartridges:

- *Inner* walls—consist of 14-slot arrays
- *Outer* walls—consist of 13-slot arrays with space for the robotic rails

In addition to the 13- and 14-slot arrays, there are:

- 8-slot arrays in the pass-thru port panels
- 8-slot arrays underneath the stop brackets for the service safety door
- 4-slot arrays on the elevators and pass-thru ports
- 3-slot arrays (end stops) at the ends of each HandBot rail

Each array has *two targets* centered vertically with allowances that accommodate the different sizes and depths of the tape cartridges.

Cartridges are placed in slots and lie flat, hub-side down, parallel to the floor. To prevent slippage, cartridges are held within their slots by retainer clips.

Aisle space between the inner and outer walls is limited to 0.5 m (18 in.). Because of this, entry into the library should be limited.

Address Scheme

Cartridge locations in previous libraries were: ACS, Library, *Panel*, *Row*, and *Column* (HLI-PRC). Cartridge slot designations in an SL8500 library uses five parameters: Library, Rail, Column, Side, Row (L,R,C,S,W):

1. **Library:** Is the number of that library or within a library complex
2. **Rail:** Rails are numbered top down from 1 – 4 with rail 1 being on top.
   - Each rail is considered a separate library storage module (LSM).
   - LSMs are numbered 0 – 3 (top down).
3. **Column:** Indicates the *horizontal* location of a tape cartridge referenced from the center of the drive bay at the rear of the library forward, where:
   - +1 is just *right* of the center of the drive bays and
   - -1 is just to the *left* of the drive bays

   Column numbering is consecutive—the first columns that contain tape cartridges are +3 and -3 and continue forward to the front access doors.
4. **Side:** Indicates the inner and outer walls, or left and right HandBots in a redundant configuration.

Walls:	Outer wall = 1	Inner wall = 2
HandBots:	Left HandBot = 1	Right HandBot = 2

5. **Row:** Is the *vertical* location of a tape cartridge and are consecutively numbered from the top (1) down (13 outer wall and 14 inner wall).

Understanding the Address Scheme

There are differences in the addresses of the SL8500 and other libraries.

- The SL8500 is *one's*-based (1) and uses negative numbers.
- Other libraries use a *zero*-based (0) and *no* negative numbers.
- The SL8500 uses *five* parameters: library, rail, column, side, and row.
- Other libraries use: ACS, LSM, panel, row, and column (HLI–PRC).

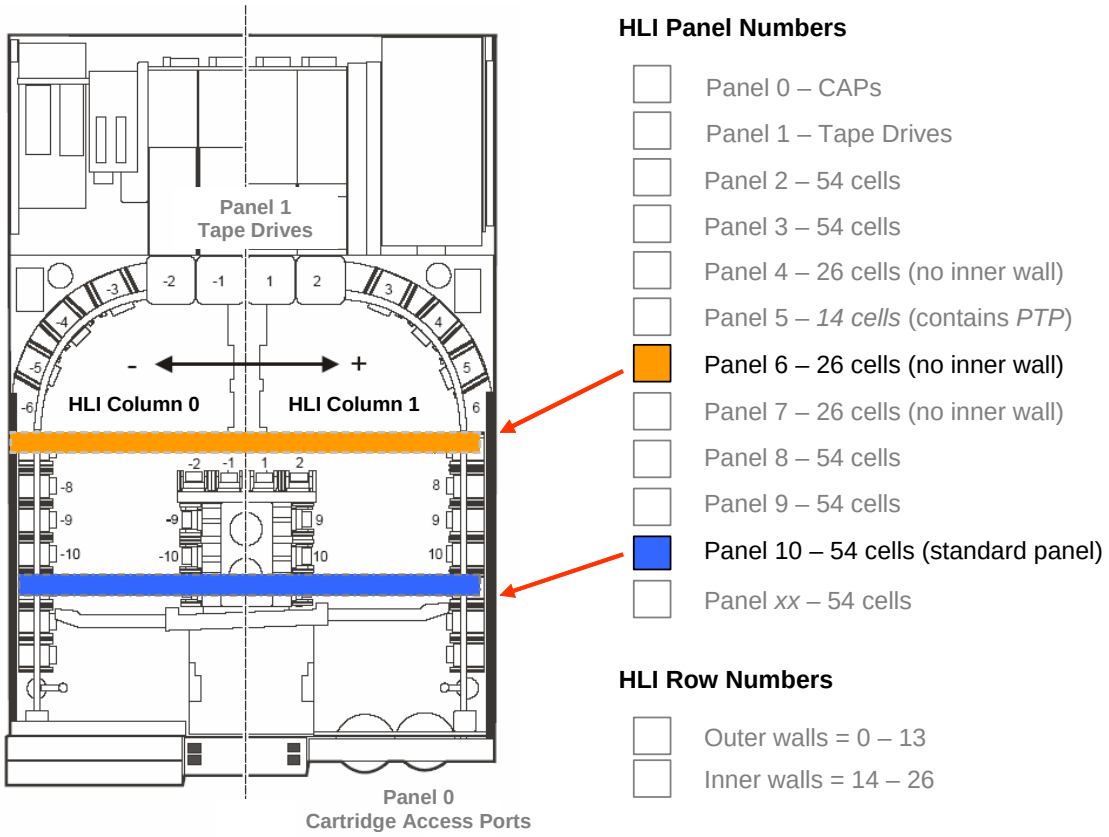
Table 2. Addressing Descriptions

HLI–PRC	SL8500	Description	
ACS	**Library**	Number of the specific library in a library complex (ACS). Note: An ACS contains multiple SL8500's in a library complex.	
LSM LSM 0 ⇨ LSM 1 ⇨ LSM 2 ⇨ LSM 3 ⇨	**Rail** Rail 1 Rail 2 Rail 3 Rail 4	The SL8500 library has four rails that the HandBots travel, which are numbered from top to bottom 1–4 (one's-based). ACSLS and HSC considers each rail to be a separate LSM, numbered from top to bottom 0–3 (zero-based).	
Panel Panel 0 ⇨ Panel 1 ⇨ Panel 2–*n* ⇨	**Column** CAP Drives Storage slots	Columns indicate the *horizontal* location in the library. As viewed from the front of the library column and panel numbers start at the *center* of the drive panel (1) and sweep forward with increasing numbers. **Note:** See Figure 3 on page 6 for an example of a storage *panel*. The SL8500 does not use panels as an address. An HLI panel spans across the width of the library to include both sides (left and right) and both walls (inner and outer) for *each* LSM.	
	Side	Wall location 1. Outer wall 2. Inner wall	HandBot number 1. Left (–) 2. Right (+)
Row	**Row**	Rows indicate the *vertical* location of a tape cartridge and are numbered from the top—down.	
Column		Rows for the HLI address are: • Storage panels start at 2 with Column 0 = left and Column 1 = right • Rows 0–12 outer walls • Rows 13–26 inner walls • Each column in a normal storage panel has 27 rows. • For a total capacity of 54 cartridges per panel.	Rows for the SL8500 address are: • Storage slots start at Column -3 = left Column +3 = right • Rows 1–13 outer wall • Rows 1–14 inner wall
• Zero-based numbering (as with HLI) starts numbering at 0. • One's-based numbering (as with the SL8500) starts numbering at 1. • This is an important difference in the numbering sequences between software (ACSLS or HSC) and hardware (physical SL8500 addresses)			

A host library interface (HLI) panel spans across the width of the library to include both sides (left and right) and both walls (inner and outer).

Figure 3 shows how panels match-up to the columns in an SL8500 library.

Figure 3. Panel Numbering



Configuration	Panel Number Ranges						
Base Library	RIM	CIM					
	2 – 7	8 – 10					
One expansion module	RIM	SEM	CIM				
	2 – 7	8 – 15	16 – 18				
Two expansion modules	RIM	SEM	SEM	CIM			
	2 – 7	8 – 15	16 – 23	24 – 26			
Three expansion modules	RIM	SEM	SEM	SEM	CIM		
	2 – 7	8 – 15	16 – 23	24 — 31	32 – 34		
Four expansion modules	RIM	SEM	SEM	SEM	SEM	CIM	
	2 – 7	8 – 15	16 – 23	24 — 31	32 – 39	40 – 42	
Five expansion modules	RIM	SEM	SEM	SEM	SEM	SEM	CIM
	2 – 7	8 – 15	16 – 23	24 — 31	32 – 39	40 – 47	48 – 50

Capacities

The capacity for the SL8500 uses Capacity on Demand and RealTime Growth to allow customers to instantly increase and activate capacity without disruption.

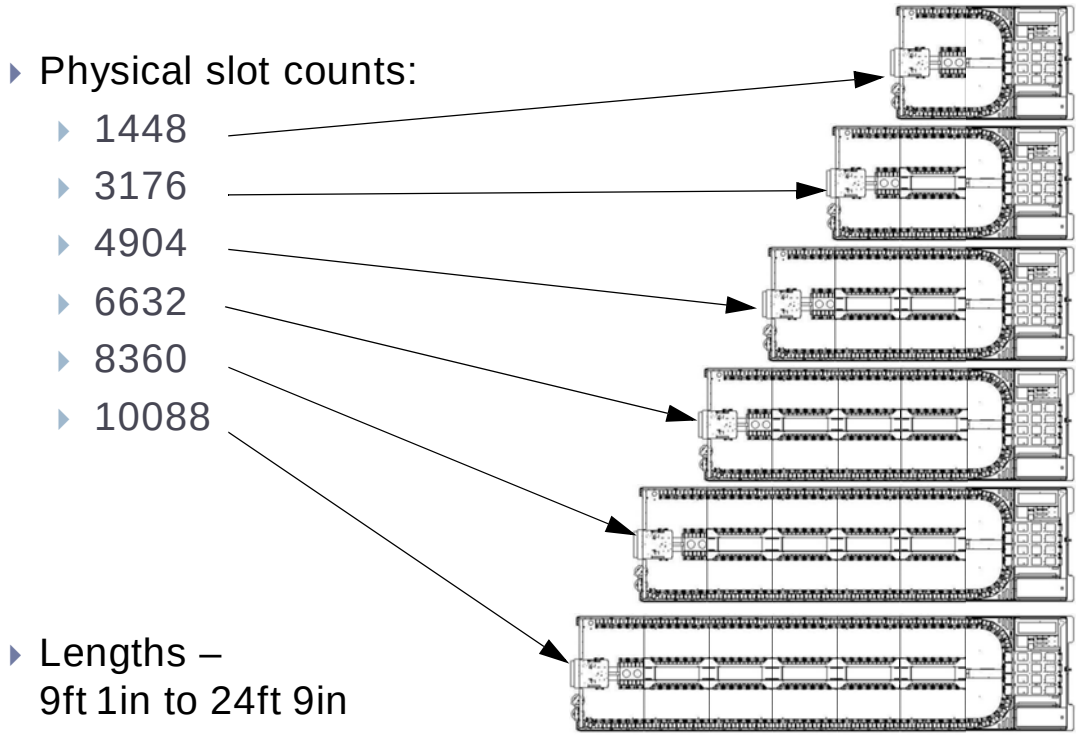
Slot upgrade part numbers provide the capability to increase the amount of activated capacity in the library (Capacity on Demand).

While with RealTime Growth, physical capacity can be pre-installed and then activated when and as needed.

Expansion Modules and Library Capacities

Adding expansion modules increase library capacity by 1,728 slots per module.

Figure 4. Expansion Modules and Capacities



1448	No expansion modules
3176	One expansion module
4904	Two expansion modules
6632	Three expansion modules
8360	Four expansion modules
10088	Five expansion modules

The SL8500 delivers exceptional value in these ways:

- Scale non-disruptively at your pace and pay only for what you need with RealTime Growth™ capability and Capacity on Demand.
- Design storage the way you really want it—the library does not dictate your choices.
- The SL8500 includes Any Cartridge Any Slot™ capability and the flexibility, which allows customers to select any physical slots in the library as licensed slots.

RealTime Growth™ Capability

RealTime Growth offers:

- Advance installation of expansion modules
  - Install extra physical capacity during the initial install
  - Pay for it when you are ready to use it, it is already installed
- Quick and easy growth
  - Non-disruptive growth in capacity
  - No physical library components required for growth
  - Eliminates many internal procedures

RealTime Growth also includes the capability to add pass-thru ports dynamically while the library is operating.

Capacity on Demand

Capacity on Demand is a non-disruptive, optional feature, that allows the customer to add capacity to the library using previously installed, yet inactive slots.

Non-disruptive Capacity Changes

Changes to active capacity result in minimal disruptions to library operations. The specific library behavior depends on the type of host connection, for the SL8500, that would be an Ethernet (HLI) connection.

Note: Although changes to active capacity are not disruptive to library hosts, it is recommended that you make the library unavailable to other users before committing the active storage region changes.

With HLI libraries, you can increase active capacity without stopping host jobs or having host connections go offline. When you increase or decrease the capacity, the library goes offline only momentarily and then comes back online automatically.

Total Library Physical Capacities

Table 3. Physical Data Cartridge Capacity

Library Configuration		Cartridge Capacity
	Starting—Base configuration	1,448
Expansion Modules	When adding expansion module, each module adds 1,728 *data* cartridge slots	
	One expansion module	3,176
	Two expansion modules	4,904
	Three expansion modules	6,632
	Four expansion modules	8,360
	Five expansion modules (maximum)	10,088

Partitioned Physical Capacities

Table 4. Partitioned Capacities

Library Configuration		Partition Capacity per Rail
Basic Library	Drive & Electronics Module	0
	Robotics Interface Module	200
	Customer Interface Module	162
	Base configuration per rail (total)	362
Expansion Modules	When adding expansion module, each rail gets **432** additional data cartridge slots	
	One expansion module	794
	Two expansion modules	1,226
	Three expansion modules	1,658
	Four expansion modules	2,090
	Five expansion modules (maximum)	2,522

Reserved Slot Capacities

Note: Reserved slots that *cannot* to be used for data cartridges.

Table 5. Reserved Slots

Slots	Usage
198	Diagnostic cartridges
24	Eight 3-cell arrays intended for targeting, proximity sensing, and drop-off.
8	Drop-off slot for the second HandBot

Power

The SL8500 library has two internal power configurations:

N+1 Power Configuration

The **N+1** power configuration provides a higher level of DC power redundancy by adding an additional power supply to *each* DC power grid.

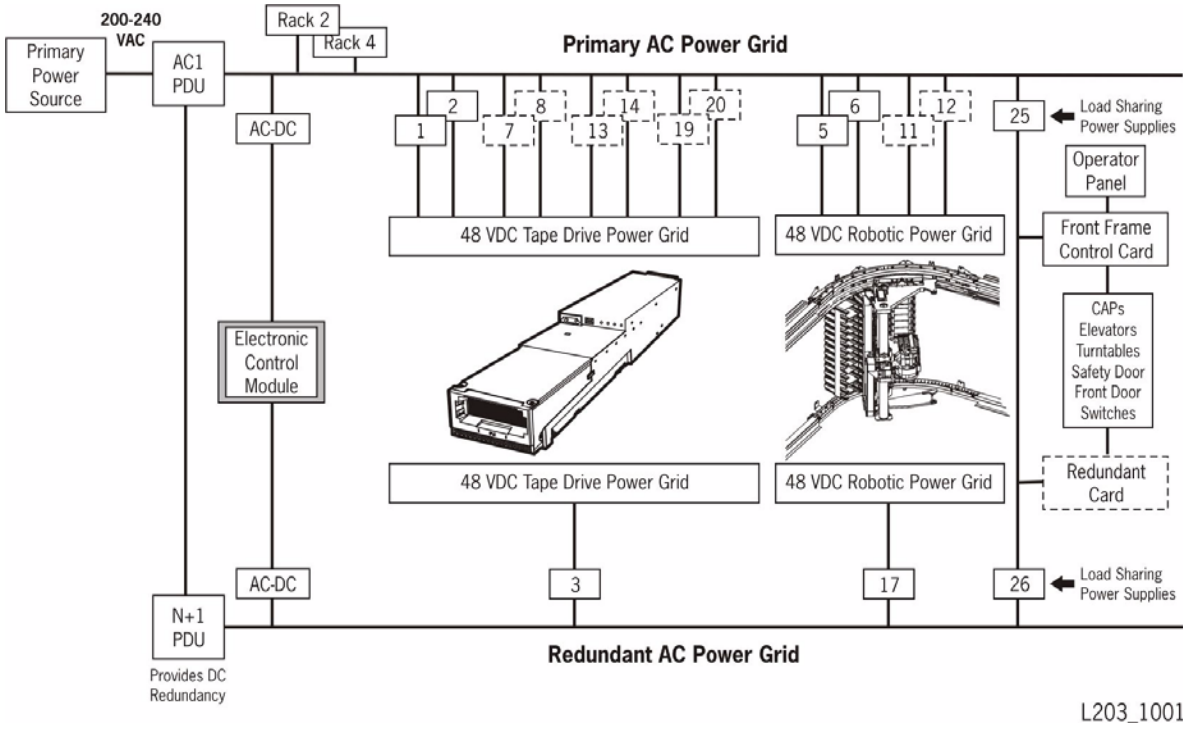
The **N+1** configuration contains *one* “system” power distribution unit (PDU) and *one* N+1 power distribution unit.

- The system PDU accommodates the main power cord and distributes AC power from the customer’s branch circuit to the three DC power grids, the electronics control module, and the N+1 PDU.
- The N+1 PDU provides AC power to an extra 48 VDC load sharing power supply on *each* of the three DC power grids plus an extra AC-to-DC converter for the Electronics Control Module.

  If a single power supply fails, there is still enough DC power available on that power grid to keep the entire system operational until the power supply can be replaced.

Note: The N+1 power configuration provides only DC power redundancy.

Figure 5. N+1 Power Configuration



2N Power Configuration

The **2N** power configuration is an *optional feature* that connects another AC power source to a second “system” power distribution unit that should attach to a separate branch circuit.

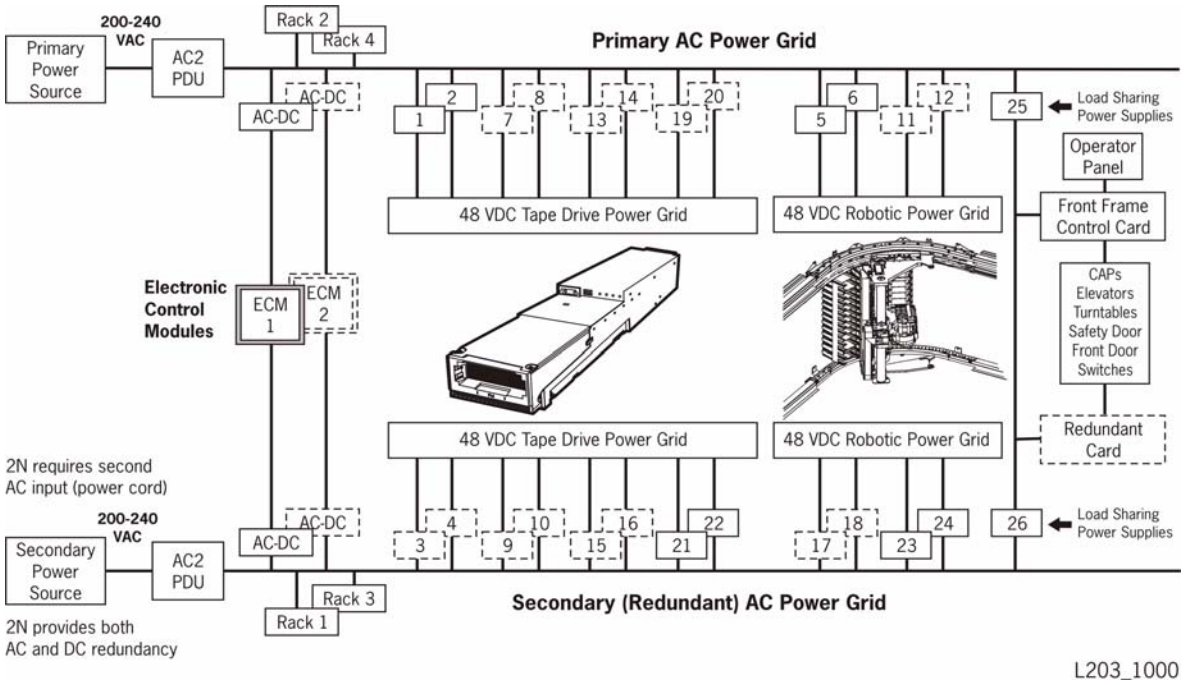
Each system PDU delivers AC power to its own group of load sharing power supplies to provide *both* AC *and* DC power redundancy.

- If something within an AC power source fails, the second AC power source supplies power to the entire system except the operator panel if AC1 fails.
- If a DC power supply fails, there is still enough power available to keep the entire system operational until the power supply can be replaced.

  This configuration provides power to the same components as N+1, *plus*:

  - Power for the additional 2N load sharing power supplies (required)
  - Power for 2 additional 19-inch racks (1 & 3) each with six outlets
  - Power for the redundant AC-to-DC converters for the ECM

Figure 6. 2N Power Configuration (*Optional Feature*)



AC Power Options

The SL8500 has *four* external AC power options:

- 200–240 VAC, line-to-line, three phase, 40 Amps, 50–60 Hz,
  Delta: *mostly* used in the U. S. (One 3-phase input for *each* system PDU)
- 200–240VAC, line-to-neutral, three phase, 24 Amps, 50–60 Hz,
  Wye: *mostly* used in Europe (One 3-phase input for *each* system PDU)
- 200–240 VAC, single phase, 24 Amps, 50–60 Hz
  Three single-phase inputs are required for *each* system PDU

Notes: The following notes are highly recommended.

- Connect to three phase power whenever possible.
- Have a licensed electrician connect the external power cables.

Delta or Wye?

From the four external AC power options, which one should the customer use? The following are guidelines that may help:

- As stated before, connecting to three phase power is *highly recommended*.

  The single-phase power option requires 3 circuits and uses 6 circuits for a 2N power configuration and redundancy. This power option is provided for customers that do not have access to three phase power.

- There are two three phase power options to choose from: Delta or Wye.

Delta	**When the voltage measured from phase-to-phase is 200–240 VAC, use a Delta power distribution unit.** Delta PDUs require *four* wires (3-phases plus ground). If supplied, Delta PDUs do not use neutral (a fifth wire).
Wye	**When the voltage measured from phase-to-phase is 380–415 VAC, use a Wye power distribution unit.** Wye PDUs require *five* wires (3 phases, ground, and neutral). Neutral (N) is *required* for Wye PDUs.

Load Sharing DC Power Supplies

The SL8500 has *three* DC power grids that supplies 48 VDC to components throughout the library:

- The tape drive power grid supports up to 64 tape drives.
- The robot power grid powers the HandBots and the pass-thru ports.
- The front frame power grid supplies 48 VDC power to the cartridge access ports, elevators, turntables, and the service safety door.

The DC power grids use *load sharing power supplies*. Load sharing allows the output voltage of one supply to be monitored and adjusted by other supplies on the bus.

In effect, each independent output voltage is adjusted so that all of the independent output voltages are the same to evenly distribute the load so if one output fails or is shorted, it will not bring down the bus.

Table 6 explains the quantity of load sharing power supplies required for each power configuration and the number of components they power.

Table 6. Load Sharing Power Supplies

Power Supply Type	Quantity	Configuration[1]	
		N+1	2N
Tape drives—from one to:	16	2 + 1 = 3	2 + 2 = 4
	24	3 + 1 = 4	3 + 3 = 6
	32	4 + 1 = 5	4 + 4 = 8
	40	5 + 1 = 6	5 + 5 = 10
	48	6 + 1 = 7	6 + 6 = 12
	56	7 + 1 = 8	7 + 7 = 14
	64	8 + 1 = 9	8+ 8 = 16
This allows one supply for every:		8 tape drives	4 tape drives
Robotics	4	2 + 1 = 3	2 + 2 = 4
	8	4 + 1 = 5	4 + 4 = 8
This allows one supply for every:		2 HandBots	1 HandBot
Front frame components		1 + 1 = 2	1 + 1 = 2
Electronics control module[2]		1 + 1 = 2	2 + 2 = 4

[1]Requires the 2N power configuration and matching DC power feature codes.

[2]The electronic control module (ECM) power supplies are AC to DC converters and different from the load sharing power supplies used by the HandBots and tape drives.

Power Connections

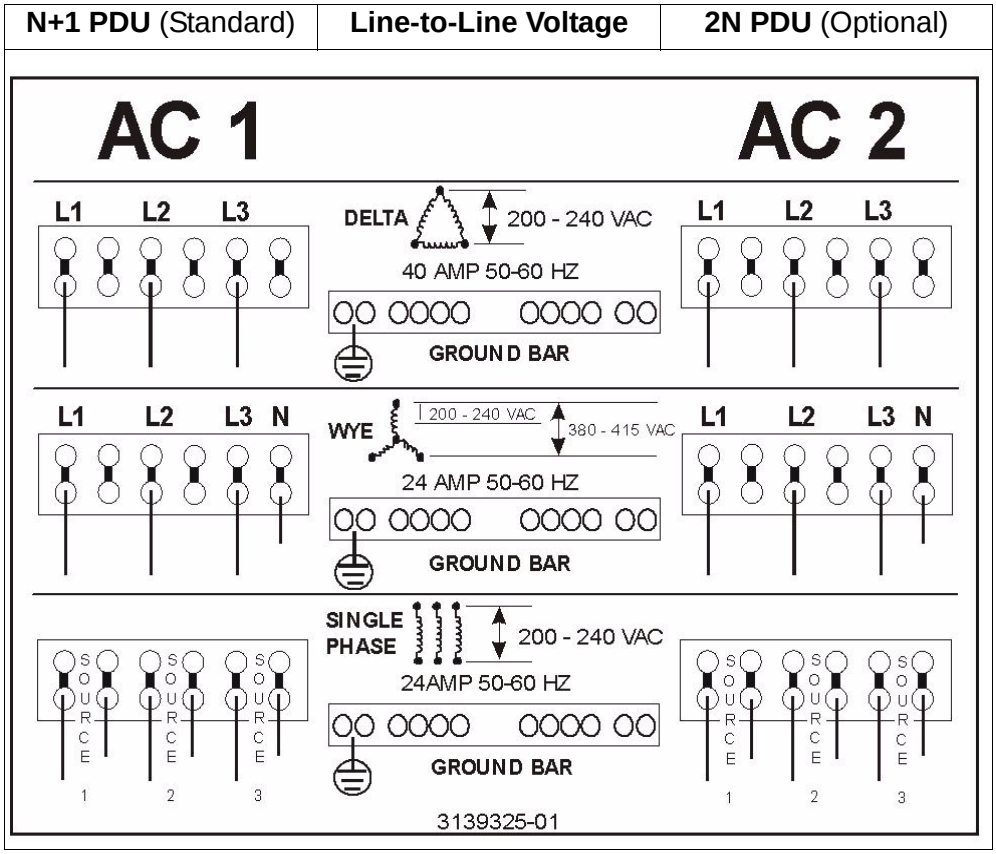
Warning: Having a licensed electrician connect the external power cables is highly recommended.

AC wiring from the power source branch circuit must be installed in conduit (flexible or rigid) with a 90-degree elbow-down fitting.

There are six holes provided for the conduit elbows that measure 2.875 cm (1.125 in.) in diameter. The electrician should choose appropriate conduit and fittings for their application that will fit this.

The terminal block hole is 6.35 mm (0.250 in.) in diameter, tin plating over brass, and can accommodate up to #6 wire. Wire Range is 6 mm (14 AWG).

Figure 7. Delta or Wye?



Note: AC input (cable and wiring) to the 2N PDU is not required if using an N+1 configuration.

Connectors

When connecting the library to the main power circuits, if plugs and connectors are required instead of using conduit, Table 7 lists the Hubbell part numbers (or equivalent) that can be used.

Table 7. Hubbell Connectors and Plugs (IEC 309)

Part Number	Description
HBL330P6W	Single Phase US plug 30 amp
HBL330C6W	Single Phase US connector 30 amp
HBL332P6W	Single Phase Europe plug 32 amp
HBL332C6W	Single Phase Europe connector 32 amp
HBL532P6W	Wye plug 32 amp
HBL532C6W	Wye connector 32 amp
HBL460P9W	Delta plug 60 amp
HBL460C9W	Delta connector 60 amp
L15-50 R	NEMA Delta receptacle (250 V, 50 Amp) **
L15-50 P	NEMA Delta plug (250 V, 50 Amp) **

- Single phase minimum current requirement: 24 Amps-RMS
- Wye three phase minimum current requirement: 24 Amps-RMS
- Delta three phase minimum current requirement: 40 Amps-RMS

Circuit Breaker Ratings

The *minimum* circuit breaker ratings required for the service panel are:

Table 8. Circuit Breaker Ratings

Type	Option	Panel Breaker	Service Rating	Connector	PDU Breaker
Conduit (recommended)	Single Ph.	30 Amps	30 Amps	—	30 Amps
	Delta	50 Amps	50 Amps	—	40 Amps
	Wye	30 Amps	30 Amps	—	30 Amps
Connector (US)	Single Ph.	30 Amps	30 Amps	30 Amps	30 Amps
	Delta	50 Amps	50 Amps	50 A - NEMA** 60 A - IEC 309	40 Amps
	Wye	30 Amps	30 Amps	30 Amps	30 Amps
Connector (Europe)	Single Ph.	30 Amps	30 Amps	32 Amps	30 Amps
	Delta	50 Amps	50 Amps	63 Amps	40 Amps
	Wye	30 Amps	30 Amps	32 Amps	30 Amps

Note: Wire size should be determined by the electrician.

Electronics Control Module

Each library has the capability of *two*—redundant—electronics control modules that consist of:

- HBC card—the library controller
- HBT card—the tape drive controller

Note: Redundant electronics is an optional feature (*check on availability*).

HBC Card

The HBC card is the library controller, responsible for coordinating all component operations within the library.

This card provides the interface between the host and the library plus:

- Library-to-library LANs
- Tape drive service LAN
- Rail signal interfaces for HandBots
- Environmental monitoring circuits throughout the library

HBT Card

The HBT card is the tape drive controller, responsible for translating commands from the library controller (HBC card) into unique drive commands that are transferred across differential RS-422 cables to the tape drives (the TTI interface).

HBK Card

The HBK card contains a flash memory that stores information about the library configuration, passwords, and world wide name.

Only one HBK card is require for the controllers. This card serves both control modules if the redundant electronics feature is installed.

In the event that you need to replace the HBC controller card, having the information available on the HBK card prevents the need of a reconfiguration to restore the information to the control card.

Firmware

Library firmware is installed in the factory and resides on the HBC card, which can hold *two* separate versions of code:

- the current activated version
- the previous or a new downloaded version

When installing code, the HBC card transfers the functional code to the different controllers in the library (such as the HBT card for the tape drives and HBB cards for the HandBots).

When upgrading firmware, if for some reason you need to return the library to the previous version of firmware, a service representative can re-activate it for library operation.

Firmware Packages:
There are two types of firmware packages for the library:

- SL8500 code for the library controller and associated library devices
- StorageTek Library Console application firmware (*SLConsole)*
  Also know as the Library Console.

Firmware Upgrade:
Upgrading firmware is a three-step process.

Steps 1 and 2 can be done without interruption to library operation.
Step 3 requires an IPL of the library which may take about *10 minutes*.

1. Download the image file (firmware).
2. Activate the downloaded firmware.
3. Reboot the library to make the firmware operational.

Note: *An IPL of the new code only takes about 10 minutes if the front door has not been opened. If you open the front door, both an IPL and Audit are required which will take an additional 15 minutes to 1 hour depending on the capacity.*

For more instructions about upgrading firmware, refer to the online help documentation or user's guide.

Audits and Initialization

The term *audit* refers to the process of reading and cataloging all cartridges within a library or verifying cartridge locations—the physical inventory.

An SL8500 library is capable of storing all cartridge locations within the library on the HBC card—the library controller. The physical inventory contains:

- Volume serial numbers (VOLSERs) or identification (VOLIDs)
- Internal address locations (library, rail, column, side, and row)
- Verified status (as true or false)

Audit Conditions

The library audits all cartridge locations in all areas of the library, including the slots in the storage and reserved areas when:

- The library initializes at power-on
- After either one or both access doors are opened and closed
- An audit request is made through Library Console

Audit Types

There are three types of audits that the library performs:

Physical audit — Physical audits are when the HandBots:

- Scan the cartridge locations in the library
- Verify the volumes
- Update the HBC card inventory
- Set the status of the cartridge location to true

Verified audit — Verified audits are invoked from the Library Console and *validate* the status of a specific cartridge slot or range of slots.

Virtual audit — Virtual audits are invoked from the Library Console and *display* the cartridge inventory in the console screen.

Important:
After the initial audit is complete, audits are then performed as background operations—it is *not* necessary to wait for an entire audit to complete before using the library.

Shortly after the SL8500 begins initialization—after closing the front door or powering-on the library—the SL8500 can begin to perform mount and dismount requests to the tape drives. This is because after the initial audit, the SL8500 uses its existing database from a previous audit to perform any requests.

If cartridges have not been moved, removed, or added, then all subsequent movement requests can proceed without interruption.

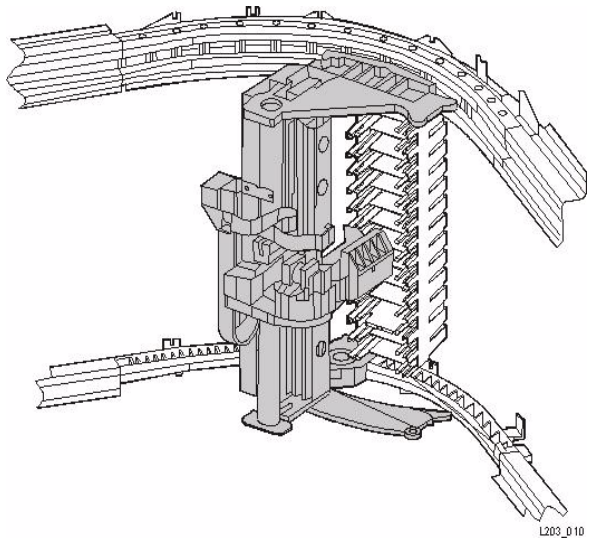
Note: Eight HandBots can audit the library quicker than four HandBots.

Robotic Rail Assemblies

Figure 8 shows an example of the HandBot and rail assembly in the SL8500.

- Each SL8500 has four separate robotic rail assemblies. These rail assemblies provide both power and communication signals to its own individual robotic system.
- The robotic systems in the SL8500 are called HandBots. Each HandBot can service up to 16 tape drives and all of the tape cartridges for that rail.
- Spanning across the four rail assemblies are two elevators. These elevators perform an internal pass-thru port operation that allows any tape cartridge to have access to any tape drive in the SL8500 library and within an SL8500 library complex.

Figure 8. HandBot and Rail Assembly



Currently, there are two HandBot configurations:

- 4 HandBots (one per rail)
- 8 HandBots (two per rail)

A HandBot assembly consists of:

- Rail and brush assemblies
- Z-mechanism for vertical motion of the hand
- Wrist-mechanism for horizontal motion
- Digital vision system for targeting
- Barcode scanner for reading volume IDs (VOLID) cartridge labels
- Proximity sensor for detecting empty cells
- Worm-drive gripper mechanism for gripping the *sides* of the cartridges

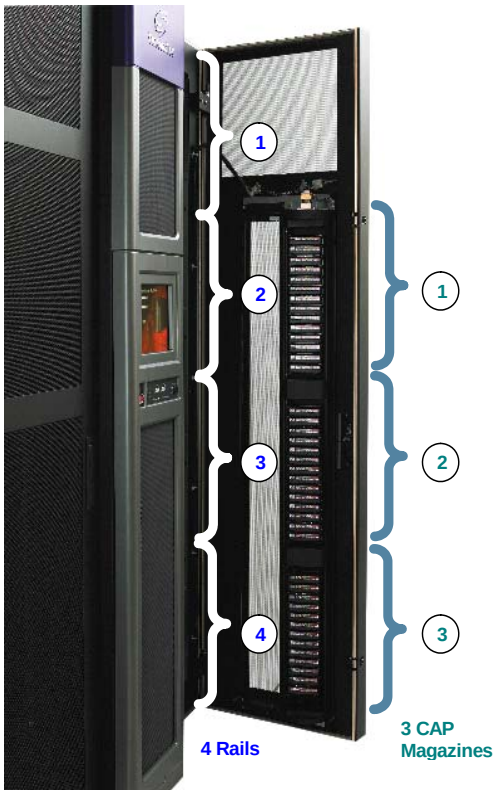
To optimize system performance, the HandBots automatically implement the *Fast Load* capability. Once a HandBot successfully inserts a tape cartridge into a drive, it is immediately available for the next request and does not wait until the drive reports that the cartridge has been loaded. The SL8500 library control electronics waits to return the response to the mount request until it detects that the tape drive has successfully loaded the cartridge tape.

Cartridge Access Ports

The library comes with one standard, 39-slot, cartridge access port (CAP A), and an option for an additional 39-slot cartridge access port (CAP B).

Both CAPs are located on the right front access door to the library.

Figure 9. Cartridge Access Port



Architecture of the CAP:

- Consists of 39 slots—three magazines with 13 slots each.
- Spans across three rails—2, 3, and 4 (LSMs 1, 2, and 3).
- There is no adjacent CAP section for the top rail (LSM 0)—requires an elevator pass-thru operation to enter or eject cartridges.
- **CAP A** is on the left-side (standard)
  - Comes with the library
  - Software address is 0 or (`ACS, LSM, 0`)
  - Controls are on the left side of the keypad
- **CAP B** is on the right-side (*optional* feature)
  - Currently not supported
  - Software address is 1 or (`ACS, LSM, 1`)
  - Controls are on the right side of the keypad

Addressing scheme:

ACS#	LSM# (per library)	CAP A	CAP B
ACS	1	0	1
ACS	5	0	1
ACS	9	0	1
	and so on...		

Notes: Usage considerations for the CAP include:

- When a CAP is in use for enter or eject operations, all 39 slots are reserved for that operation—the CAP cannot be subdivided.
- For addressing purposes, the CAP needs a location (ACS,LSM,CAP#). The LSM address is associated with the second rails in each library because there is no adjacent CAP magazine for the top rail.
- When loading cartridges in the CAP, slots can be skipped.
- Currently, the middle magazine cannot be missing if both the upper and lower or magazines are installed.
- If the HandBot adjacent to the CAP is inoperative, that portion of the CAP is inaccessible.

Pass-thru Mechanisms

The SL8500 library has two types of pass-thru mechanisms:

Vertical	An *elevator* that moves cartridges between rails
Horizontal	A *pass-thru port* feature that moves cartridges between libraries

Elevators

The library comes with *two* four-slot elevators in the front of the library—one on each side of the facade.

Figure 10. Elevators

Considerations for the elevators include:

- Elevators provide vertical pass-thru operations between rails within the *same* library.
- Each of the four rails *share* the resources of the two elevators.
- Both elevators are located in the front of the library between the front access doors and the Service Safety Door.
- Because the SL8500 has **four rails**, system administrators must specify the elevator as:
  - Pass-thru ports to each of the adjacent LSMs in the same library.
  - The lowest numbered LSM is always the master LSM.
  - Every LSM is adjacent to all other LSMs because of the elevator.

When defining pass-thru ports:

- 0 = Vertical pass-thru components (elevators)
- 1 = Horizontal pass-thru components (pass-thru ports)

Pass-thru Ports

Connecting libraries together with pass-thru ports creates an SL8500 Library Complex.

Figure 11 is an example of a pass-thru port (PTP) mechanism—an electro-mechanical device that allows one library storage module (LSM) to pass a cartridge to another LSM in the same complex.

For example: If an operating system issues a mount request, and all of the tape drives are busy in that library, the PTP can pass the cartridge to another library where an idle tape drive can satisfy the mount request.

Figure 11. Pass-thru Port Mechanism

The SL8500 pass-thru port feature consists of a separate frame that is installed between the Drive and Electronics Module / Robotics Interface Module of one library with the same modules of an adjacent library.

Each PTP frame has four separate mechanisms that can pass up to two cartridges—per LSM or rail—between the libraries.

There are eight PTP locations in an SL8500 library, two per rail (or LSM). These locations are on the curved portions of the Robotics Interface Module near the tape drives.

Important:
The need to plan ahead for the addition of pass-thru ports is *extremely important.* The library complex can "grow" in either direction—left *or* right.

The *preferred* method of installing PTPs to an existing library is to add the new library to the *left* when viewed from the front.

However, the library complex can grow in the other direction—to the right—but this requires a disruption to the system to renumber the LSMs and reconfigure the management software.

The following are highlights about the PTP feature:

- All SL8500 libraries come equipped and ready for the addition of the PTP frame and feature—no additional walls are needed.
- Power for the PTPs comes from the same +48 VDC power bus as the robotic rails. Both the N+1 and 2N power configurations currently support the PTP hardware—no additional power supplies are needed.

- Each PTP frame has four separate mechanisms and can pass up to two cartridges per LSM.
- There are eight PTP locations in an SL8500 library, two per rail (or LSM).
- The PTP locations are on the curved portions of the Robotics Interface Module at columns +6 and –6 near the tape drives for quick access.
- Both ACSLS and HSC support pass-thru port operations—no additional software is needed.
- Existing libraries can remain operational while attaching the PTP frame to them during the installation of an adjacent library.
- If service is required, the pass-thru port mechanism slides out of the frame from the rear of the library—not affecting library operations.
- While the “home” library provides power and communications to the PTP mechanism, either library can initiate a pass-thru operation.

The following terms and definitions apply to SL8500 PTP operations:

Home library	Provides power, signal, and control lines to the PTP mechanisms. This is the library on the right as viewed from the front.
Away library	Always located on the left side of a Home library, as viewed from the front.
Source	Contains the home slot location for the cartridge that will be passed through to an adjacent library.
Destination	Contains the tape drive or slot location in the adjacent library where the cartridge will be mounted or stored.

Library Cameras

StorageTek offers an Ethernet-based library camera system (WebCam) with monitoring software as an optional feature for the SL8500 modular library system. This feature allows a customer to remotely see the inside of their SL8500 library, which is especially important for those customers who have remote and lights-out data centers.

Figure 12. Library Cameras

This is one difference between the 9310 PowderHorn libraries and the SL8500 library—no camera on the hand—that would allow viewing robotic operations and volume serial numbers inside the library.

Note: The WebCam feature uses a third party camera designed for the security surveillance market and is subject to change without notice.

The WebCam feature attaches to a 10Base-T, 100Base-T Ethernet connection and provides remote, high-quality, audio and video. This feature contains

- Two cameras that mount in the upper frame of the front access door—one on each side of the library
- Monitoring software

PC requirements	• Windows 2000, XP, ME, or 98SE • CPU: Pentium III, 800 MHz or above • Internet Explorer 5.x or above for the Web Browser • ActiveX • Memory Size: 128 MB or above • GA card resolution: 800 x 600 or above
Dimensions: Length Width Height Weight	Camera dimensions: 10.16 cm (4 in.) 10.42 cm (4.1 in.) 11.18 cm (4.4 in.) 345 g (12.2 oz or 0.75 lb)
Ethernet	10Base-T, 100Base-T, auto-negotiating
Camera	¼ inch CCD color sensor Electronic shutter: 1/60 ~ 1/15000 seconds Fixed focus glass lens F20, 1 LUX
Video	Algorithm: H.263+ (MPEG4 short header mode for streaming) JPEG compression (for still images) Up to 30 frames per second (fps) Built-in motion detector
Audio	24 Kbps Built-in omni-directional microphone

Accessory Racks

The SL8500 library provides space where up to four standard RETMA[1] 19 inch racks can be installed. These racks are oriented so the components mount vertically instead of horizontally and can hold up to 6Us[2] of equipment, such as switches, hubs, and servers.

There is a six connector PDU that provides 4 amps of AC power for each rack. Two cooling fans provide additional air flow for the installed equipment.

Because of the numerous types of equipment, StorageTek cannot mandate what the customer installs in these racks; therefore, certain guidelines should be followed to prevent voiding the warranty.

Table 9 lists these guidelines.

Table 9. Accessory Rack Installation Guidelines

Guideline	Specifics
Equipment weight	The accessory rack itself is mounted on slides rated for 80 kg (175 lb). The recommended safe load is 64 kg (140 lb).
Rack mounting	Components must be able to function in a vertical orientation. Heavy components (such as Fibre Channel switches) must have threaded holes in the sides to attach rack slides. Light weight components (such as Ethernet switches) may be mounted with a bracket.
Thermal requirements	Maximum power dissipation is 880 watts (3,000 Btu/hr) per rack module.
Air flow	Generally from non-port end to port end of component. Side to side air flow is acceptable. Maximum Volume per 6u rack module is 241 scfm (standard cubic feet per minute) at 0 inches of water static pressure to a minimum of 0 scfm at 0.60 inches of water static pressure depending upon the devices and equipment installed blocking the fan air flow.
Power cord	Power plug to connect to the rack PDU is: IEC320 C13 shrouded male plug. Minimum cord length is component length *plus* 46 cm (18 in.) for a service loop.
Regulatory agency compliance	Minimum requirements are: Safety – UL or CSA certification and Electromagnetic – Class A certification from agencies such as the FCC or BSMI.
Dimensional restrictions	Rack module depth is 72 cm (28 in.) Recommended safe length is 66 cm (26 in.)
Maximum power consumption	Per rack module is 4 Amps (maximum) Per outlet strip is 200–240 VAC, 50 to 60 Hz

- Two of the racks (2 and 4) receive power from the primary AC power grid.
- The other two racks (1 and 3) *require* the 2N power configuration.
- When you loose power to a PDU, you also loose power to the associated racks:

1. RETMA = Radio Electronics Television Manufacturers Association.
2. U stands for units. One unit is equal to 4.4 cm (1.75 in.).

Operator Panels

The SL8500 has three ways the operators can use to access the library:

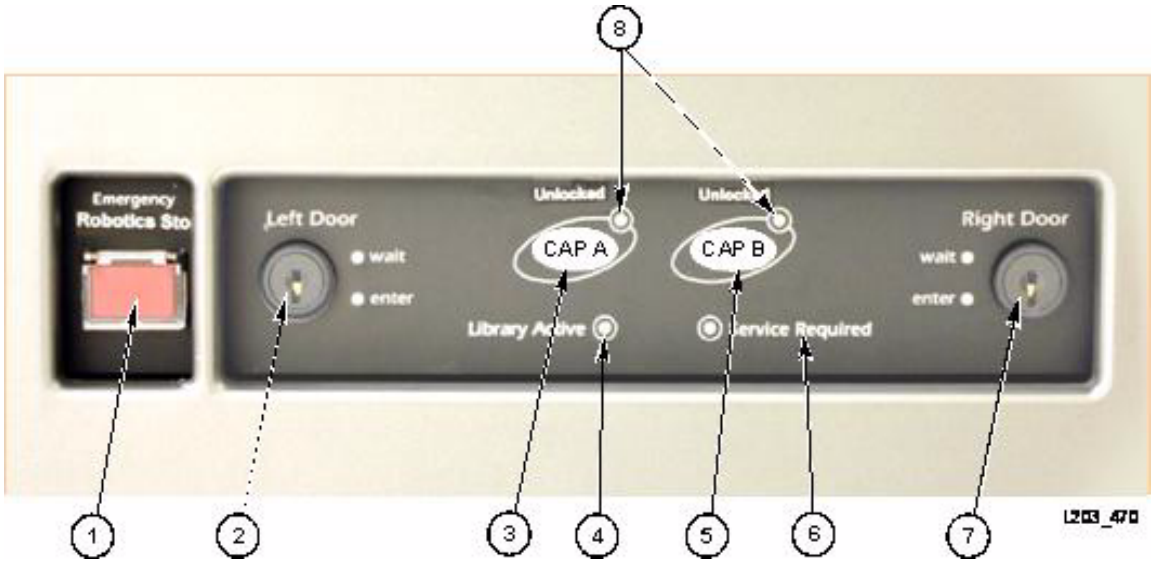
- Keypad
- Remote operator panel
- Touch screen operator panel (an *optional* feature)

Keypad

The library includes a keypad that has 2 buttons, 8 LEDs, and two locks.

- The two buttons open and close the CAPs.
- The eight LEDs indicate library activity and status.
- The two safety locks allow the service representatives to place the library in maintenance mode.

Figure 13. Keypad



1. Emergency robotics stop switch
2. Left service safety door key
3. CAP A button
4. Library active indicator
5. CAP B button
6. Service required indicator
7. Right service safety door key
8. CAP unlocked indicators

Remote Operator Panel

A remote operator panel is a standard feature that displays operator functions on a personal computer (PC) that is running the Library Console.

Library console is a software application that the customer can use to monitor and operate the library. A CD is supplied with each library that contains this software—requirements are:

Table 10. Library Console Remote Operator Panel Requirements

Requirement	Windows 2000	Solaris
Minimum total system RAM	256 MB	256 MB
Minimum additional required disk	64 MB	128 MB

Touch Screen Operator Control Panel

The touch screen operator control panel—which mounts on the front of the library—is an *optional* feature. This panel consists of a flat screen display, with a touchable interface, and a panel-mounted personal computer. Through this panel, all of the library instructions, diagnostics, library status, library and drive monitoring and functional information can be accessed.

Figure 14. Touch Screen Operator Control Panel

The operator panel consists of:

- Library Console software
- 12-inch flat screen display (*diagonal* measurement)
- Touch screen interface (no mouse or keypad necessary)
- 20 GB hard drive
- 512 MB memory and 32 MB RAM
- Java applet as the graphical user interface (GUI).

Service Safety Door and Mode

Figure 15. Service Safety Door

The service safety door is a sliding door that moves either to the left or right, depending upon which maintenance lock is opened. This feature is:

- *Optional* with four HandBot configurations
- *Required* with eight HandBot configurations

Service Mode:
When the maintenance key is inserted into its lock and turned, the safety door separates the forward maintenance area from the library interior.

This feature allows the service representative to safely replace a failing front frame component—such as a HandBot, CAP, or elevator—while the library remains fully operational.

Important: Service mode is *not* permitted by an operator. Only qualified service representatives with a service mode key can initiate service.

Note: Although *optional*, having a service safety door with a four HandBot configuration also allows the service representative to safely replace a failing front frame component.

Emergency Robotic Stop

Figure 16. Emergency Robotic Stop Switch

Emergency robotic stop (ERS) is the removal of AC and DC power to the *robotics*—HandBots, pass-thru ports, CAPs, and elevators—the tape drives *are not* affected.

The emergency robotic stop ensures that no robotic motion occurs while someone is inside the library.

The library has two switches:

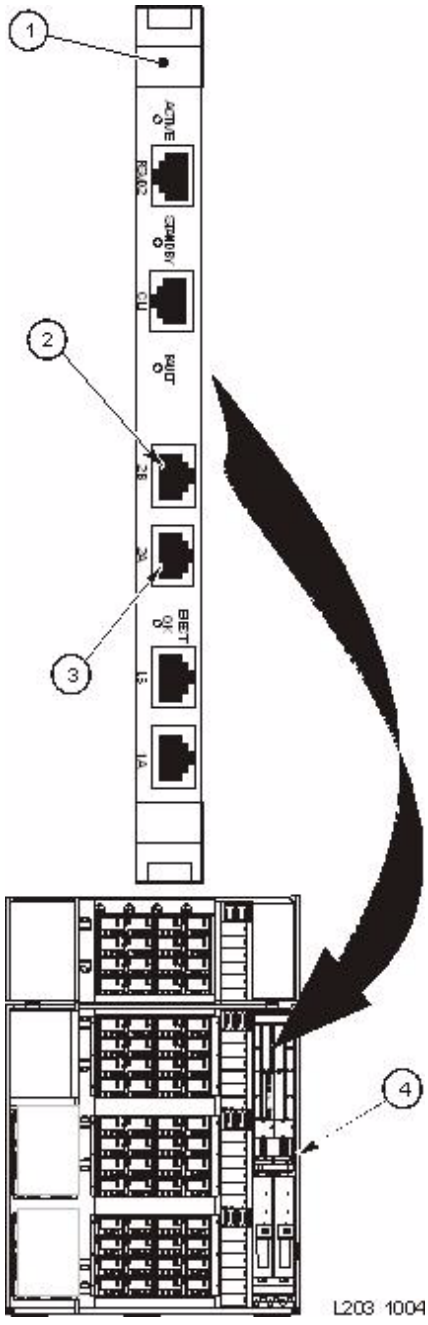
- One interior lighted switch on the left side of the drive bays
- One non-illuminated, covered switch, on the front panel

Note: Pressing an ERS switch immediately removes AC and DC power to the robotics (not the entire library). After it is determined that it is safe to restore power, press the switch again to reset it.

Host Interface Connections

Host interface connections to the library uses **TCP/IP** protocol over an **Ethernet** 10/100-baseT physical interface.

Figure 17. TCP/IP Connections



The SL8500 library uses TCP/IP protocol over an Ethernet physical interface to manage and communicate with the host and library management applications. This interface enables both:

- Open system platforms with ACSLS
- Enterprise-level mainframes with HSC

to connect to and communicate with the SL8500.

The HBC card is the library controller responsible for coordinating all component operations within the library and providing the interface connection with the host.

Connections:
There are two separate Ethernet connections on the HBC card for host to library communications—Ports 2A and 2B.

- Port 2A provides the **Dual TCP/IP** connection—this is an *optional feature* for SL8500 libraries.
- Port 2B provides the primary host connection—this is the standard connection for SL8500 libraries.

Both ports comply with the Institute of Electrical and Electronics Engineers standard–IEEE 802.3–for Ethernet networks.
Both ports are capable of auto-negotiating the:

- Method of transmission
  - Half-duplex: Transmits data in just one direction at a time
  - Full-duplex: Transmits data in two directions simultaneously
- Speed of the transmission
  - 10Base-T: 10 megabits per second (Mbps)
  - 100Base-T: 100 megabits per second (Mbps)

The other two Ethernet connections—Ports 1A and 1B—are for library-to-library communications for the pass-thru ports.

Figure callouts:

1. HBC card (controller card)
2. Port 2B—primary TCP/IP host connection
3. Port 2A—secondary, dual TCP/IP host connection
4. Electronics control module

Whenever possible, use a dedicated private network for communication between the host management software (ACSLS, HSC, or other software) and the library.

If a shared network is required, these actions can help with the communication between the host and the library.

1. Directly connect the library to a switch.
2. Place the library on its own subnet.
3. Use a managed switch that can:
    - Set priorities on ports to give the host and library higher priority.
    - Provide dedicated bandwidth between the host and the library.
    - Create a VLAN between the host and the library.
4. Use a virtual private network (VPN) to insulate host to library traffic.

Network Recommendations

A private network connection to an Ethernet hub or switch is recommended for maximum throughput and minimum resource contention.

When implementing the Dual TCP/IP feature, it is strongly recommended that you and the system administrator work closely together to define the configuration.

The simplest topology (private network connections to a hub or switch) is often the best solution. Simplification will:

- Offer maximum throughput
- Provide minimum resource contention
- Lend itself to higher security for library communication
- Supply the least expensive alternative
- Provide quick identification of any problems within the network

These are only suggestions; however, the customer’s network and their desired topology are ultimately the determining factors. For certain topologies, a more complicated setup is required. Many will require consultation between the system administrator and another level of services.

Host Connectivity Checklist

Table 11. Host Connection Checklist and Requirements

Configuration	Port	Firmware	Comments
Single See page 29	Port 2B only	All versions	This is the simplest type of host connection to the library. Supports: Single host/library management software (ACSLS or HSC).
Library Complex See page 32	Port 2B only	FRS_2.00	*Optional Feature.* Connects two or more libraries together using pass-thru ports. Can connect up to 10 libraries together in a complex. Supports: Single host/library management software (ACSLS or HSC).
Dual TCP/IP See page 33	Port 2B primary Port 2A optional	FRS_3.08	*Optional Feature.* Provides *two* separate paths for host connections to the library or library complex. Separate, not redundant. Redundancy is provided in the network design. Supports: Single host/library management software (ACSLS or HSC).
Partitioned See page 35	Port 2B primary Port 2A optional	FRS_3.7x	*Optional Feature.* Supports Dual TCP/IP feature. Supports: Dual host/library management software (ACSLS and/or HSC).
Multi-Host See page 36	Port 2B primary Port 2A optional	FRS_3.95	*Optional Feature.* Provides up to *four* separate paths for host connections to a library complex. Separate, not redundant. Redundancy is provided in the network design. Supports: Single host/library management software (ACSLS or HSC).
Redundant Electronics See page 38	**HBC1:** Port 2B primary Port 2A optional **HBC2:** Port 2B primary Port 2A optional	FRS_6.xx	*Optional Feature.* Provides a second set of electronics in the event that the first set becomes inoperable. Supports a dual set of electronics. Supports: Single host/library management software (ACSLS or HSC). If using a partitioning feature supports Dual host/library management software (ACSLS and/or HSC).

Library Complex

The SL8500 Library Complex is created by connecting two or more libraries together with pass-thru ports (PTPs).

The PTP is an electro-mechanical device that allows one library storage module (LSM) to pass up to two tape cartridges to another LSM in the same complex.

SL8500 PTPs consist of a separate frame that is installed between the Drive and Electronics Module and Robotics Interface Module of one library with the same modules of an adjacent library. Each PTP frame has four separate mechanisms that can pass up to *two* cartridges (per LSM) between the libraries at once.

Currently an SL8500 Library Complex can support up to *10* libraries connected together using nine Pass-thru Ports.

Requirements

The requirements include the following levels *or higher*:

- Library firmware of **FRS_2.00**
- StorageTek Library Console: FRS_2.00
- ACSLS: 7.1 plus PUT0501 for Near Continuous Operation

or

- NCS (NearLine Control Solution) Version 6.0 and 6.1
  - HSC: 6.0 plus PTFs (*minimum*) or
  - HSC: 6.1 which added Near Continuous Operation (NCO)

Note: Upgrading library firmware can be disruptive to customer operations. Schedule time with the customer to perform this upgrade.

Dual TCP/IP

The SL8500 library provides two separate Ethernet connections on the HBC card for host to library communications—Ports 2A and 2B.

- Port 2A provides the Dual TCP/IP connection—an *optional feature*
- Port 2B provides the primary connection—the standard connection

The Dual TCP/IP feature provides two public network interfaces to the library and/or library complex.

Requirements

Requirements include the following levels *or higher*:

- Library firmware of **FRS_3.08**
- StorageTek Library Console: FRS_x.xx
- ACSLS 7.1

or

- NCS 6.0 or 6.1

Note: Upgrading library firmware can be disruptive to customer operations. Schedule time with the customer to perform this upgrade.

Dual TCP/IP Network Entries Worksheet

When preparing the network and connections—as a best practice—complete a network entries worksheet for each port of the SL8500 library.

Description		IP Address
Port 2B	Host name to Port 2B	
	HBC Card Port 2B	
	Gateway Port 2B	
	Netmask	
Port 2A	Host name to Port 2A	
	HBC Card Port 2A	
	Gateway Port 2A	
	Netmask	

Important:

- When connecting more than one interface to an SL8500 library, the connections should be through **different subnets** for redundancy.

  If one subnet should fail, communications between the hosts and the libraries continue over the other subnet.

- When connecting an interface to Port 2A, a service representative must configure the routing and possibly assign policies for that port (2A) using the command line interface.

  Note: Port 2B is the default port for the library; no routing tables are required when connecting to that port.

  See “Host Connections” on page 222 for more information.

- **The ports need to be on different Layer 2 broadcast domains**[3].

3. A broadcast domain is a logical network segment where any computer or other device connected to the network can directly communicate to any other device on that domain without having to go through a routing device, provided they share the same subnet address and are in the same virtual network.

Partitioning

The Merriam–Webster dictionary defines **partitioning** as to:

- Divide into parts or shares.
- Separate or divide by a partition, such as a wall... or a *rail*.

The architecture of the SL8500 library provides physical boundaries—rails—that make it perfect for partitioning.

Requirements

The requirements include the following levels or higher:

- Library firmware **FRS_3.7x**
- StorageTek Library Console at Version FRS_3.25
- ACSLS Versions 7.1 and 7.1.1 with PUT0701
- ACSLS HA 2 also requires PTF 6514766
  and
- NCS (NearLine Control Solution) Version 6.1
- HSC (MVS) Version 6.1 with PTF L1H13GW and L1H13JK
- HSC (VM) Version 6.1 with PTF L1H13GX and L1H13JJ

Note: Upgrading library firmware can be disruptive to customer operations. Schedule time with the customer to perform this upgrade.

Hosts without the latest level of software (ACSLS or HSC) or without the latest PUTs and PTFs will not be able to bring a partitioned ACS online.

Software and firmware levels can be downloaded and ready in advance of activation. When the time and upgrade window are available, these upgrades can be activated.

This preparation can limit down time of the library and operating system.

Multi-Host

The newest host connectivity feature to an SL8500 Library Complex is Multi-Host. This feature allows up to *four* connections to a library complex that contains 2 or more libraries.

Requirements

Requirements include the following levels or *higher*:

- Library firmware **FRS_3.95**

- StorageTek Library Console at Version FRS_3.38
- ACSLS Versions 7.1 and 7.1.1 with PUT0701
- ACSLS HA 2 also requires PTF 6514766

or

- NCS (NearLine Control Solution) Version 6.1
- HSC (MVS) Version 6.1 with PTF L1H13GW and L1H13JK
- HSC (VM) Version 6.1 with PTF L1H13GX and L1H13JJ

Note: Upgrading library firmware can be disruptive to customer operations. Schedule time with the customer to perform this upgrade.

Hosts without the latest level of software (ACSLS or HSC) or without the latest PUTs and PTFs will not be able to use multiple connections to a library complex.

Software and firmware levels can be downloaded and ready in advance of activation. When the time and upgrade window are available, these upgrades can be activated.

This preparation can limit down time of the library and operating system.

Multi-Host Network Entries Work Sheet

When preparing the network and connections—as a best practice—complete a network entries worksheet for each port of the SL8500 library.

Description		IP Address / Name
Connection 1	HBC Card Port: 2A ❑ 2B ❑	
	Host name	
	Gateway	
	Netmask	
Connection 2	HBC Card Port: 2A ❑ 2B ❑	
	Host name	
	Gateway	
	Netmask	
Connection 3	HBC Card Port: 2A ❑ 2B ❑	
	Host name	
	Gateway	
	Netmask	
Connection 4	HBC Card Port: 2A ❑ 2B ❑	
	Host name	
	Gateway	
	Netmask	

Important:

- When connecting more than one interface to an SL8500 library or library complex, the connections should be at least two different subnets for redundancy.

  If one subnet fails, communications between the hosts and the libraries continue over the other subnets.

- When connecting an interface to Port 2A, a service representative must configure routing and possibly assign policies for that port using the command line interface.

  Port 2B is the preferred port for host attachments to the library, no routing tables are required when connecting to that port.

- **The ports need to be on different Layer 2 broadcast domains**.

Redundant Electronics

Redundant electronics is a hardware activated and software controlled optional feature for the SL8500 library. This feature supplies automatic and manual switch over for failing HBC and HBT controller cards. Contents of the Redundant Electronics (RE) Conversion Bill includes:

- Released as Conversion Bill 104388 (conversion instructions 104403)
- Marketing X-option number XLS8500-REDELCT-Z
- Second pair of HBC and HBT controller cards
- Two electronics control module cPCI power supplies
- Electronics control module fan
- PUE Ethernet switch and supporting cables
- Four HBS modules
- Hardware

Note: All libraries in the *complex* must be at the same firmware level; however, not all libraries in the complex need to be equipped with the Redundant Electronics feature.

Requirements

Requirements include the following levels or *higher*:

- Library firmware **FRS_6.00**
- Library Console at Version **FRS_4.75**
- 2N Power configuration required

ACSLS (Automated Control Solution Library Software)

- ACSLS 7.3.1u is the upgrade (or PUT) for redundant electronic support.
- ACSLS 7.3.1r is the full release to be installed by new and upgrading customers for redundant electronic support.

  Note: Upgrade earlier ACSLS releases to 7.3.1 before upgrading the SL8500 code to FRS 6.00.

- ACSLS 8.0.2 RE support (scheduled later in the year 2010)
- ACSLS/HA (High Availability) 3.0

or

NCS (NearLine Control Solution)

- HSC (MVS) Version 6.2 – L1H15O1 (MVS)
- HSC (VM) Version 6.2 – L1H15O2 (VM)
- Enterprise Library Software (ELS) Version 7.0 – L1H15O3 (MVS)

Redundant Electronics for Compat 23 Phase 1

- HSC 6.2 PTFs: L1H15ME (MVS)
- HSC 6.2 PTFs: L1H15MF (VM)
- Enterprise Library Software (ELS) Version 7.0: L1H15MH (MVS)

Toleration Support for HSC and ELS

To allow a customer to connect to the SL8500 hardware without redundant electronics or Compat 23.

- HSC 6.2 PTFs – L1H15HA (MVS)
- HSC 6.2 PTFs – L1H15H9 (VM)
- Enterprise Library Software (ELS) Version 7.0 – L1H15HB (MVS)

Notes:

- Upgrading library firmware can be disruptive to customer operations. Schedule time with the customer to perform this upgrade.
- Hosts without the latest level of software (ACSLS or HSC) or without the latest PUTs and PTFs will not be able to support the redundant electronics feature.
- Software and firmware levels can be downloaded and ready in advance of activation. When the time and upgrade window are available, these upgrades can be activated.

  Preparation can limit down time of the library and operating system.

Preparation

For full redundancy, two things not included within the redundant electronics conversion bill must be done first to prepare the library.

- Upgrade of the control software (ACSLS or HSC)
- Upgrade of the firmware (FRS_6.0)

The third sequence may be done, depending upon you library's availability.

AC Power

The 2N power configuration supplies the library with redundant AC power. Installation instructions for this are separate from the redundant electronics conversion bill.

Library Firmware

Before installing any components for redundant operation, library firmware must be at FRS_6.0 or greater. Obtain this firmware from one of the following Web sites:

- http://dlrequest.sfbay.sun.com:88/usr/login (employees)
- http://spe.sun.com/spx/control/Login (Authorized service partner)

Controller Card Upgrades

When possible, upgrade the HBC and HBT controller cards in preparation for the redundant electronics hardware activation.

Redundant Electronics Network Entries Worksheet

When preparing the network and connections—as a best practice—complete a network entries worksheet for each port of the SL8500 library.

Description			IP Address
HBC 1	Port 2B	Library Software Version	
		Host name to Port 2B	
		HBC Card Port 2B	
		Gateway Port 2B	
		Netmask	
	Port 2A	Library Software Version	
		Host name to Port 2A	
		HBC Card Port 2A	
		Gateway Port 2A	
		Netmask	
HBC 2	Port 2B	Library Software Version	
		Host name to Port 2B	
		HBC Card Port 2B	
		Gateway Port 2B	
		Netmask	
	Port 2A	Library Software Version	
		Host name to Port 2A	
		HBC Card Port 2A	
		Gateway Port 2A	
		Netmask	

Important:

- When connecting more than one interface to an SL8500 library, the connections should be through **different subnets** for redundancy.

  If one subnet should fail, communications between the hosts and the libraries continue over the other subnet.

- When connecting an interface to Port 2A, a service representative must configure the routing and possibly assign policies for that port (2A) using the command line interface.

  Note: Port 2B is the default port for the library; no routing tables are required when connecting to that port. See “Host Connections” on page 222 for more information.

Library Management Software

Library management software applications control the library, manage the volume database—location and attribute information—plus command activities such as mounts, dismounts, enters, and ejects.

There are several software components depending on the platform, connection type, and operating system that support the SL8500 for both mainframe and open system platforms.

Note – The same library management software the customer currently has and is familiar with can probably be upgraded to support the SL8500 library.

Table 12 lists the compatibility matrix for library management software.

Table 12. Library Software Compatibility Matrix

Product	Required Version[1] (or higher)
ACSLS	7.1 or higher 7.3 or higher for Redundant Electronics 8.0 (future support)
ExHPDM	6.1 or 6.2
ExLM	6.0 or 6.2
ExPR	6.1 or 6.2
NCS[1] SMC HSC (MVS and VM) LibStation 1.4.3 VTCS	6.1 or 6.2 Check for the latest PTF availability and compatibility.
VSM VSM4e VSM4 VSM5	6.1 or 6.2 (includes VTCS and VTSS)
VTL VTL Plus VTL-V VTL-E	1.0 or 2.0
ELS*	7.0
* ELS = Enterprise Library Software—replacement for the NearLine Control Solution (NCS). [1]Make sure the latest PTFs and PUTs are installed.	

Library management software components control the library, manage the volume database—location and attribute information—plus command activities such as mounts, dismounts, enters, and ejects.

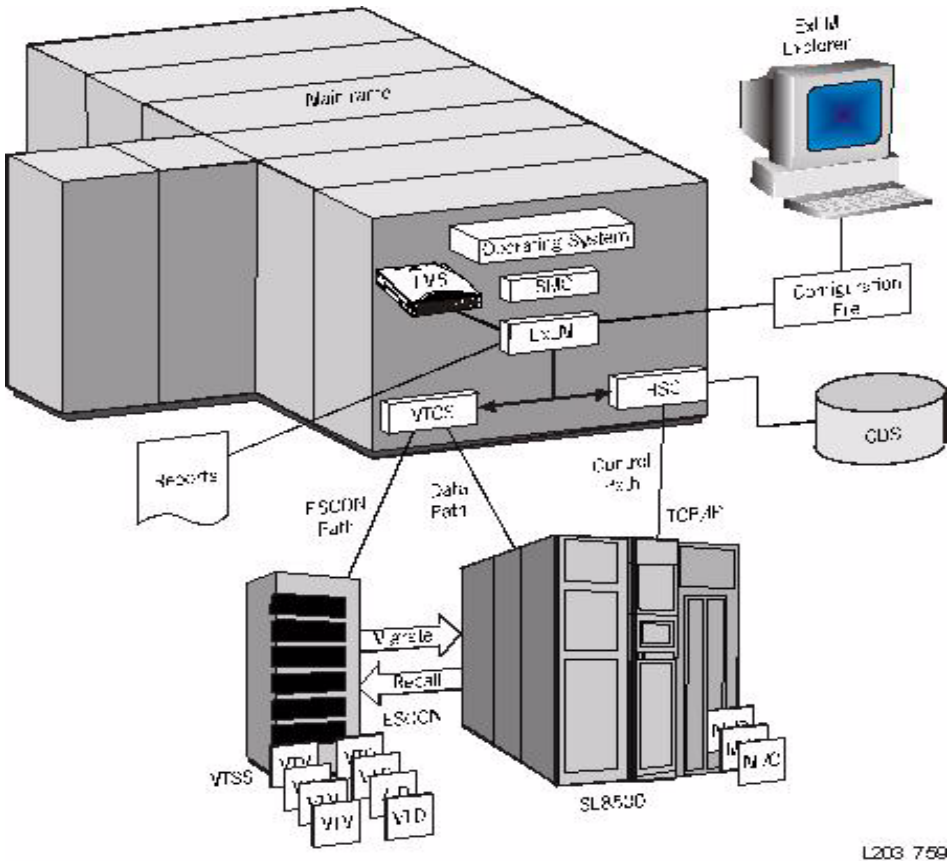
Note: The same library management software the customer currently has and is familiar with can be upgraded to support the SL8500 library.

Nearline Control Solution

StorageTek Nearline Control Solution (NCS) software provides library management and connectivity with mainframe products such as MVS and VM. This includes the following software applications (and more not listed):

- Storage Management Component (SMC)
- Host Software Component (HSC)
- Virtual Storage Manager (VSM)

Figure 18. Example: A Nearline Control Solution using HSC, ExLM, and VSM Products



Storage Management Component

Storage Management Component (SMC) is the interface between mainframe operating systems and the StorageTek automated library control systems, such as HSC and MVS/CSC. SMC's primary functions are:

- Influencing tape allocation according to hardware requirements and customer policies to ensure that appropriate tape drives are selected.

- Intercepting tape management, and operating system mount, dismount, and swap messages. Translating them in order to request the required tape hardware functions from the appropriate library control system.
- Coordinating requests among multiple StorageTek automated libraries.

Note: SMC must reside on every MVS host that accesses the SL8500 library plus real and virtual tape hardware.

Host Software Component

When an SL8500 library is in a configuration with an MVS host, the host must run a version of the StorageTek Host Software Component (HSC) along with the Storage Management Component (SMC) to:

- Influence allocations
- Intercept mount and dismount messages
- Receive requests from the interface and translates them into commands

Minimum Level of Support:
HSC 6.0 *with additional PTFs*[4] or higher is required for the SL8500 library. However, new tape drive technologies may require higher levels.

HSC 6.1 and Near Continuous Operation

HSC 6.1 added support for the SL8500 libraries called Near Continuous Operation (NCO). NCO provides users with the ability to modify their hardware configuration dynamically without terminating and restarting HSC.

It is possible to upgrade the SL8500 configuration without performing a LIBGEN, MERGEcds, or stopping and restarting HSC. However, this operation requires assistance from StorageTek. Refer to the Host Software Component Configuration Guide (such as PN 31259710) for more information.

HSC and Large Capacity Library Support

Table 13. HSC Large Library Support

Support	HSC 6.0.0	HSC 6.1.0
HSC 6.0 and 6.1 currently support 43 panels. The following PTFs are needed to allow support for up to 67 panels (five expansion modules):	SOS6000 - L1H122N	SOS6100 - L1H121Z
	SMS6000 - L1H122M	SMS6100 - L1H121Y
For customers using ExLM to support these configurations, HSC needs these additional PTFs	SOS6000 - L1H12VM	SOS6100 - L1H12VO
	SMS6000 - L1H12VN	SMS6100 - L1H12VP
To correct a problem with the Move utility when accessing over 20 panels, HSC needs these PTFs	SOS6000 - L1H12WR	SOS6100 - L1H12WT

4. PTF is a Program Temporary Fix.

Virtual Storage Manager

VSM is a virtual tape system that optimizes the tape storage systems for mainframe platforms.

VSM-type solutions consist of a server, disk storage, and front-end software, that complement the physical tape and library products.

The server, disk, and software provide a buffer or cache between the operating systems and the tape drives for storage in a library.

<table>
<tr><th>Hardware for a VSM solution consists of:</th><th>Software for a VSM solution consists of:</th></tr>
<tr><td>Fault tolerant RAID 6+ disk array</td><td rowspan="3">Virtual tape control system (VTCS) software resides on the host operating system in the same address space as HSC.
VTCS 6.0.0 preferred</td></tr>
<tr><td>Library and/or library storage modules (LSMs)</td></tr>
<tr><td>Real (physical) tape drives (RTDs) in a library</td></tr>
<tr><td>Multi-volume cartridges (MVCs)—physical cartridges</td><td>HSC 6.0+ minimum</td></tr>
</table>

HTTP Server

- HTTP Server for OS/390 and z/OS optionally provides the middleware to allow communication between the SMC (client) and a remote HSC subsystem (server).
- HTTP server executes as a separate subsystem on the MVS host where the remote HSC subsystem resides.

Extended High Performance Data Mover

Extended High Performance Data Mover (ExHPDM) is utility software that performs high-speed backup and restore of data sets by interleaving very large block sizes on high-speed, high-capacity tape devices.

ExHPDM achieves its speed by treating all data equally regardless of the type. Its only function is to move data from disk to very fast tape and back again.

ExHPDM's version of the best method to move data is to enable tape devices to move data at their maximum available speed by:

- Using 256 Kilobyte (KB) blocks or chunks of data
- Interleaving the 256 KB blocks onto single or multiple tape volumes.

The ExHPDM software moves blocks of data in parallel from several concurrently executing MVS application programs. The data from the application programs is buffered into 256 KB tape block sizes in the application program's address space and the 256 KB blocks are interleaved onto single or multiple tape volumes.

Expert Library Manager

Expert Library Manager (ExLM) software manages the contents of library storage modules (LSMs) and provides virtual tape management functions.

ExLM includes ExLM Explorer, a graphical user interface that you can use to configure ExLM by creating configuration files instead of parameter files.

ExLM provides the following management services:

- Maintain sufficient levels of scratch volumes by:
  - Distributing scratch volumes
  - Synchronizing the scratch status with the tape management system
- Ejecting scratch volumes that have been marked defective by the TMS.
- Requesting additional scratch volumes on the Enter Report.
- Maintain sufficient levels of free cells by:
  - Ejecting excess scratch volumes and less active data volumes.
  - Distributing free cells across LSMs within an ACS.
  - Maintain sufficient levels of cleaning cartridges.
- ExLM runs as a batch job.

Expert Performance Reporter

Expert Performance Reporter (ExPR) software collects performance data and generates reports about status and performance. ExPR has both an MVS component and a PC component.

- ExPR MVS, which resides on an MVS host system, builds and maintains a database of historical performance data that it collects from the library, from the MVS operating system, and optionally from the site's tape management system.
- Tabular performance and exception reports are generated directly from this database for display in the MVS environment. For ExPR MVS, all processes are controlled by a batch task interface.
- ExPR PC, which resides on one or more PCs, is a Windows application that manages user-customized subsets of the mainframe database on the PC. Data that is transferred from the mainframe database can be queried and displayed in graphical or tabular performance, exception, and quick summary reports.
- Data can also be ported to a Microsoft Excel-compatible spreadsheet and other external applications for further processing.

Enterprise Library Software

Enterprise Library Software (ELS) incorporates NCS products, VTCS products, and provides customers with a single, integrated software suite.

This suite is designed to:

- Provide the ability to enable tape libraries and virtual solutions, as well as
- Pro-actively monitor and manage this environment on a continuous basis.

ELS 7.0 is the successor to NCS 6.2 and VTCS 6.2 and consolidates HSC, VTCS, ExPR, ExLM, and ExHPDM. New functions include capacity planning and a management reporting GUI.

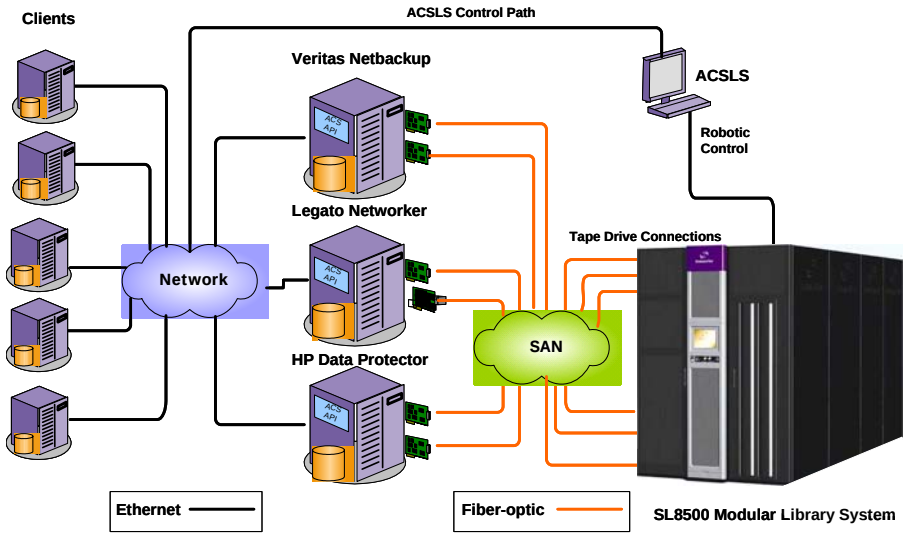
Automated Cartridge System Library Software

Figure 19 shows an example of an Automated Cartridge System Library Software (ACSLS) configuration. ACSLS is an open systems software package that manages library contents and controls library hardware to mount and dismount cartridges on tape drives. This application also provides library management services such as cartridge tracking, pooling, reports, and library control.

ACSLS 7.1 or higher is required. This is the only version of ACSLS which currently supports the SL8500 library.

Note: Make sure that PTF-809236 is applied.

Figure 19. ACSLS Example



Note: In this example, ACSLS is providing the Library Management Software.

If using ACSLS with Redundant Electronics feature, make sure the software is at the current level.

Client System Component

- MVS/CSC provides client functions and communications between an MVS host and the Library Control System (LCS) on a non-MVS host.
- MVS/CSC allows MVS clients to perform automatic tape handling on a library in addition to sharing multiple host systems.
- MVS/CSC communicates with LibraryStation in an MVS-only environment, or the SMC with an HTTP server to provide communication between hosts.

LibraryStation

LibraryStation provides a communications interface between HSC and one or more open systems clients running on different hosts.

LibraryStation provides an operator command set that allows you to control operation through the HSC operator console.

Independent Software Vendors

There are a variety of Independent Software Vendors (ISVs) that have tested their applications and support connection to the SL8500; for example, some applications include:

- BakBone NetVault 7.4+
- CA ArcServe 11.5+
- HP Data Protector 5.5/6.0
- Legato NetWorker 7.3/7.4
- SAM FS 4.6
- Tivoli Storage Manager 5.5.1
- Veritas BackupExec 11.0 and Netbackup 6.0/6.5

On different platforms, such as:

- HP, HP-UX
- IBM AIX
- Linux, both Red Hat and Suse
- Microsoft Windows
- Solaris

Note: Not every application is tested on every platform or platform version.

Check with a StorageTek Representative, Application Vendor, and the Interoperability Tool at: https://extranet.stortek.com/interop/interop to make sure the selected solution is supported.

Table 14. Independent Software Vendors

Backup Application	Solaris	IBM AIX	HP-UX	Microsoft Windows	Linux	
					Red Hat	SUSE
Legato NetWorker 7.3/7.4	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
Tivoli Storage Manager 5.5.1	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
Symantec Netbackup 6.0/6.5	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	TBD
CA ArcServe 11.5+	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	N/A	N/A
HP Data Protector 5.5/6.0	Yes	N/A	Yes	Yes	N/A	N/A
BakBone NetVault 8.2+	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
SAM-FS 4.6	Yes	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A

Simple Network Management Protocol

Simple Network Management Protocol (SNMP) is an application layer protocol that performs network management operations over an Ethernet connection using a User Datagram Protocol (UDP/IP). SNMP allows:

- Libraries to inform the systems administrator of potential problems.
- Systems administrators to query the library for configuration, operation, and statistical information.

Refer to the SNMP Reference Guide PN: 31619470x for more information.

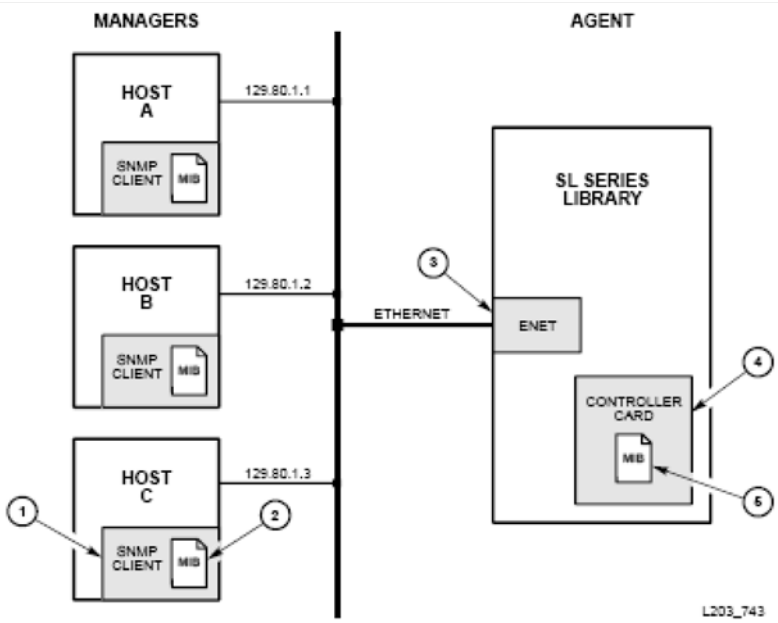
The SL8500 libraries support:

- **SNMPv2c** of the simple network management protocol for machine status queries. Note: with this version, any information transmitted is *not* secure.
- **SNMPv3** of the simple network management protocol is reserved for *proprietary* information. Because this version supports encryption and stronger user identification it is the preferred protocol for proprietary data.

Figure 20 is a simple network block diagram that identifies the locations of the SNMP software application. This figure also identifies examples of:

- IP addresses
- Ethernet connections
- Management Information Base (MIB) locations
- Library controller–HBC card

Figure 20. SNMP Block Diagram



1. SNMP software application that implements the role of manager. Examples are SunNet Manager, HP OpenView, and IBM NetView.
2. The Management Information Base (MIB), copied from the library controller card.
3. Ethernet connection (ENET) for the library (HBC card, port 2B).
4. The SNMP agent is a process running on the library controller card (HBC card).
5. Library MIB data can be:
   Read by v2c users;
   Read/*write* only by v3 users

Note: MIB data can be read through the Library Console

Note: Library Console software must be version 2.91 (2.26.00) or higher.

By default, the SNMP agent is turned off and must be activated by a service representative through the Command Line Interface (CLI).

- Future releases will allow the addition or deletion of users or recipients through the SNMP interface (after enabling SNMP through the CLI).
- Because SNMP can only be enabled through the CLI port, *you must work with your customer to setup SNMP.*
- When working with your customer it is important that you keep the security of proprietary information as your first consideration.

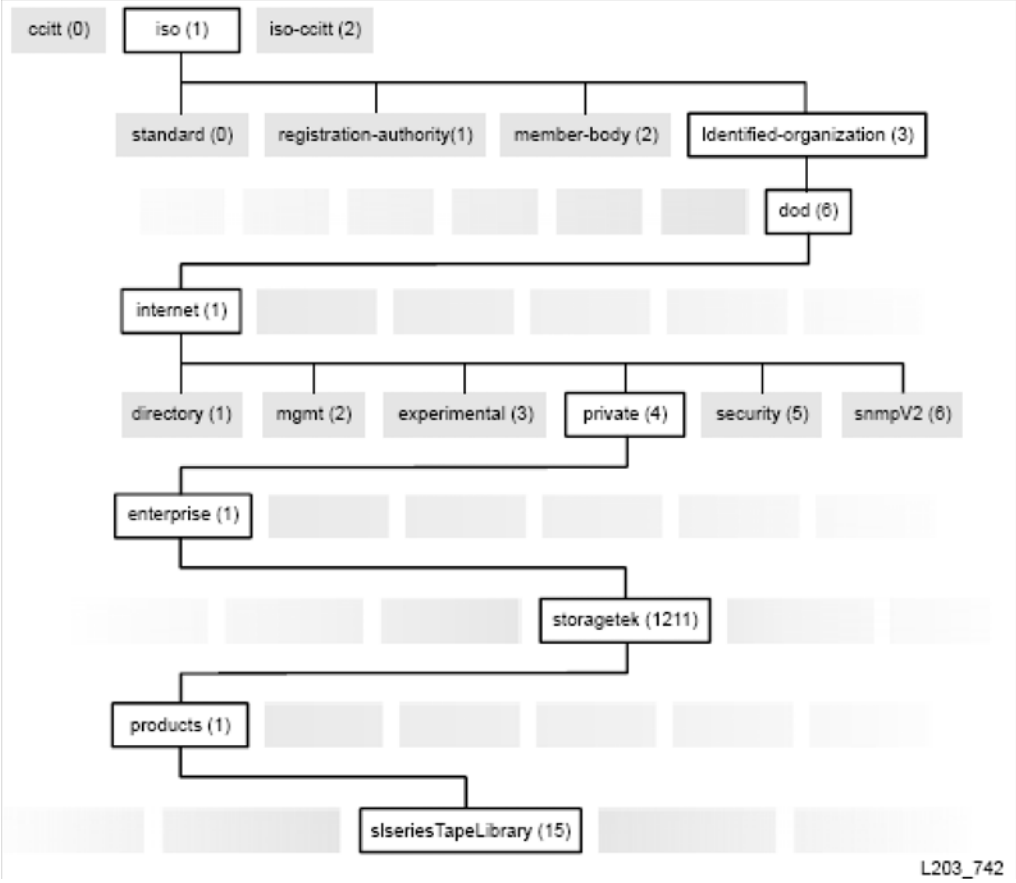
Management Information Base

The MIB is a viewable document that contains descriptions about the characteristics for a managed device. These characteristics are the functional elements for that device which can be monitored using SNMP software.

Note: SL8500 libraries implement only MIB extensions defined in the SLSERIES-TAPE-LIBRARY-MIB under the **private (4)** section

Figure 21. Management Information Base Hierarchy

Object Name = StorageTek-Tape-Library-MIB:TapeLibrary == 1.3.6.1.4.1.1.1211.1.15



Tape Drives

Table 15. Supported Tape Drives

The SL8500 library supports a wide variety of tape drives with one requirement, the interface to these drives must be fiber-optic based, meaning Fibre Channel, FICON[1], or ESCON[2] attachments.
Note: ***SCSI interfaces are not supported.***

See Appendix C, "Tape Drives" for specific information about the drives.

Drive Type	Vendor	Description	Interface Type
T9840 A, B, C, & D	StorageTek	T9840 are *access-centric* tape drives that are ideal for applications that demand high data throughput and fast recall. These drives use a *dual-reel* cartridge with transfer rates and capacities of: • A: 20 GB with rates at 10 MB/s* • B: 20 GB with rates at 19 MB/s • C: 40 GB with rates at 30 MB/s • D: 75 GB with rates at 30 MB/s (encryption-capable)	Fibre Channel, FICON*, ESCON* **Note:** Fibre Channel must be Fabric aware
T9940 B (only)	StorageTek	T9940 are *high-capacity* tape drives designed for storage applications and use a single reel tape cartridge with transfer rates and capacities of: • 200 GB with transfer rates of 30 MB/s *Note: The T9940A tape drive is not supported.*	Fibre Channel, FICON*, ESCON*
T10000 A & B	StorageTek	T10000 are *high-capacity, high-performance* tape drives that use a single reel tape cartridge with a native storage capacity and transfer rates of: • 500 GB native capacity with rates up to 120 MB/s • 1 TB native capacity • Both models are encryption-capable	Fibre Channel FICON*
LTO2 LTO3 LTO4 LTO5	Hewlett Packard (HP) IBM	Ultrium Linear Tape-Open (LTO) is an "open format" technology, which means that users have multiple sources of product and media. The "open" nature of LTO technology enables compatibility between the two different vendors. These drives use a single reel tape cartridge with native transfer rates and capacities of: • LTO2 drives: 200 GB at 35 MB/s • LTO3 drives: 400 GB at 80 MB/s • LTO4 drives: 800 GB • LTO5 drives: 1,500 GB	Fibre Channel
SDLT 600 DLT-S4	Quantum	Super DLT (SDLT) is a standard for UNIX and Windows. • SDLT 600: 300 GB, with transfer rates of 36 MB/s • DLT-S4	Fibre Channel

1. *Fiber Connection*, or *Fiber Connectivity (FICON)*—IBM's fiber optic channel technology that extends the capabilities of ESCON. FICON supports full duplex data transfers over longer distances.
2. *Enterprise Systems Connection*, or *Enterprise Systems Connectivity (ESCON)*—an IBM fiber optic channel technology that supports half duplex data transfers up to 200 Mb/s.

Media and Labels

Table 16. Media

Tape Cartridges	*Media Usage:* The storage media (tape cartridges) used in a tape drive and/or library can have a *significant* impact on the overall performance. See Appendix D, "Media" for specific information about the tape cartridges.	
Barcode Standards	The SL8500 library requires labels based on the Code 39 barcode standard. This standard uses discrete barcodes, which means that a fixed pattern of bars represents a single character. Each character is made up of 9 bars—5 black bars and 4 white bars—3 of which are wider than the others. This is the reason for the name Code 39 and why some people refer to it as the 3 of 9 Code. These barcode labels are based on the following specifications: • AIM Uniform Symbology Specification USS-39 • ANSI MH10.8M-1993 Code 39 Barcode Specification • ANSI NCITS 314-199X SCSI 3 Medium Changer Commands (SMC) *All labels must conform to these standards when used in the SL8500 library.*	
Labels	**9x40**	Uses a *six-plus-one* label supplied by Engineered Data Products/ Colorflex) and American Eagle/Writeline. The plus-one is the required media ID character.
	T10000	Uses labels with *eight* characters, the last two of which are the required Media ID Domain and the Media ID Type characters.
	LTO	Uses labels with *eight* characters, the last two of which are the required Media ID Domain and the Media ID Type characters.
	SDLT	Uses labels with *seven* characters, the last of which is the required media ID character with an implied domain type of 1.
Media ID Labels	The use of *media ID* labels allows StorageTek libraries to mix tape drive types and media types in a single library or library complex to provide customers with a true *mixed media solution* called: *Any Cartridge, Any Slot*™	
Non-labeled Cartridges	Non-labeled cartridges are *not* supported in the SL8500 library. If non-labeled cartridges are left inside the library and a software audit (such as HSC) is initiated, the cartridges will be exported through the CAP. **Caution:** **The SL8500 is able to scan upside-down LTO or SDLT cartridges and insert them into cells. However, mounts of these upside-down cartridges will fail. Currently, the library returns these cartridges back to the cell and does not eject them through the CAP.**	
Upside Down Cartridges	Handling and installing cartridges correctly is very important and must be emphasized to operators. Especially inserting a 9x40 cartridge upside down, this can cause damage to the HandBot and to the cartridge. The behavior for upside down cartridges is explained in the following sections.	

Safety Features

The SL8500 library has a combination of safety features to ensure safety throughout the library.

Emergency Robotic Stop

Emergency robotic stop (ERS) is the removal of AC and DC power to the *robotics*, such as the HandBots, pass-thru ports, CAPs, and elevators; the library and tape drives *are not* affected. The emergency robotic stop ensures that no robotic motion occurs while someone is inside the library.

The library has two ERS switches:

- One interior lighted switch on the left side of the drive bay area
- One non-illuminated, covered switch, on the front panel

Pressing an ERS switch immediately removes AC and DC power to the robotics (not the entire library). After it is determined that it is safe to restore power, press the switch again to reset it.

Door Switches

The library has four front door switches on the Customer Interface Module that monitor the state of the front access doors; should a door be opened without using service mode, these switches remove power from the robotics.

Smoke Detection

In the event of smoke in or around the library, a photo-electric smoke detector mounted in the upper right section of the Drive and Electronics Module, *removes all power from the library*.

Power is restored to the library by resetting the AC circuit breakers.

Service Mode

Service mode is a method that qualified service representatives can use to access the front service area of the library while the library remains operational. This allows the service representative to perform such operations as HandBot replacement, elevator or turntable motor replacement, or CAP replacement.

Note: This mode is not permitted by an operator. Only qualified service representative with a service mode key can initiate service.

Interlocks

The library features two types of safety interlocks:

- **Door frames:** Two redundant switches behind each front access door of the Customer Interface Module.
- **Service safety door:** Two sets of dual switches located on the upper section of the front frame for the service safety door.

Mechanical Access Door Mechanism

On the rear section of each door lock, a mechanism is available to mechanically release the door lock from the inside. This is a non-electrical safeguard against someone being locked inside the library. Should an access door be shut and locked from the outside, someone inside the library can push on the mechanism to unlock and open the door.

Service Safety Door

The optional service safety door is a sliding door that is activated by the maintenance key. This maintenance key is controlled *only* by service representatives and is used when a failing component in the front of the library needs to be replaced.

The service safety door moves either to the left or right, depending upon which maintenance lock is opened. When the maintenance key is inserted into its lock and turned, the safety door separates the forward maintenance area from the library interior. This allows the service representative to safely replace a failing front frame component while the library remains fully operational.

Interior Lighting

The interior of the library is always illuminated with *white* LEDs on the ceiling.

The ceiling of the Customer Interface Module has *yellow* (hazard) LEDs that flash when the library is in service mode and for approximately 10 seconds when the doors are closed to alert anyone who may still be inside the library.

Fire Suppression

The library does *not* ship with a Fire Suppression System installed, although features have been incorporated into the library to allow fire suppression systems to be installed.

Professional Services offers fire suppression systems which are installed on site. See “Fire Suppression Planning” on page 101 for more information.

Regulatory Agencies

The following regulatory agencies have tested and certified the SL8500 library.

Safety

- Underwriters Laboratories Inc. (UL) - in compliance with UL 60950-1 First Edition, Standard for Information Technology Equipment - Safety Part 1: General Requirements.
- Canadian Standards Association (CSA) - in compliance with CAN/CSA-C22.2 No. 60950-1-03 First Edition, Standard for Information Technology Equipment - Safety - Part 1: General Requirements.
- TUV Rheinland (TUV) - in compliance with EN 60950-1 (IEC 60950-1:2001, modified), Standard for Information Technology Equipment - Safety - Part 1: General Requirements.
- CB Scheme - in compliance to international Certified Body Scheme requirements with all national deviations by TUV Rheinland.

Electromagnetic

Configuration used for verification and compliance is an SL8500 Modular Library with a TCP/IP connection and 4 to 64 tape drives:

- Federal Communications Commission (FCC) – in compliance to the requirements of FCC 47, Part15, Subpart B and Unintentional Radiators Class A.
- Voluntary Control Council for Interference (VCCI) (Japan) – in compliance to VCCI Class A (Cispr22).
- Australia/New Zealand (C-Tick Mark) – in compliance to requirements of the Australia/New Zealand EMC Framework AS/NZS 3548: 1995 Class A.
- European Community (CE Mark) – in compliance to the requirements of Electromagnetic Compatibility Directive 89/336 (including all amendments).
- Canadian Emissions (ICES) – in compliance to the requirements of Canada's Interference Causing Equipment Standard ICES-003 Class A.
- Taiwan (BSMI) – in compliance to the requirements of Taiwan’s requirements, CNS13438 Class A.
- Korea – in compliance to the requirements of Korean EMC Law.

Fiber-optic

Each fiber-optic interface in this StorageTek Fibre Channel equipment contains a laser transceiver that is a Class 1 Laser Product.

Note: Each laser transceiver has an output of less than 70 µW.

StorageTek's Class 1 Laser Products comply with EN60825-1:1994+A1+A2 and with sections 21 CFR 1040.10 and 1040.11 of the Food and Drug Administration (FDA) regulations.

Caution: Use of controls or adjustment or performance of procedures other than those specified herein might result in hazardous radiation exposure.

Laser Product Label

In accordance with safety regulations, a label on each StorageTek Fibre Channel product identifies the laser class of the product and the place and date of the manufacturer. The label appears on top of a Fibre Channel tape drive and near the Fibre Channel connectors on a Fibre Channel tape library. A copy of the label is shown here:

CLASS 1 LASER PRODUCT LASER KLASSE 1 APPAREIL A LASER DE CLASSE 1 COMPLIES WITH 21 CFR 1040.10 AND 1040.11

The following translations are for users in Finland and Sweden who wish to identify laser safety and classification:

CLASS 1 LASER LUOKAN 1 LASERLAITE KLASSE 1 LASER APPARAT

Shock, Vibration, and Impact Tests

The SL8500 library successfully completed all shock, vibration and impact tests required in Engineering Design Standard 6-1 (EDS 6-1) Environmental Requirements for StorageTek Products.

System Assurance

2

The system assurance process is the exchange of information among team members to ensure that no aspects of the sale, order, installation and implementation for the StorageTek SL8500 Library are overlooked. This process promotes an error-free installation and contributes to the overall customer satisfaction.

The system assurance team members (customer and StorageTek) ensure that all aspects of the process are planned carefully and performed efficiently. This process begins when the customer accepts the sales proposal. At this time, a StorageTek representative schedules the system assurance planning meetings.

System Assurance Planning Meetings

The purpose of the system assurance planning meetings are to:

- Introduce the customer to the SL8500 Library
- Explain the system assurance process and establish the team
- Identify and define the customer requirements
- Identify the customer configurations
- Complete the order
- Prepare for the installation and implementation

Table 17. System Assurance Task Checklist

Task	Completed?
Introduce the teams to the SL8500 library.	Yes ❑ No ❑
Complete the following Team Member Contact sheets.	Yes ❑ No ❑
Review and complete the "Site Survey Forms" in Chapter 3.	Yes ❑ No ❑
Review and complete "Site Preparation" in Chapter 4.	Yes ❑ No ❑
Review the "Ordering Information" in Chapter 5.	Yes ❑ No❑
Determine the schedule:	
Delivery: Date:_____ Time: _____	Yes ❑ No ❑
Installation: Date:_____ Time: _____	Yes ❑ No ❑

Customer Team Member Contact Sheet

Complete the information for the customer team members:

Primary Contact:

Name:

Title:

Telephone Number:

FAX Number:

Cell Phone / Pager:

E-mail Address:

Systems Administrator or other

Name:

Title:

Telephone Number:

FAX Number:

Cell Phone / Pager:

E-mail Address:

Network Administrator or other

Name:

Title:

Telephone Number:

FAX Number:

Cell Phone / Pager:

E-mail Address:

Facilities Manager or other

Name:

Title:

Telephone Number:

FAX Number:

Cell Phone / Pager:

E-mail Address:

StorageTek Team Member Contact Sheet

Complete the information for the StorageTek team members:

Account Executive or other

Name:

Title:

Telephone Number:

FAX Number:

Cell Phone / Pager:

E-mail Address:

Systems Engineer or other

Name:

Title:

Telephone Number:

FAX Number:

Cell Phone / Pager:

E-mail Address:

Installation Coordinator or other

Name:

Title:

Telephone Number:

FAX Number:

Cell Phone / Pager:

E-mail Address:

Professional Services Representative or other

Name:

Title:

Telephone Number:

FAX Number:

Cell Phone / Pager:

E-mail Address:

Engagement Methodology

Each individual engagement is different; different customers, different needs, and different requirements.

In addition to system assurance, StorageTek has standardized and implemented a delivery methodology that provides continuity and quality assurance in the engagement and delivery approach. This suggested methodology is called ADIM:

- **A**ssess
- **D**esign
- **I**mplement
- **M**anage

This methodology consists of a defined path of action and a series of templates and checklists for the exchange of information. These templates and checklists document the necessary information to ensure that the proposed solution can be delivered and supported to achieve StorageTek's customer satisfaction requirements.

Designed for StorageTek marketing, sales, and engagement personnel (such as Systems Engineers and Professional Services Engineers, *plus* qualified and approved partners), following this methodology allows us to work together, provide consistent documentation for each engagement and to ensure both customer satisfaction and overall sales success. The information in the following chapters is intended to help you:

Table 18. Engagement Methodology

Action:	Refer to:
Ask the right questions	• Chapter 3, "Site Survey Forms"
Design the right solution	• Appendix A, "Content Management"
Determine if the customer needs assistance migrating currently owned equipment, networks, and media	• Best Practices Guide
Make sure the site is ready to receive the SL8500 library	• Chapter 4, "Site Preparation"
Order, install, and implement that solution	• Chapter 5, "Ordering Information"
Make sure the customer knows how to use the library	• Customer Orientation Checklist • User's Guide
Provide qualified service and support	• Installation Manual • Best Practices Guide • Replaceable Parts Catalog • Troubleshooting Guide
Follow-up; Make sure the solution meets the customers expectations	• Customer Satisfaction

Site Survey Forms

3

Use this chapter to record the:

- Different platforms, applications, and hardware configurations
- Workloads for content management planning
- SL8500 configuration

Interoperability

Important:
Not sure if your customer's software of choice supports StorageTek hardware?

Do the different network components support each other?

Check out the Interoperability Tool at:

https://interop.central.sun.com/interop/interop

The Interop Tool is designed for connectivity information on all supported products regardless of the company or vendor branding The configurations listed are reflective of the most up-to-date information reported from various sources, including testing labs and our technology partners.

The Interop Tool lists configurations with valid connectivity, *it does not validate.*

System Configuration

The following two pages provide space where you can record information about the customers operating systems and configurations.

Table 19. Questions About the Customers Operating Systems

Question	Answer
1. How many and what types of operating systems or platforms does the customer have? Open-Systems: • Windows: 2000, NT... Make & Model: Quantity: • UNIX: Solaris, AIX, HP-UX... Make & Model: Quantity: • Linux... Make & Model: Quantity: Mainframe: • MVS Make & Model: Quantity: • VM Make & Model: Quantity: Other (Specify): Make & Model: Quantity:	
2. Are there plans for: • New purchases? • Future upgrades? • If so, what?	
3. How many systems/servers are used as: • Backup servers? • File servers? • Print servers? • Exchange servers?	

Table 20. System Configuration

System _____	**Processor** _____	**Processor** _____
Vendor Make & Model		
Operating System Type		
Version Number & Patch Level		
Number of Channels		
IP Address		
HBA Vendor & Model		
HBA Firmware Versions		
Switch & Port Numbers		
Switch Make & Model		
ESCD and HCD support		
ESCON Director Make & Model		
ESCON Manager		
FICON support		
EREP		
Ports		
System _____	**Processor** _____	**Processor** _____
Vendor Make & Model		
Operating System		
Version Number & Patch Level		
Number of Channels		
IP Address		
HBA Vendor & Model		
HBA Firmware Versions		
Switch & Port Numbers		
Switch Make & Model		
ESCD and HCD support		
ESCON Director Make & Model		
ESCON Manager		
FICON support		
EREP		
Ports		

Applications

The following two pages provide space where you can record information about the customer's applications.

Table 21. Questions About the Customers Applications

Question	Answer
1. How many servers or systems perform backups? 2. How are backups performed, manually or automatically?	
3. On what days are backups performed? 4. What types of backups are performed and when? • Full: • Incremental: • Differential: 5. How many hours are available for: • Full backups? • Daily Backups?	
6. How much data is backed up: • Per day? • Per week? • Per month? 7. How much data changes daily (%)?	
8. Are backup windows being met? 9. How long does it actually take? 10. How long should a backup take? 11. Is a different backup schedule needed?	
12. How long does the customer keep the different levels of backed up data? 13. How many copies are made (including the original)? 14. How many copies are archived?	
15. How often are restores necessary? 16. Why are restores necessary? 17. What are the restore requirements? 18. What are the restore objectives?	

Table 22. Backup and Archive Software

Selection	Type of Backup and Archive Software	Version
❑	VERITAS NetBackup	
❑	IBM Tivoli Storage Manager (TSM)	
❑	Legato NetWorker	
❑	CA Brightstor	
❑	HP Omniback	
❑	ASM UNIX	
❑	ASM NT	
❑	ASM OS/390	
❑	E-Mail Archive	
❑	Other (Specify)	
❑	Other (Specify)	

Table 23. Network Management Software

Selection	Type of Network Management	Version
❑	VERITAS	
❑	IBM Tivoli NetView	
❑	HP OpenView	
❑	HP SUNNet	
❑	Horizon Library Monitor	
❑	RMS/GSM	
❑	Other (Specify)	
❑	Other (Specify)	

Table 24. Library Attachment Software

Selection	Type of Library Attachment	Version
❑	HSC	
❑	ACSLS	
❑	ACSLS HA	
❑	Direct SCSI	
❑	Fibre Channel	
❑	Horizon Library Manager	
❑	Other (Specify)	

MVS General Information

Table 25. MVS Information

Yes	No	Question and Response
❑	❑	Does the customer have any software products that modify JES2 allocation (IEFAB421) or the JES3 device scheduler (IATMADL)? If yes, explain:
❑	❑	Does the customer have any software products that modify JES2/ JES3 message handling *write to operator* (WTO Exit)? If yes, explain:
❑	❑	Does the customer use Data Facility/System Managed Storage (DF/SMS)? If yes, explain:
❑	❑	Does the customer use JES3 only?
❑	❑	Will JES3 setup control the tape drives? Refer to the JES3 section in the *HSC System Programmers' Guide.*
❑	❑	Does the customer have any software products that modify DETACH message, DIAGNOSE, IUCV DASD BLOCKIO, RSCS?

What are the major bottlenecks in their system today?

❑	❑	Will any JCL changes have to be made to accommodate a library? If yes, explain:
❑	❑	Does the customer have any special IPL considerations? If yes, explain:

ACSLS General Information

The ACSLS Product Information Bulletin defines the operating system and hardware requirements for each ACSLS version.

Table 26. ACSLS Information

Yes	No	Question & Response
❑	❑	Does this customer have a UNIX-based library control system? If yes, which operating system is installed (example, Solaris 2.6)?
		If yes, which release of ACSLS is installed?
❑	❑	Has the library control system been identified as a node on the Ethernet network? What is the internet (IP) address of the library control system?
		What is the network host-name of the library control system?
❑	❑	Does the customer intend to run other applications on the same platform as ACSLS?

Note: If the UNIX platform is intended to run co-host applications, the customer should have an experienced system administrator resolve any conflicting resources between applications. StorageTek supports only the ACSLS applications.

Data Bases

Table 27. Questions About the Customers Data Base

Question	Answer
1. How much primary storage exists? Total capacity.	
2. What type and size of disk drives does the customer have? Make: Model: Capacity: Quantity:	
Make: Model: Capacity: Quantity:	
3. What is the RAID configuration? 4. What type of Failover product and Version is the customer using?	
5. Does all primary storage require backup? If not, how much does? 6. Are additional storage devices needed?	
7. What Data Base Management Systems (DBMS's) does the customer have? 8. What types of databases need backups? 9. What is the size of the smallest database? 10. What is the size of the largest database? 11. How often does the customer backup each database?	
12. What type of data is the customer backing up? 13. How valuable is the data in each database? 14. Do the different databases have different backup requirements?	
15. How is the customer currently protecting the databases (tape backup, mirroring, snapshot)? 16. If mirroring, how many mirrors? 17. Is mirroring installed because failover is required?	

Hardware Configurations

List any existing hardware the customer currently has:

- Does the customer have any existing libraries? ❑ Yes ❑ No
- Does the customer have any existing tape drives? ❑ Yes ❑ No
- Does the customer have any existing media for reuse? ❑ Yes ❑ No
- Does the customer have an existing storage area network? ❑ Yes ❑ No
- Are migration services required? ❑ Yes ❑ No

Library

- Will this SL8500 library be replacing existing libraries? ❑ Yes ❑ No
- Replacing existing StorageTek libraries? ❑ Yes ❑ No
- If so, what are the module numbers? _____

Table 28. Existing Libraries

Libraries	Description	Quantity
Manufacturer		
Make & Model		
Cartridge Capacity		
Manufacturer		
Make & Model		
Cartridge Capacity		

Tape Drives

See Appendix C for information about tape drives.

- Does the customer have existing StorageTek tape drives? ❑ Yes ❑ No
- Does the customer need more tape drives? ❑ Yes ❑ No
- What types of drives are needed? _____

Table 29. Tape Drive Types

Tape Drive Type	Yes	No	Vendor
3480 or 3490-type devices (18/36 track)	❑	❑	
DLT 7000 or 8000	❑	❑	
StorageTek T9840	❑	❑	
StorageTek T9940 B only	❑	❑	
StorageTek T10000 A or B	❑	❑	
SDLT 320 or 600	❑	❑	
LTO Generation 2, 3, 4, or 5	❑	❑	

Table 30. Existing Tape Drives

Tape Drives	Description	Quantity
Manufacturer		
Make & Model		
Manufacturer		
Make & Model		
Manufacturer		
Make & Model		

Tape Cartridges

See Appendix D for information about tape cartridges.

- Approximately, how many tape cartridges does the customer have? _____
- Does the customer need more tapes? ❑ Yes ❑ No
- Data cartridges? ❑ Yes ❑ No
- Cleaning cartridges? ❑ Yes ❑ No

Table 31. Existing Tape Cartridges

Tape Cartridges	Description	Quantity
Data Cartridge Type		
Manufacturer		
Data Cartridge Type		
Manufacturer		
Data Cartridge Type		
Manufacturer		
Data Cartridge Type		
Manufacturer		
Cleaning Cartridge Type		
Manufacturer		
Cleaning Cartridge Type		
Manufacturer		
Cleaning Cartridge Type		
Manufacturer		
Cleaning Cartridge Type		
Manufacturer		

Network

- Does the customer have an existing storage area network? ❑ Yes ❑ No
- Are additional network devices required? ❑ Yes ❑ No
- What are they? _____

- Does the customer use *zones* in the network? ❑ Yes ❑ No
- Are there frequent reconfigurations of the network? ❑ Yes ❑ No
- Are there multiple floors involved with this network? ❑ Yes ❑ No
- Are there inter-connections of hubs and switches? ❑ Yes ❑ No
- Are there remote connections to hubs and switches? ❑ Yes ❑ No

- Is this a campus network? ❑ Yes ❑ No
- Are trunk cables used? ❑ Yes ❑ No
- Are patch panels used? ❑ Yes ❑ No

Table 32. Fibre Channel Switches

Information	Switch 1	Switch 2	Switch 3
Manufacturer			
Make & Model			
Software version			
Speed			
Number of Ports			
Port types			
GBIC Module types			
Number of Open Ports			
IP Addresses			
IP Addresses			

Table 33. Ethernet Hubs and Switches

Information	Hub/Switch 1	Hub/Switch 2	Hub/Switch 3
Manufacturer			
Make & Model			
Number of Ports			
Software version			
Speed			
Duplex			
Number of Open Ports			
IP Addresses			
IP Addresses			

Table 34. Fibre Channel Switch Connections

FC Switch Information	Switch 1	Switch 2	Switch 3
Vendor			
Model Number			
Port 0 Connection and Status			
Port 1 Connection and Status			
Port 2 Connection and Status			
Port 3 Connection and Status			
Port 4 Connection and Status			
Port 5 Connection and Status			
Port 6 Connection and Status			
Port 7 Connection and Status			
Port 8 Connection and Status			
Port 9 Connection and Status			
Port 10 Connection and Status			
Port 11 Connection and Status			
Port 12 Connection and Status			
Port 13 Connection and Status			
Port 14 Connection and Status			
Port 15 Connection and Status			
Port 16 Connection and Status			
Port 17 Connection and Status			
Port 18 Connection and Status			
Port 19 Connection and Status			
Port 20 Connection and Status			
Port 21 Connection and Status			
Port 22 Connection and Status			
Port 23 Connection and Status			
Port 24 Connection and Status			
Port 25 Connection and Status			
Port 26 Connection and Status			
Port 27 Connection and Status			
Port 28 Connection and Status			
Port 29 Connection and Status			
Port 30 Connection and Status			
Port 31 Connection and Status			

ESCON Directors

- How many ESCON Directors does the customer have? _____
- Is an extended distance facility or feature installed? ❑ Yes ❑ No
- Are patch panels used? ❑ Yes ❑ No
- How many ports? _____
  (18, 36, 72)
- Are trunk cables used? ❑ Yes ❑ No
  How many? _____
- What type of connectors are used? _____
  (ST, MTP, ESCON, MTRJ)
- Are couplers used? ❑ Yes ❑ No
- Are adapters used? ❑ Yes ❑ No
- Are standard or custom ESCON jumper cables used? ❑ Std ❑ Custom
- Are there any FICON Bridge Ports? ❑ Yes ❑ No
- Are Fibre Transport Services used with trunk cables? ❑ Yes ❑ No

Table 35. ESCON Directors

Information	Director 1	Director 2	Director 3
Manufacturer			
Make & Model			
Software version			
Ports per card			
Number of LED ports			
Number of XDF ports			
Number of FICON ports			
Number of Bridge cards			
Number of Open ports			
Channel Addresses			
Channel Addresses			
IP Addresses			
IP Addresses			

FICON Directors

FICON products use a mapping layer based on the existing ANSI standards and physical cabling for Fibre Channel but uses different switches called directors similar to ESCON.

- What type of operating system does the customer have? _____ (z/OS, OS/390, 9672 G5/G6, etc.)
- How many FICON Directors does the customer have? _____
- Are cascaded directors used to extend distance? ❑ Yes ❑ No
- Are patch panels used? ❑ Yes ❑ No
- How many ports? _____
- Are trunk cables used? ❑ Yes ❑ No
  How many? _____
- What type of connectors are used? _____

Table 36. FICON Director Worksheet

FICON Director Worksheet								
Manufacturer:				**Type:**			**Model:**	
HCD Switch ID: **Director Domain ID (@)**					**Cascaded Directors** ❑ Yes ❑ No **Fabric Name:**			
Director F_Ports					**Attached N_Ports or E_Ports**			
Slot #	**Port #**	**Port Address**	**Type (LX / SX)**	**Port Name**	**Node (CU/Chnl)**	**Device Type**	**Model**	**ISL CU Intf. CHPID**

Cables and Connectors

Note: Plan for 1–2 m (3–7 ft) of slack cable for limited movement and routing.

Table 37. Cables and Connectors

Type	Connector	Length	Quantity
9 Micron fiber-optic	LC-to-LC		
	LC-to-SC		
Other (specify)			
50 Micron fiber-optic	LC-to-LC		
	LC-to-SC		
	LC-to-ST		
Other (specify)			
62.5 Micron fiber-optic	SC-to-SC		
Other (specify)			
ESCON	Duplex		
	Duplex -to-ST		
FICON	LC-to-LC		
	LC-to-SC		
	LC-to-ST		
Other (specify)			
MT-RJ	MT-to-MT		
	MT-to-Duplex		
	MT-to-ST		
Other (specify)			
Copper	DB-9		
	HSSDC		
Ethernet (CAT5E)	RS-232		
Other (specify)			

Planning for Content

When planning the content of an SL8500 library, see:

- Appendix A, “Content Management” and
- Appendix H, “Partitioning”

Using Figure 22 as an example, the following pages provide space that you can use to help plan the content of an SL8500 library.

Make additional copies of these sheets as necessary.

Figure 22. Content Management Plan

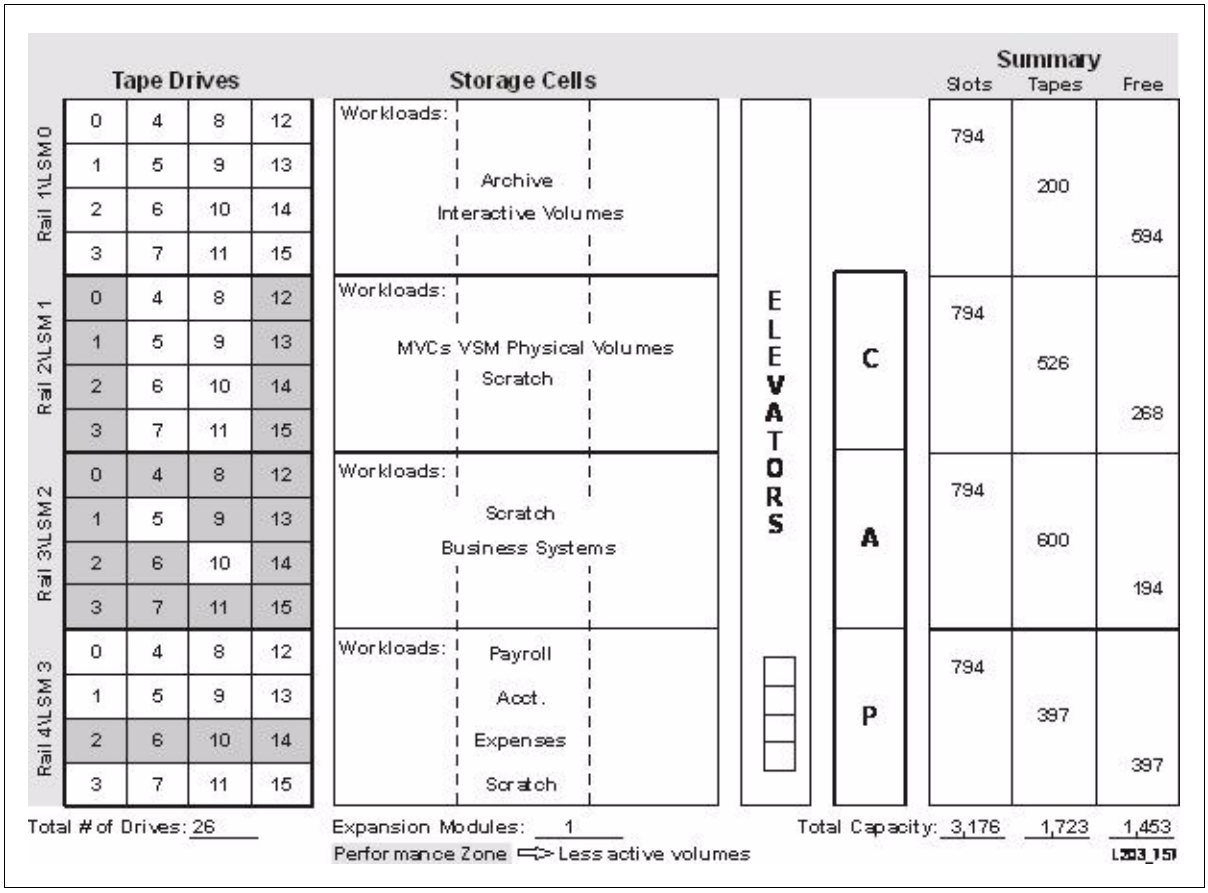


Figure 22. Content Management Plan

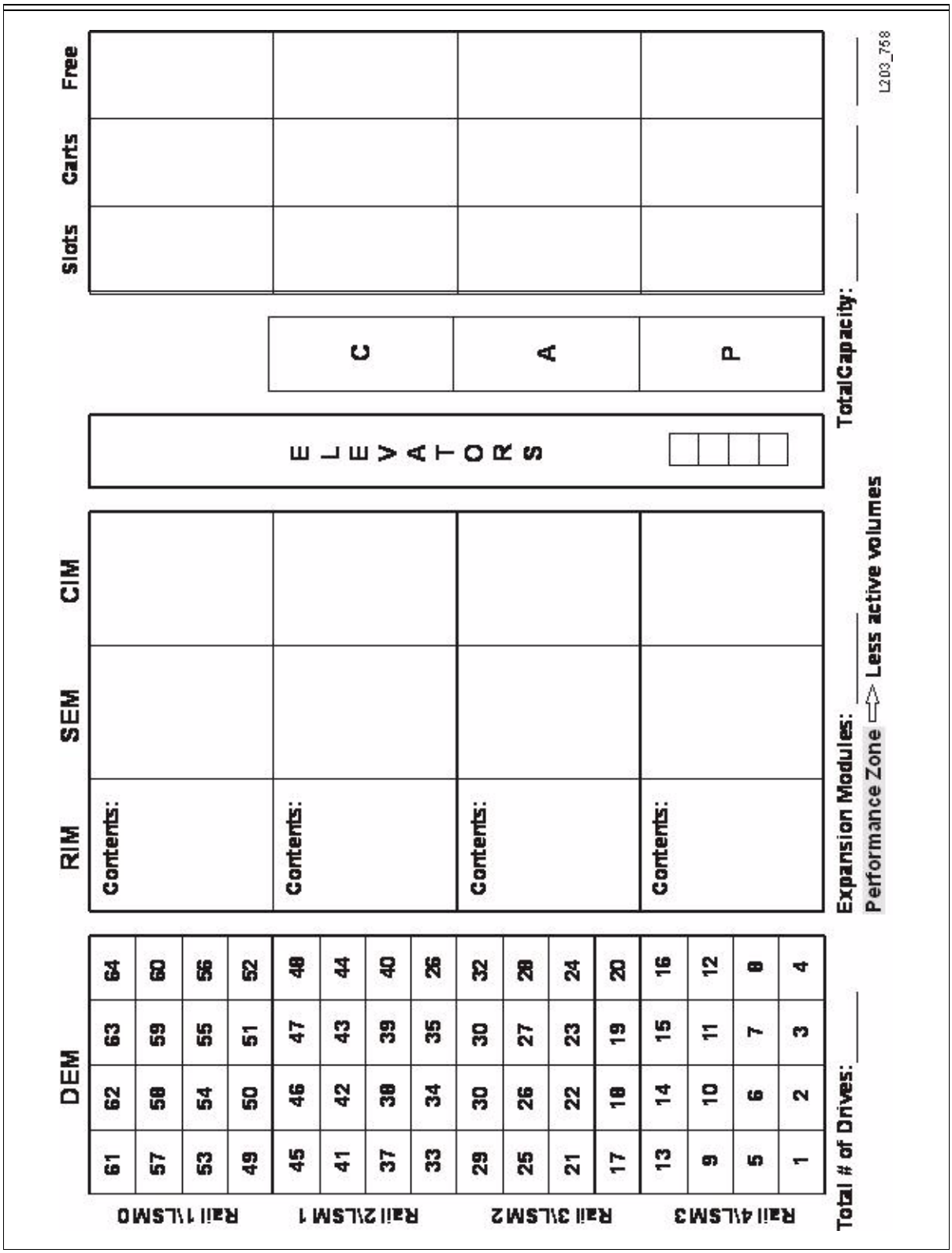
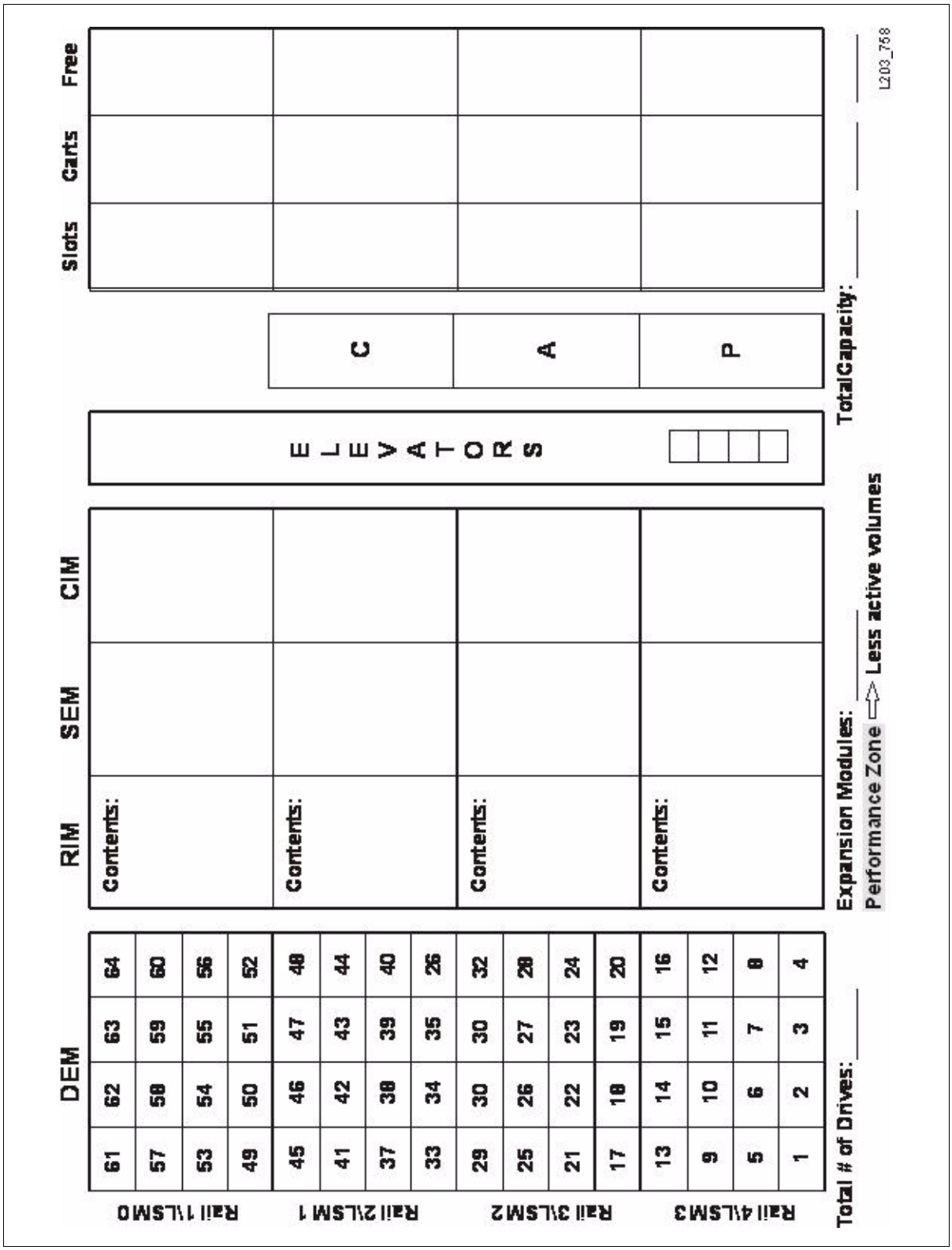


Figure 22. Content Management Plan



Site Preparation

4

Use this chapter to prepare for the installation by reviewing the information and completing the *Site Planning Checklist*.

Other information in this chapter includes planning topics and requirements to help prepare for an installation of the SL8500 Modular Library System.

Site Planning Checklist

Use the following checklist to ensure that the customer is ready to receive the library and to ensure that you are ready to start the installation.

Table 38. Site Planning Checklist

Question	Answer	Comments
Delivery and Handling		
Does the customer have a delivery dock? If not, where will the equipment be delivered?	Yes ❑ No ❑	
If a delivery dock is available, what are the hours of operation?	_____	
Are there street or alley limitations that may hinder the delivery? (Limited access, one-way traffic, truck size)	Yes ❑ No ❑	
Is the dock close to the computer room where the equipment will be installed? If no, how far does the equipment need to be moved?	Yes ❑ No ❑ Distance: _____	
Is an elevator required to move the equipment to the appropriate floor? What type of elevator is being used? (Class A or C, freight, low-rise, passenger, service, hydraulic, pneumatic, etc.)	Yes ❑ No ❑ Description:	
What is the capacity of the elevator? What are the dimensions of the elevator?		
Are there any ramps or slopes that you need to move equipment over to get to the installation site? What is the angle?	Yes ❑ No ❑ Degrees:____	

Table 38. Site Planning Checklist (Continued)

Question	Answer	Comments
Note: See "Shipping Weights and Dimensions" on page 108 for the following questions.		
Will there be people available to handle the number of, size of, and weight of the shipping pallets?	Yes ❑ No ❑	Depending on the configuration, there may be up to 20 pallets.
Will there be equipment available to handle the pallets (forklifts and/or pallet jacks)?	Yes ❑ No ❑	Pallets can be up to 2.4 m (8 ft) long.
Is there a *staging area* where the pallets can be placed with access to the installation site?	Yes ❑ No ❑	The minimum working area (*not including space for the pallets*) is approximately 56 m^2 (600 ft^2).
Are there doorway or hallway height and width limitations that may prevent moving the equipment on the shipping pallets? Will you need to *unpack* the equipment to move it to the installation site?	Yes ❑ No ❑ Yes ❑ No ❑	
Physical Placement (See Table 39 on page 84 for weights and measurements)		
Note: The library does not require raised flooring, *but it is highly recommended.* Does the site have raised flooring? Has the floor been laser-leveled?	 Yes ❑ No ❑ Yes ❑ No ❑	It is *recommended* that the floor be laser-leveled *before* receiving any equipment.
Does the customer have floor tile cut-outs available for AC power, Interface cables, and vented floor tiles? See "Floor Cutouts" on page 93.	Yes ❑ No ❑	Cutouts are placed at the rear corners of the Drive and Electronics Module. Vented tiles should be placed in *front* of the library, not under it.
Does the intended site have enough room to install and service the equipment?	Yes ❑ No ❑	See Table 39 on page 84 for clearance specifications
Can the customer's floor support the weight of the library configuration?	Yes ❑ No ❑	The customer's floor must be capable of supporting 454 kg (1,000 lb) per distribution pad.
Are there plans for expansion? If so, when? How many *slots* does the customer *currently* have? How many *storage expansion modules* does the customer *currently* have? Does the customer want to expand with: • Additional expansion modules? • Pass-thru Ports? • More slots? • ACSLS license keys	Yes ❑ No ❑ Date: _____ Slots: _____ SEMs: _____ Yes ❑ No ❑ Yes ❑ No ❑ Yes ❑ No ❑ Slots:_____	
Can the customer's floor support the weight of future expansions?	Yes ❑ No ❑	See Table 39 on page 84. for weights and measurements

Table 38. Site Planning Checklist (Continued)

Question	Answer	Comments
Is the ceiling above the library clear of obstructions? (smoke detectors, sprinklers, vents, etc.)	Yes ❑ No ❑	See "Ceiling Requirements" on page 96 for more information.
Does the equipment need to move over carpet? If so, is there protection from electrostatic discharge (ESD)?	Yes ❑ No ❑	
Environmental (See Table 40 on page 85 for specifications)		
Does the site meet the environmental requirements for: • Temperature? • Humidity? • Air flow (front and back)? • Cooling requirements? • Heat generated by *rack equipment*?	Yes ❑ No ❑	Temperature: 16°–32°C (60°–90°F) Humidity: 20–80%, non-condensing See "Air Flow Requirements" on page 86 See Table 43 on page 87
What is the customer's computer room: • Temperature? • Relative Humidity?		Current measurements:
Does the site contain features and materials that guard against electrostatic discharge (ESD)?	Yes ❑ No ❑	
Does the customer have a large dumpster and means to dispose of the packing material? Are there special requirements to dispose of or recycle the packing material, pallets, and cardboard?	Yes ❑ No ❑ Yes ❑ No ❑	Depending on the configuration, there may be up to 20 pallets worth of packing material.
Is there concern about Seismic or Earthquake ratings for the SL8500?	Yes ❑ No ❑	See the statement about "Seismic or Earthquake Ratings" on page 86
Power		
Does the intended site meet the power requirements for of the equipment?	Yes ❑ No ❑	200–240 VAC, 47–63 Hz Three Phase: Delta or Wye Single Phase: *if required*
Note: Connecting to three phase power is *highly recommended*. The single phase power option requires 3 circuits for N+1 and 6 circuits for 2N power configurations.		
Have arrangements been made for a licensed electrician to connect power?	Yes ❑ No ❑	See "AC Power Planning" on page 89
Does the site have multiple, separate circuits for power redundancy?	Yes ❑ No ❑	For 2N power configurations only
Does the customer plan to use multiple branch circuits for redundancy?	Yes ❑ No ❑	

Table 38. Site Planning Checklist (Continued)

Question	Answer	Comments
Building Codes:		
Because new electrical wiring is necessary, will it require an inspection or an approval?	Yes ❑ No ❑	
Do local, city, state, or federal codes need to be checked and approved for: • New wiring configurations? • Fire suppression requirements? • Clearances? • Safety?	 Yes ❑ No ❑ Yes ❑ No ❑ Yes ❑ No ❑ Yes ❑ No ❑	Comments: See page 84 (clearances) See page 101 (fire suppression)
Connectivity .		
Is the customer using an Open Systems or an Enterprise platform or network?	Open ❑ Enterprise ❑	
Have you completed the Site Survey forms in Chapter 3?	Yes ❑ No ❑	
Have you referred to the Interop Tool at https://extranet.stortek.com/interop/interop?	Yes ❑ No ❑	
Does the customer want to install equipment in the library rack space?	Yes ❑ No ❑	See Table 43 on page 87 for guidelines.
Have you completed a cable plan?	Yes ❑ No ❑	
Have you determined the type of and number of cables required? • Ethernet: Host connections • Fibre Channel: Data path or Host • FICON or ESCON: Data path	Yes ❑ No ❑	Each electronics control module provides *two* Ethernet connections for host communications *Each* tape drive *needs* an interface connection (data path), some can support two connections (dual-port).
Is the customer prepared to supply Ethernet cables for the network?	Yes ❑ No ❑	
Can the customer provide the required number of “static” IP addresses?	Yes ❑ No ❑	
Will interface cables be run from outside the computer room?	Yes ❑ No ❑	Cables that run outside a computer room require flammability ratings of CL2/CL2P.
Remote Support (See the information in “Service Delivery Platform” on page 115)		
Will the customer allow remote support?	Yes ❑ No ❑	
Has the SDP Systems Assurance Guide been completed?	Yes ❑ No ❑	Provided in the Site Preparation Kit.
Has the SDP appliance and mounting hardware been ordered?	Yes ❑ No ❑	

Table 38. Site Planning Checklist (Continued)

Question	Answer	Comments
Tape Drives (See Appendix C, "Tape Drives" for more information)		
Does the customer have the correct type and number of tape drives? Are new or additional drives required? How many? What types?	Yes ❑ No ❑ Yes ❑ No ❑ _____ _____	
Media Factors (See Appendix D, "Media" for information about tape cartridges)		
Does the customer have the correct type and number of tape cartridges? • Are additional cartridges required? • Are cleaning cartridges required? • Are labels required? How many? What types?	Yes ❑ No ❑ Yes ❑ No ❑ Yes ❑ No ❑ Yes ❑ No ❑ _____ _____	
Does the customer need additional CAP magazines, cartridge racks and furniture?	Yes ❑ No ❑	
Professional Services, Data Center Services, and Data Migration Services		
Does the customer want or need a **Fire Suppression** system? For the library? For the computer room?	Yes ❑ No ❑ Yes ❑ No ❑	For more information, visit: http://mysales.central/public/clientsolutions
Are media conversions required? Such as going from an older technology to a newer one?	Yes ❑ No ❑	
Is the customer moving existing products and services to an SL8500 library?	Yes ❑ No ❑	
Are Professional Services required for: • Assessments and Migration • Conversion services • Drive and media relocations • Training	 Yes ❑ No ❑ Yes ❑ No ❑ Yes ❑ No ❑ Yes ❑ No ❑	
Human Interface		
Are there any issues that may prevent operators from entering the library? Such as handicapped (wheel-chair), too short to reach drives in the upper bays, too tall to easily enter the library.	Yes ❑ No ❑	The width between the inner and outer walls is 45 cm (18 in.), which may be difficult for some to move freely inside the library.
Where will the remote operator panels be located?	Yes ❑ No ❑	

Physical Planning

Table 39. Library Weights and Measures

Component	Measurement		Weight	
	Meters (cm)	**Feet** (in.)	**Kilograms**	**Pounds**
• Height • Width	2.37 m (236.6 cm) 1.7 m (170.8 cm)	7.76 ft (93.15 in.) 5.6 ft (67.25 in.)		
• Lengths and Weights (***full***)[1] - Base Library - 1 expansion module - 2 expansion modules - 3 expansion modules - 4 expansion modules - 5 expansion modules	(*with doors/facade*) 2.8 m (276.9 cm) 3.7 m (372.1 cm) 4.7 m (467.4 cm) 5.6 m (562.6 cm) 6.6 m (657.8 cm) 7.5 m (753.1 cm)	(*with doors/facade*) 9.1 ft (109 in.) 12.2 ft (146.5 in.) 15.3 ft (184 in.) 18.5 ft (221.5 in.) 21.6 ft (259 in.) 24.7 ft (296.5 in.)	 2835 kg 3640 kg 4445 kg 5250 kg 6055 kg 6860 kg	 6,250 lb 8,025 lb 9,800 lb 11,575 lb 13,350 lb 15,125 lb
• Weights (*empty*)[2] - Base Library - 1 expansion module - 2 expansion modules - 3 expansion modules - 4 expansion modules - 5 expansion modules			 1497 kg 1883 kg 2268 kg 2654 kg 3039 kg 3425 kg	 3,300 lb 4,150 lb 5,000 lb 5,850 lb 6,700 lb 7,550 lb
• Rear door length • Front door/facade length • PTP (between *covers*)	0.10 m (10.16 cm) 0.19 m (19 cm) 0.14 m (14.07 cm)	0.33 ft (4 in.) 0.625 ft (7.5 in.) 0.46 ft (5.54 in.)		
• Pass-thru Port - Height: - Width: (between *frames*) - Depth: - Weight: (*with* mechanisms)	 2.31 m (231 cm) 0.17 m (17.17 cm) 1.5 m (150.8 cm)	 7.58 ft (91 in.) 0.56 ft (6.76 in.) 4.95 ft (59.4 in.)	 121 kg	 266 lb
• Service clearances - Front - Rear	 0.66 m (66 cm) 0.89 m (89 cm)	 2.2 ft (26 in.) 2.9 ft (35 in.)		
• Individual modules (***full***)[1] - Drive and Electronics[3, 5] - Robotics Interface[3] - Storage Expansion[3] - Customer Interface[4]	*(frames only)* 0.76 m (76.2 cm) 0.76 m (76.2 cm) 0.95 m (95.25 cm) 0.95 m (95.25 cm)	*(frames only)* 2.5 ft (30 in.) 2.5 ft (30 in.) 3.125 ft (37.5 in.) 3.125 ft (37.5 in.)	 1236 kg 828 kg 805 kg 771 kg	 2,725 lb 1,825 lb 1,775 lb 1,700 lb
• Individual modules (*empty*)[2] - Drive and Electronics[3, 5] - Robotics Interface[3] - Storage Expansion[3] - Customer Interface[4]			 590 kg 352 kg 386 kg 556 kg	 1,300 lb 775 lb 850 lb 1,225 lb

1. Full = All tape drives, DC power supplies, and cartridges, with 2N power, four robots, doors and facade.
2. Empty = Base library configuration with N+1 power and four robots; *without* tape drives or tape cartridges.
3. Engineering lab measurement.
4. Logically calculated (estimated).
5. Without equipment installed in the racks (variable).

Environmental Requirements

Note: Although the SL8500 library will function over a full list of environmental ranges as specified below, *optimal reliability* is achieved if the environment is maintained between the recommended ranges.

Table 40. Environmental Specifications

Description	Optimum	Recommended Range	Full Operating Range
Temperature			
- Operating	22°C (72°F)	20° – 25°C (68° – 77°F)	+16° to 32°C (60° to +90°F)
- Shipping			-30° to +49°C (-23° to +120°F)
- Storing			+4.4° to +32°C (+40° to +90°F)
Relative Humidity			
- Operating	45%	40% – 50%	20% to 80%
- Shipping			5% to 90%
- Storing			20% to 80%
Wet bulb (operating)	+25.6°C (+78°F) maximum, non-condensing		
Heat Output	44,380 Btu/hr (maximum loading**) The equation for heat output is: 3.41214 **x** Watts = Btu/hr		
Power Consumption	13.0 kW (maximum loading**) or 13.7 kVA kVA = kWatts ÷ Power factor (Power factor for the SL8500 is 0.95)		
**Maximum loading includes 64 tape drives, 4 fully loaded racks, 8 HandBots, all the front frame components (CAPs, service door, and elevators), plus redundant control modules.			

Important: Although this equipment is designed to operate in environmental conditions of 20% to 80% humidity, industry best practices recommends computer rooms maintain a relative humidity of 40% to 50% for best performance.

Table 41. Environmental Definitions

British thermal unit (Btu)	A measure of the amount of heat required to raise the temperature of one pound of water one degree Fahrenheit. British thermal units are most commonly associated with power over a unit of time—Btu per hour (Btu/hr).
Relative Humidity	A measure of water vapor in the air.
Temperature	The measurement of hot and cold to specific scales, such as Celsius (also called centigrade) and Fahrenheit. The Celsius temperature scale uses 0° for the freezing point of water and 100° for the boiling point of water. The Fahrenheit temperature scale uses 32° for the freezing point and 212° for the boiling point.
Watt	A watt is a unit of power or the amount of energy per unit of time. Often the term watt is used for expressing energy consumption as kW (kilo-Watts).
Wet bulb	The difference in temperature between wet bulb (humidity) and dry bulb (temperature) provides a measure of atmospheric humidity.

Air Flow Requirements

The air flow required to cool the SL8500 depends on the total number of components installed within it, such as tape drives, load sharing DC power supplies, and accessory racks.

Each of these components contribute to the total airflow required.

Calculations (requirements) for these individual components—using standard air conditions at sea level (pressure) and 22°C / 72°F (temperature)—are:

Table 42. Air Flow Requirements

Component	Measurement	Quantity
Tape drive	0.57m^3/min. (20 ft^3/min.) each	64 possible
DC power supply	0.71m^3/min. (25 ft^3/min.) each	24 possible
Rack Modules	13.59m^3/min. (480 ft^3/min.) each	4 possible
Electronics Module	4.42m^3/min. (156ft^3/min.)	

A maximum configured library with 64 tape drives, 24 DC power supplies, four rack modules, and the electronic control module would require:

112.0m^3/min. (3956 ft^3/min.) of supply air to avoid recirculation.

Most configurations are smaller than this and require less air flow.

An example of a smaller configuration is 12 tape drives split between drive bays for redundancy, one robot on each level, one rack module, and the electronic control module.

This would require 33.30m^3/min. (1176 ft^3/min.).

The layout of the data center should account for the cooling requirements of SL8500 as well as other equipment in the center—possibly through the concept of having a cool aisle and hot aisle in accordance with environmental best practices and controls.

Seismic or Earthquake Ratings

The requirements for seismic compatibility vary dramatically throughout the world. As such, a standard “seismic” feature for the SL8500 modular library system is not offered.

It is recommended that any customer who has seismic concerns work with local experts who are familiar with the local code and requirements.

Professional Services can also be engaged to help coordinate this activity.

Accessory Racks

The SL8500 library provides space where up to four standard RETMA 19 inch racks can be installed.

Because of the numerous types of equipment, StorageTek cannot mandate what the customer installs in these racks; therefore, certain guidelines should be followed to prevent voiding the warranty.

Table 43. Rack Guidelines

Description	Value / Range
Accessory rack	The accessory rack is mounted on slides rated for 80 kg (175 lb). Safe load is 64 kg (140 lb).
Mounting hardware (equipment in the rack)	Components must function in a *vertical* position. Rails are not provided; use the mounting hardware supplied by the manufacturer.
• Height • Width • Depth • Mount-points	48.25 cm (19 in.) 27.3 cm (10.75 in.) including power strip 72 cm (28 in.) safe length is 66 cm (26 in.) 72.4 cm (28.5 in.) between mounting points
Thermal requirements	880 watts (3,000 Btu/hr) *per rack module*.
Power	200–240 VAC, 50 to 60 Hz, 4 Amps Six IEC320 C13 outlet receptacles
See Table 9 on page 25 for additional information and guidelines.	

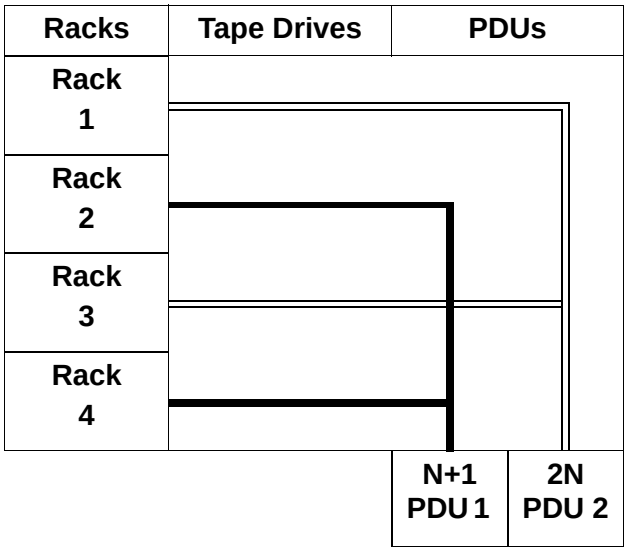
Two of the racks (2 and 4) receive power from the primary AC power grid. The other two racks (1 and 3) *require* the 2N power configuration.

Figure 23. Accessory Rack Power

Note:

When you loose power to one of the PDUs, you also loose power to the associated racks:

PDU1 (N+1)	Racks 2 and 4
PDU2 (2N)	Racks 1 and 3



Tape Drive and Cartridge Specifications

The supported tape drives fit into a drive tray that slides into the slots of the drive bay in the rear of the library.

Table 44. Drive Tray Weights and Measures

Drive Tray	Height	Width	Length	Weight
Drive tray *only*	10.8 cm (4.25 in.)	16.5 cm (6.5 in.)	85 cm (33.5 in.)	4.3 kg (9.5 lb)

Figure 24. Drive Tray

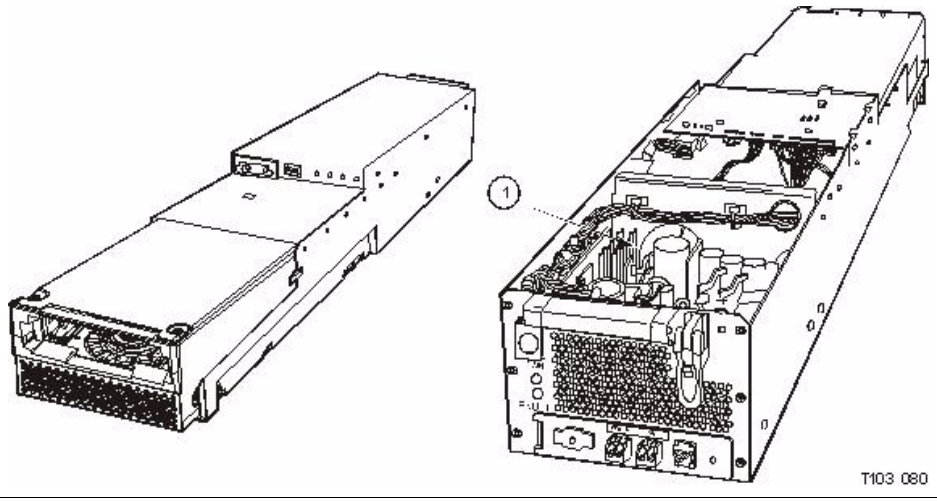


Table 45. Tape Drive Weights

Drive Type	**Tape Drive Weight** (with drive tray)
T9840	8.2 kg (18.0 lb)
T9940	11 kg (24.3 lb)
T10000	9.4 kg (20.75 lb)
LTO	6.9 kg (15 lb)
SDLT	6.7 kg (14.8 lb)

Table 46. Cartridge Tape Weights

Drive Type	Cartridge Tape Weight	
T9x40	262 g (9.2 oz)	0.26 kg (0.57 lb)
T10000	264 g (9.31 oz)	0.26 kg (0.58 lb)
LTO	210 g (7.4 oz)	0.21 kg (0.46 lb)
SDLT	222.5 g (7.85 oz)	0.22 kg (0.49 lb)

AC Power Planning

It is highly recommended that the connection of the library's AC wiring be done by a licensed electrician.

Note: AC wiring from the power source branch circuit must be installed in conduit (flexible or rigid) with a 90-degree elbow-down fitting.

There are six holes provided for the conduit elbows that measure 2.875 cm (1.125 in.) in diameter. The electrician should choose appropriate conduit and fittings for their application that will fit this.

Figure 25 shows the power distribution connections.
Figure 26 shows the type of terminal block used.

Figure 25. PDU Connections

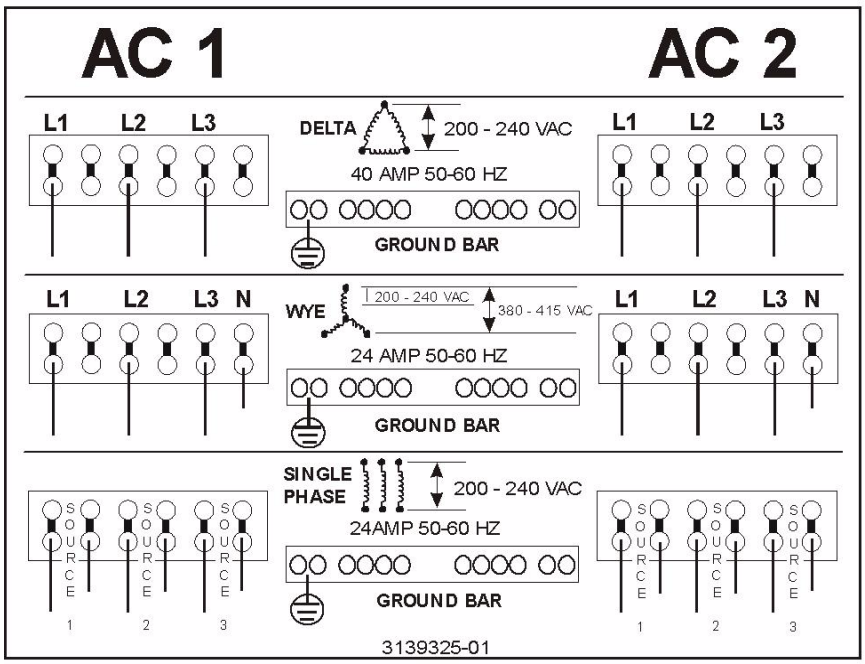
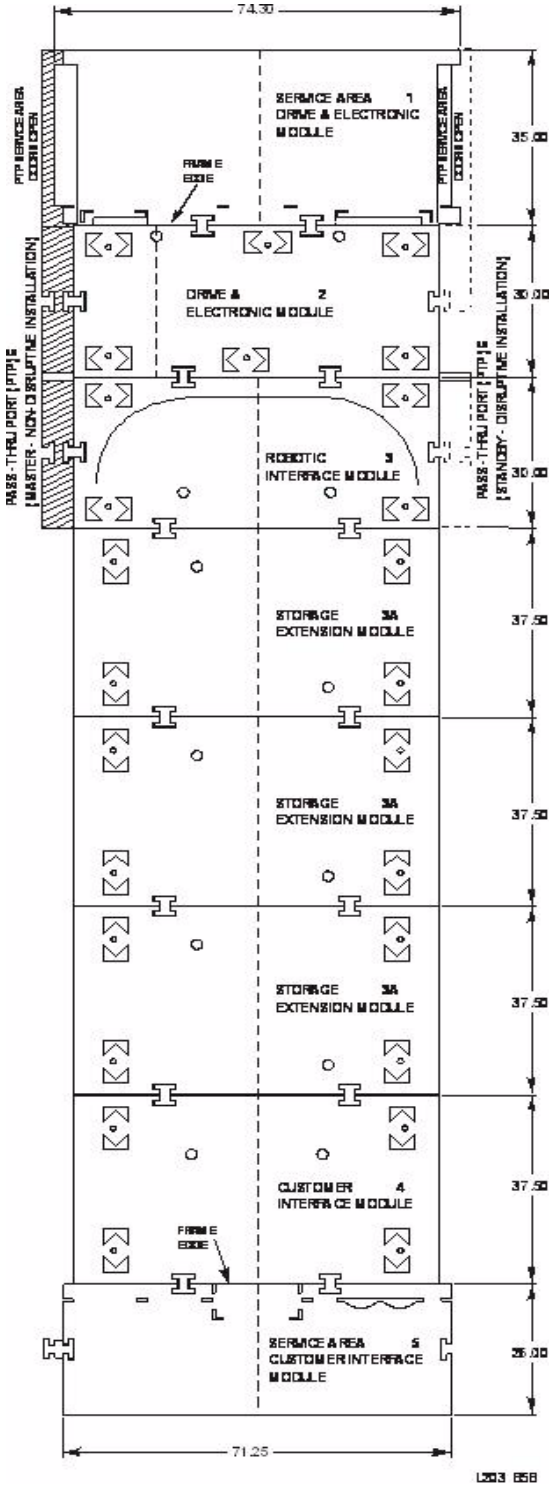


Figure 26. Terminal Block

Note: The terminal block hole is 6.35 mm (0.250 in.) in diameter, tin plating over brass, and can accommodate up to #6 wire. Wire Range is 6 mm (14 AWG).

Floor Template

Figure 27. Floor Planning Template



The floor planning template can help plan the location of the SL8500 library and expansions.

Floor leveling pad
(edge and bolt holes)

H-lock to connect the templates together (2 per module connection)

Double H-lock connects multiple templates

Fire suppression nozzle locator
(2 per module)

Cable cutouts power and data
(rear service area)

Cartridge access ports
(front service area)

When the template is in place, you can mark the locations of the:

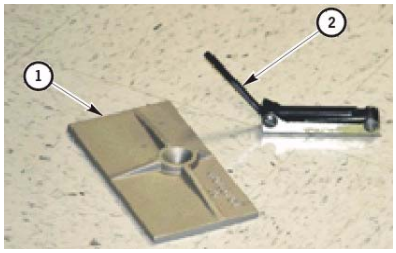
- Outside dimensions and placement of any module frame edge
- Service areas (front and rear)
- Leveler pad edges and bolts (the hole in the pad is where the bolt goes)
- AC power cutouts (floor and ceiling)
- Data cable cutouts (floor and ceiling)
- Door lines (front and rear)
- Pass-thru Port frame and service area
- Fire suppression cutouts (hint: use a flashlight to shine up on the ceiling)

Floor Requirements

A *Floor Template* is available to help with planning. This template is an actual size, multi-module design made of corrugated plastic.

Depending on the number of modules, tape drives, and tape cartridges, the weight of the library can vary. See Table 39 on page 84 for more information. *Make sure the customer's floor will support this weight*.

Additionally, if the equipment must be transported on elevators, the elevator cars must be capable of safely handling the weight. See "Shipping Weights and Dimensions" on page 108 for more information.

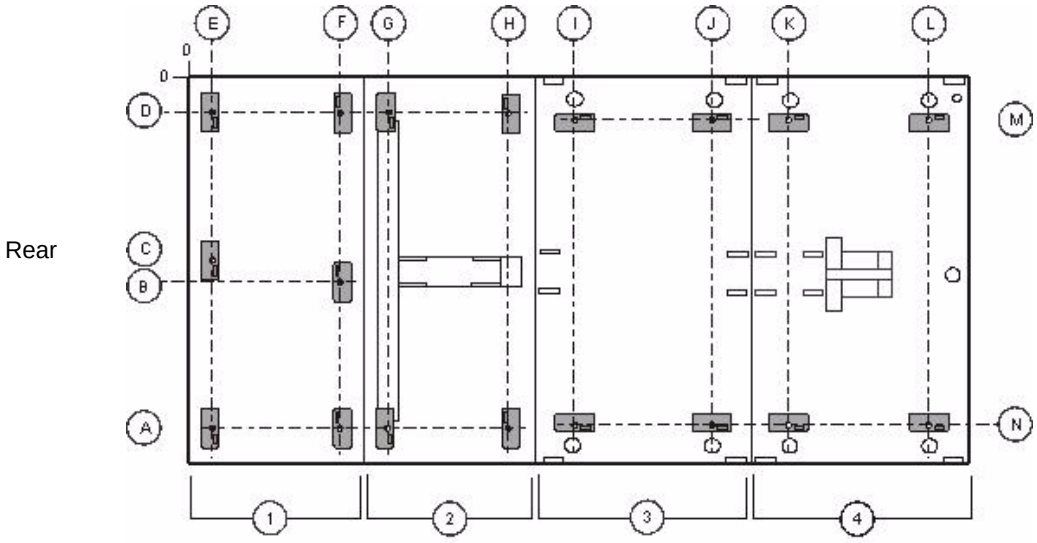


The customer's floor must be capable of supporting 454 kg (1,000 lb) per *each* weight distribution pad. These pads measure 4 inches by 8 inches. The weight represents the modules, plus *a factor of safety* to accommodate torque values, installation procedures, and component variances.

(1) Weight distribution pad
(2) 1/4-in. Allen wrench for height adjustment bolts

Figure 28 shows the weight distribution pad placements for the various modules.
Important: *Notice the placement and direction of the pads.*

Figure 28. Weight Distribution Pad Locations (Viewed from the top of the library)



1. Drive and Electronics Module: Length = 76.2 cm (30 in.)
   - A = 152.86 cm (60.18 in.)
   - B = 88.80 cm (34.96 in.)
   - C = 78.54 cm (30.92 in.)
   - D = 14.48 cm (5.70 in.)
   - E = 10.60 cm (4.17 in.)
   - F = 65.30 cm (25.71 in.)
2. Robotics Interface Module: Length = 76.2 cm (30 in.)
   - G = 86.59 cm (34.09 in.)
   - H = 144.30 cm (55.63 in.)
3. Storage Expansion Module: Length = 95.25 cm (37.5 in.)
   - I = 168.68 cm (66.41 in.)
   - J = 230.53 cm (90.76 in.)
4. Customer Interface Module: Length = 95.25 cm (37.5 in.)
   - K = 263.93 cm (103.91 in.)
   - L = 325.58 cm (128.18 in.)
   - M = 16.87 cm (6.64 in.)
   - N = 150.47 cm (59.24 in.)

Co-planar Requirements

Important:
This is perhaps the most important concept that you must understand or you may experience frame damage, premature wear, and targeting errors.

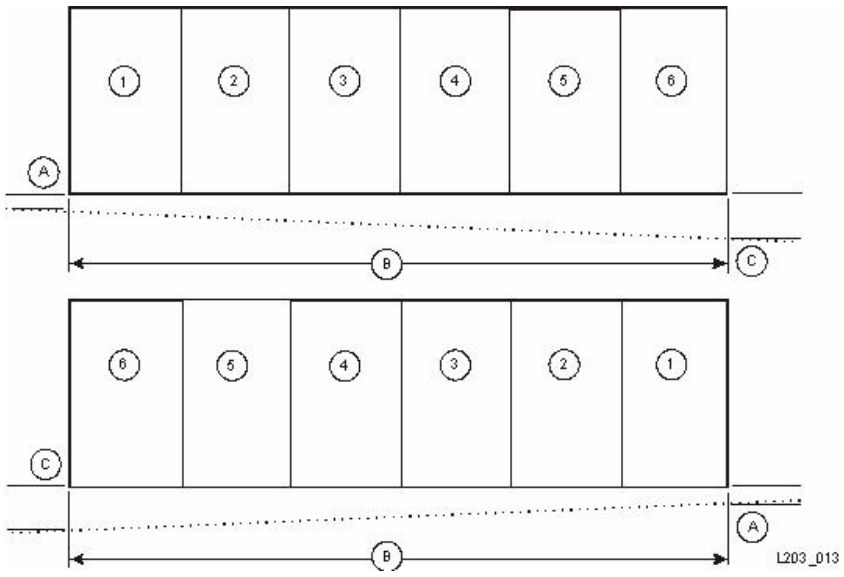
- The customer's floor be laser-leveled *before* receiving any equipment.
- The library modules be *level* across the width (from left to right) and installed on the same horizontal plane to within ± 25 mm (1 in.) tolerance.

Note: For future library complex expansion, check the entire floor adjacent to the library for pass-thru port operations or in front of the library for storage expansion modules.

Because the HandBots travel along rails, the library must be adjusted for the rails to be on the same plane (co-planar). Some customer floors may contain *slight* slopes in them (despite the laser leveling requirement) and these variations must be taken into account. These variations *cannot exceed* 28 mm ± 0.8 mm (1.1 in. ± 0.0325 in.) throughout the length of the library.

Figure 29 illustrates the maximum *floor-to-module distance* variation, over a distance of 5.6 m (18.5 ft).

Figure 29. Co-planar – Floor Slope Diagram



A: Height of Drive and Electronics module:

- Recommended start = 2.54 cm (1.0 in.)
- Minimum height = 1.9 cm (0.75 in.)

B: Overall length (with expansion modules) 5.6 m (18.5 ft)

C: Maximum height:

- 47 mm (1.85 in.) if start height is 2.54 cm (1.0 in.)
- 41 mm (1.60 in.) if start height is 1.9 cm (0.75 in.)

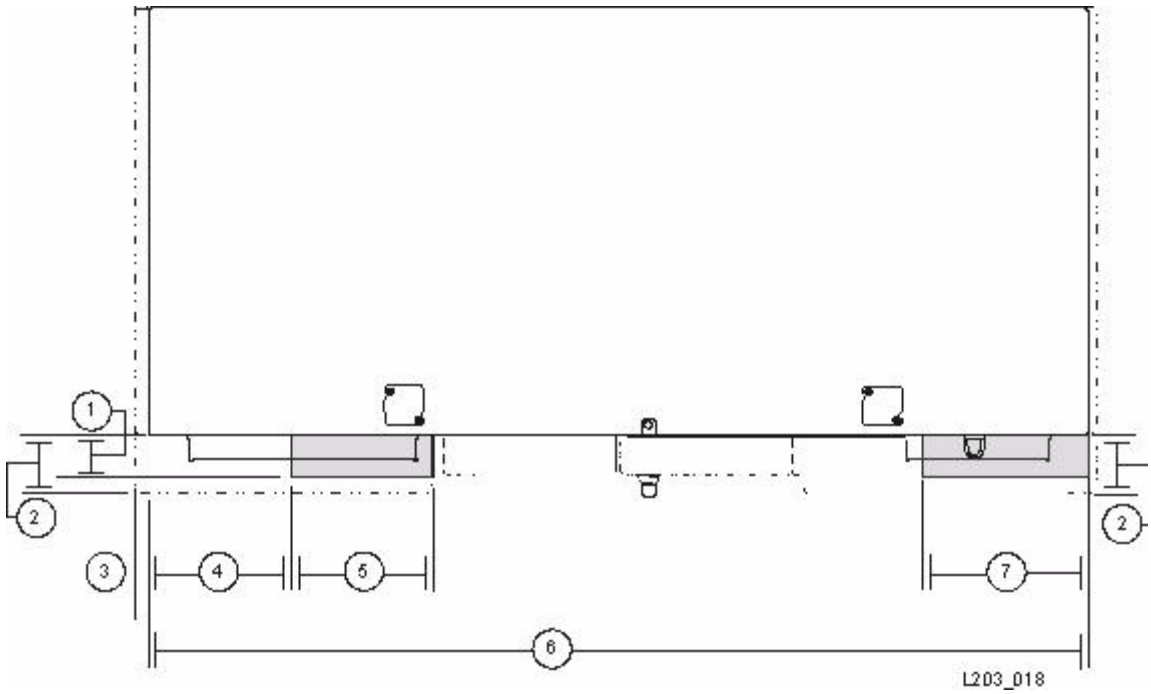
Floor Cutouts

Floor cutouts for cable routing must be supplied for the library. Cables include:

- Power cables
- Ethernet cables
- Interface cables

Figure 30 shows an example with dimension for the floor cutouts which are placed near the two, rear corners of the Drive and Electronics Module.

Figure 30. Floor Cutouts for Power and Signal Cables



1. 7.6 cm (3 in.)
2. 10.7 cm (4.2 in.)
3. 1.59 cm (0.625 in.)
4. 25.4 cm (10 in.) Interface cables
5. 25.4 cm (10 in.) Interface cables
6. 167.6 cm (66 in.) Frame with no covers
7. 29.8 cm (11.75 in.) Power supply cables

Note: The recommended “rough-in” AC feed (power cable) measured from the top of the raised floor to the input of the power distribution unit is 46 cm (18 in.).

Note: You can also route cables from the ceiling.
See “Cable Routes” on page 94.

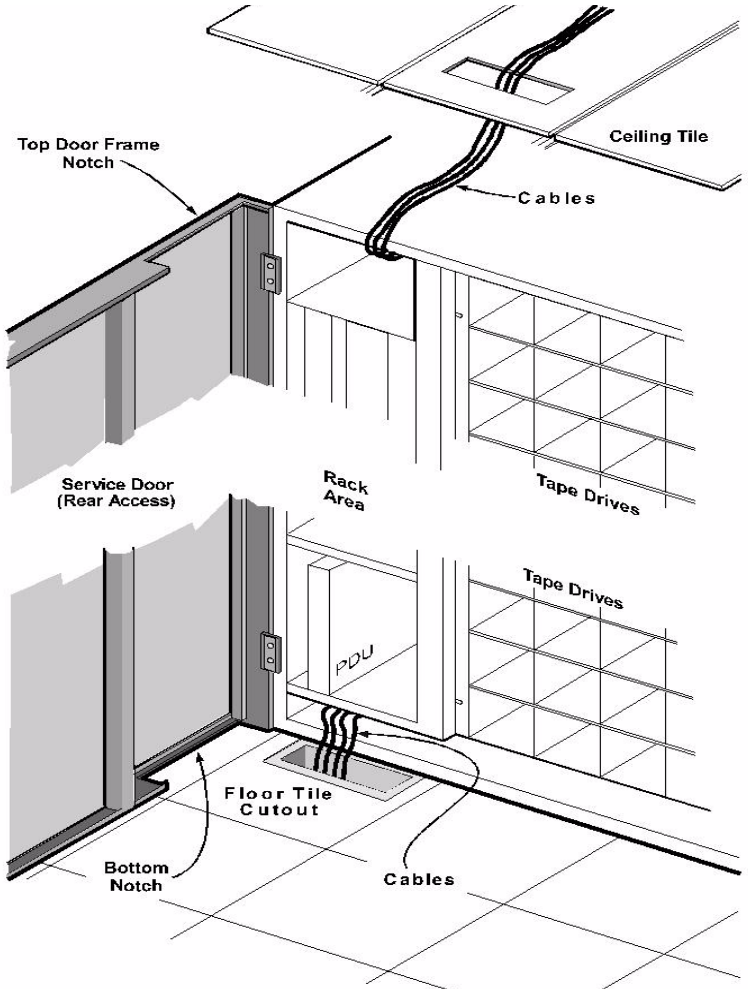
Cable Routes

The library doors have four notches for routing interface and power cables to the tape drives and PDUs. Two in each door; left and right, top and bottom.

Figure 31 shows an example of cable routing using fibre-optic interface cables. This would be the same method for the power cables on the right side. Figure 32 on page 95 shows guidelines for internal cable or conduit routing.

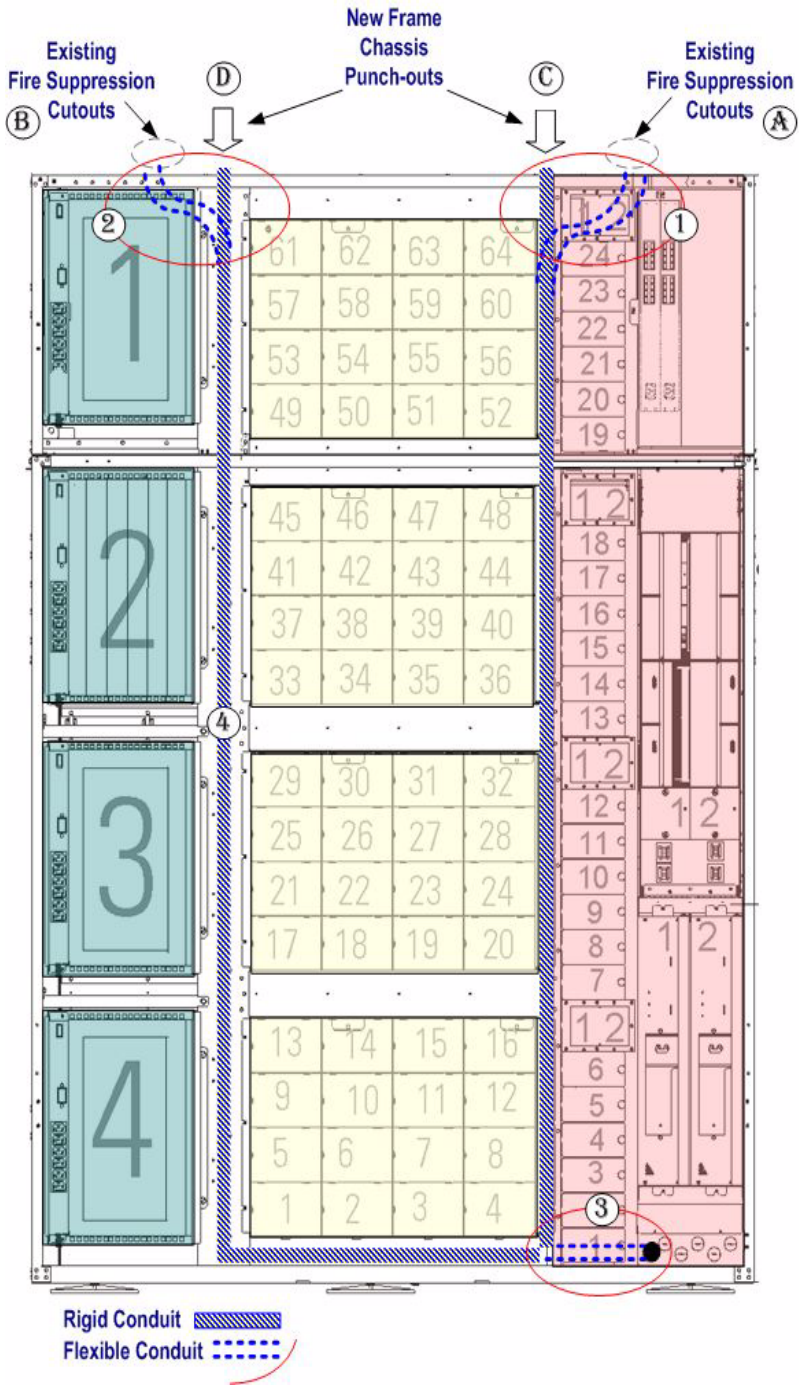
Remember; when routing cables or conduit *inside* the library, make sure they do not interfere with the removal and replacement of any components, such as the DC power supplies, tilting open the electronics control module, sliding out the tape drives, or the accessory racks or rack equipment.

Figure 31. Cabling Routing



Left Rear Door Notch Dimensions			**Right Rear Door Notch Dimensions** (not shown)		
	Length	**Width**		**Length**	**Width**
Top	25 cm (10 in.)	3.8 cm (1.5 in.)	Top	25 cm (10 in.)	3.8 cm (1.5 in.)
Bottom	40.6 (16 in.)	7 cm (2.75 in.)	Bottom	33 cm (13 in.)	7 cm (2.75 in.)

Figure 32. Internal Conduit and Cable Routing



Internal Conduit and Cable Guidelines

The shaded areas:

Green – Accessory Racks
Yellow – Tape Drives
Red – Power/Electronics

Indicate the areas that you need to avoid when routing internal conduit or cables.

If the fire suppression cutouts (A,B) are *not* being used, *flexible* conduit or cables could be used to route power connections to the AC power supply from above the library.

If the fire suppression cutouts are being used, an additional cutout in the frame (C,D) is needed to route conduit or cables to the AC power supply.

Optional routing (D,4) may be used for clearance; however, rigid conduit needs to change to flexible for the Tape Drive DC power supply grid.

Obstructions to Avoid:

1. HBS and internal switches
2. Accessory racks and equipment
3. Tape drive DCPS 1

Cabling to be Aware of:

4. Tape drive interface and Ethernet cables (see Figure 37 on page 100)

Note: *It is highly recommended that the connection of the library's AC wiring be done by a licensed electrician*.

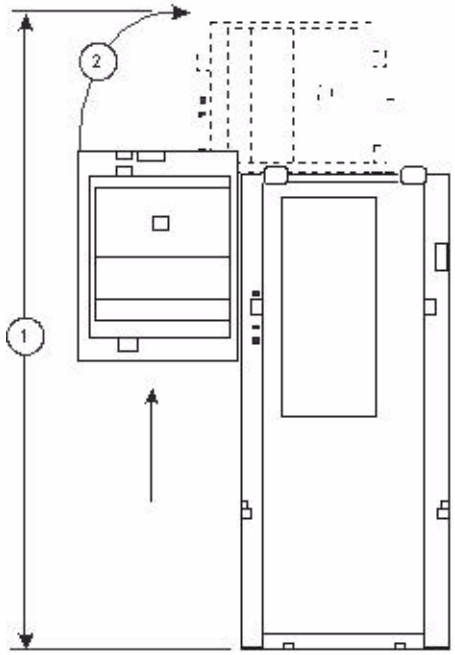
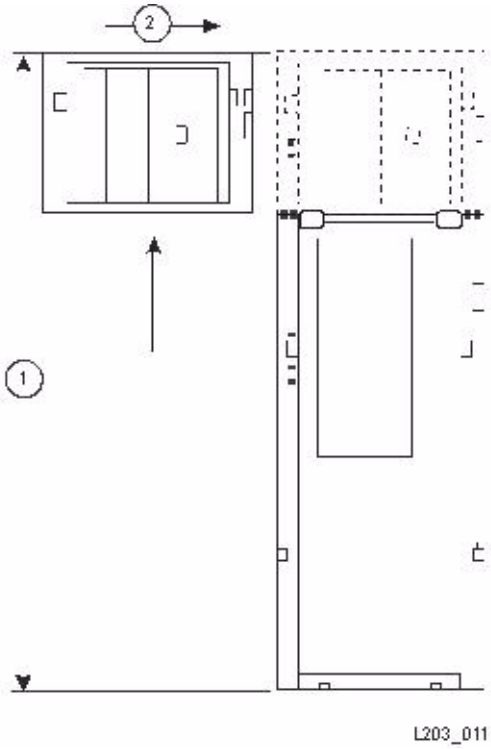
Ceiling Requirements

Figure 33 shows the upper sections of the Drive and Electronics Module and the Robotics Interface Module. These modules must be installed on top of the lower modules. To install the upper modules:

- The recommended method is to *hang* the modules on the clamps then *swing* the upper modules into place. This method requires at least 239 cm (94 in.) of floor-to-ceiling clearance.
- The optional method is to remove the clamps (for clearance), *lift* the upper modules up and *slide* them over the lower modules. This requires *four* people to accomplish (one person on each corner).

Caution: *Overhead hazard:* Make sure that sprinkler heads, sensors, and other equipment that may hang from the ceiling are not interfered with when you install the upper modules.

Figure 33. Upper Module Installation

Recommended Method	Optional Method
	
1. Minimum height = 231 cm (91 in.) Maximum height = 239 cm (94 in.) 2. Swing the upper module up and *over* the clamps	1. Minimum height = 231 cm (91 in.) Maximum height = 236.6 cm (93.15 in.) 2. Remove the clamps, then lift and slide the upper module in place

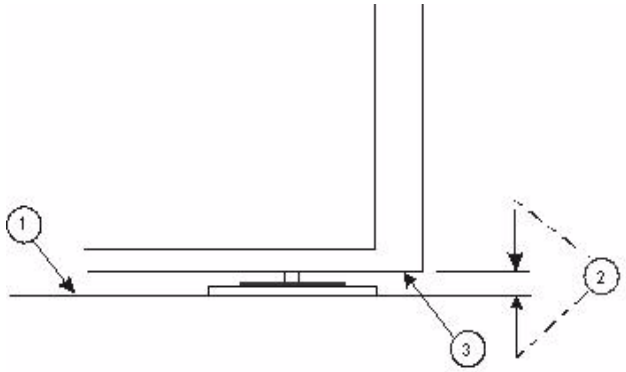
Height Adjustments

Figure 34 shows the minimum and maximum library height specifications:

- Minimum height = 231.4 cm (91 in.)
- Maximum height = 236.6 cm (93.15 in.)

On a level floor, the first module's height, between the module and floor, should be adjusted to 25.4 mm ± 0.8 mm (1 in. ± 0.0325 in.).
The absolute minimum module-to-floor height permitted is 19 mm (0.75 in.).
Following these guidelines allows you to adjust the library to meet the "Co-planar Requirements" on page 92.

Figure 34. Minimum and Maximum Height Specifications



1. Customer floor
2. Adjustment range between floor and library:
   - minimum = 1.9 cm (0.75 in.)
   - maximum = 4.7 cm (1.85 in.)
3. Bottom of the library module floor

Clearances

Table 47 lists the clearances—library to ceiling—required to install side covers, front and rear doors, and the upper modules.

Table 47. Overhead Clearances

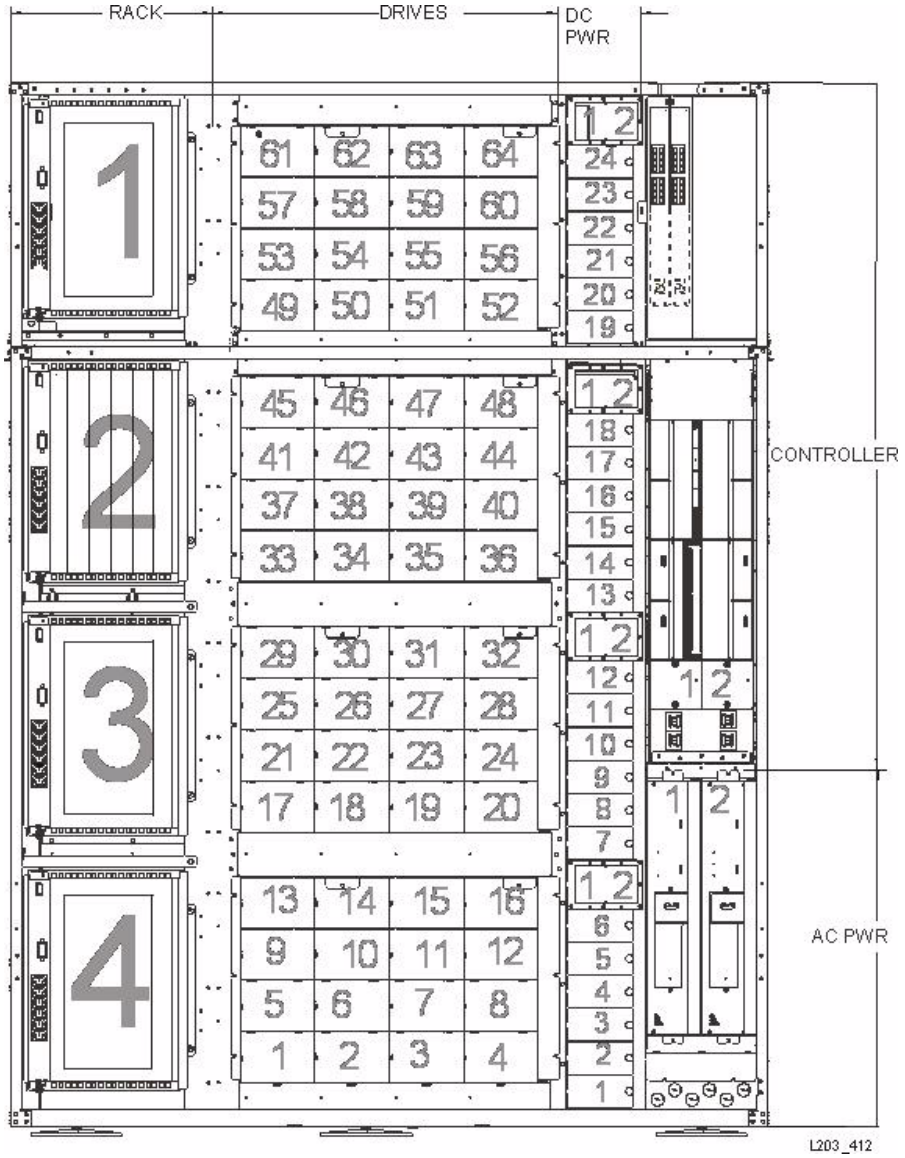
Overhead Clearance	Description
1.9 cm (0.75 in.)	Side cover installation
1.3 cm (0.5 in.)	Upper robotics interface module installation
2.5 cm (1 in.)	Facade installation Hanging the front and rear doors on the hinges Upper drive and electronics module installation
4.5 cm (1.75 in.)	Customer interface module roof installation Storage expansion module roof installation

To calculate maximum height and installation clearances, use the library height range and add the overhead clearance.

Drive and Electronics Module Planning

Figure 35 shows the location of components at the rear of the library (the Drive and Electronics Module).

Figure 35. Drive and Electronics Module Planning



Rack modules 1 to 4

Racks 2 and 4 get power from PDU 1

Racks 1 and 3 get power from PDU 2 (*2N required*)

Tape Drives 1 to 64

Each rail has 16 drives

Each rail is an LSM

DC power supplies

Minimum (required) DCPS slots are: |
– 1, 2, and 3 for drives
– 6 and 17 for the HandBots

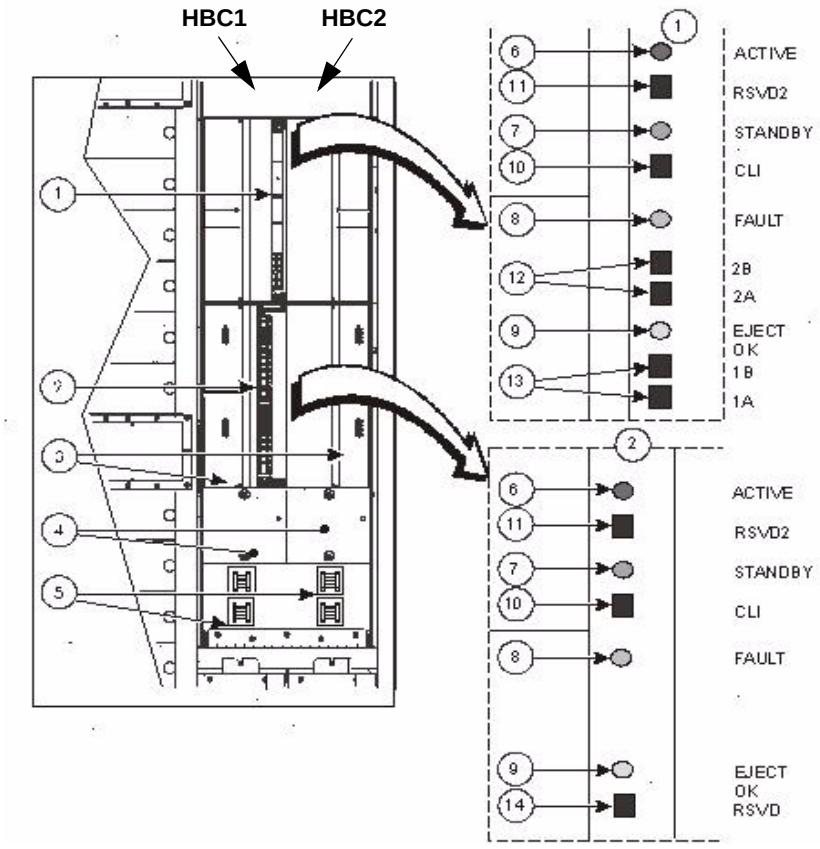
AC Power 1 and 2
1 = Primary PDU
2 = N+1 or 2N PDU

ECM 1 and 2
1 = Primary
2 = Redundant

Electronic Module Planning

Figure 36 shows the electronics control module (ECM) which resides in a card cage in the rear of the library. The ECM is split into two parts and can hold two independent and redundant card sets and four AC-to-DC converters.

Figure 36. Electronic Control Module

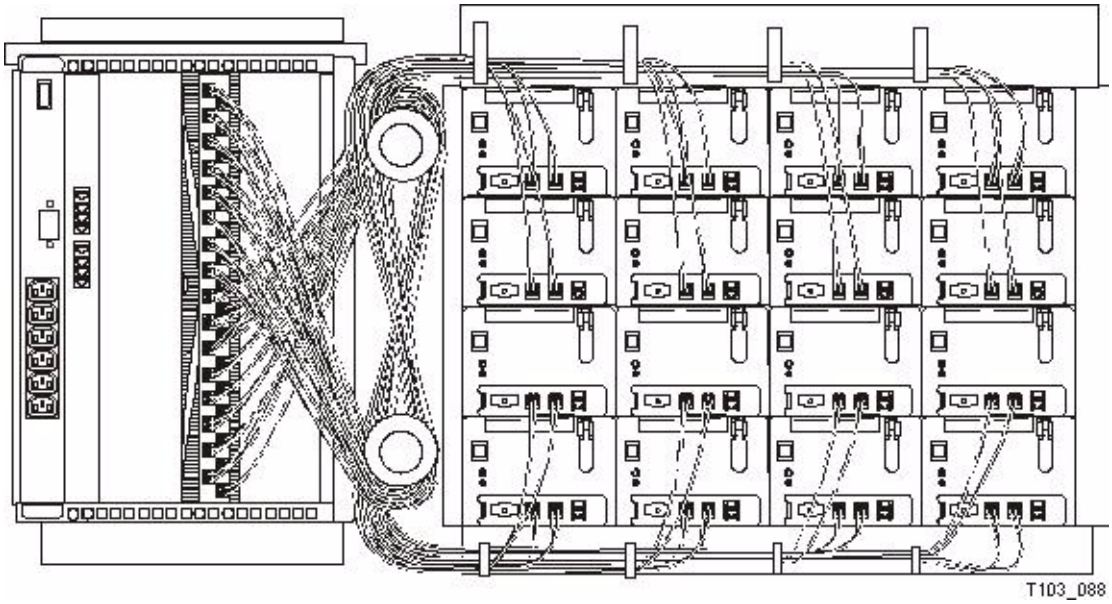


1. **HBC Card - Library Controller**
2. **HBT Card - Tape Drive Controller**
3. AC-to-DC converters (4 power supplies)
4. Cooling fans (2)
5. Power switches (4 breakers)
6. Green LED indicates which controller is active (the primary module) in a redundant configuration. This LED is always on in single controller configurations.
7. Yellow LED indicates which controller is in standby mode in a redundant configuration.
8. Red LED indicates that the Library Controller has detected a failure.
9. Blue LED is the Hot-Swap indicator. When on, it indicates the controller card can safely be removed.
10. RS232 Serial Port provides a command line interface (CLI) for service representatives.
11. RS232 Serial Port is reserved for engineering debug and development.
12. **Host Connections:** Two 100 Base-T Ethernet ports provide TCP/IP connections for the host. Port 2B provides the primary connection and Port 2A provides the Dual TCP/IP connection.
13. **Library-to-library communications:** Two 10/100 Base-T Ethernet ports Port 1A is the primary PTP connection and 1B is for redundant ECM connections. Check on availability.
14. RS232 Serial Port is reserved for engineering debug and development.

Tape Drive Cable Plan

By consolidating network components in the SL8500 rack areas, cabling and establishing a storage area network (SAN) is less difficult. Figure 37 shows network components (Fibre Channel switches and Ethernet hubs) in the rack space of the SL8500 library with 16 tape drives.

Figure 37. Cabling Tape Drives *(Example, figure is not exact)*



Remember:

- Every tape drive needs an interface cable
- Not all tape drives require an Ethernet cable
- When ordering cables, plan for 1–2 m (3–7 ft) of slack cable for routing
- Make sure you have the correct tape drive and cartridge tape associated for every LSM in the library to support mixed media Any Cartridge Any Time

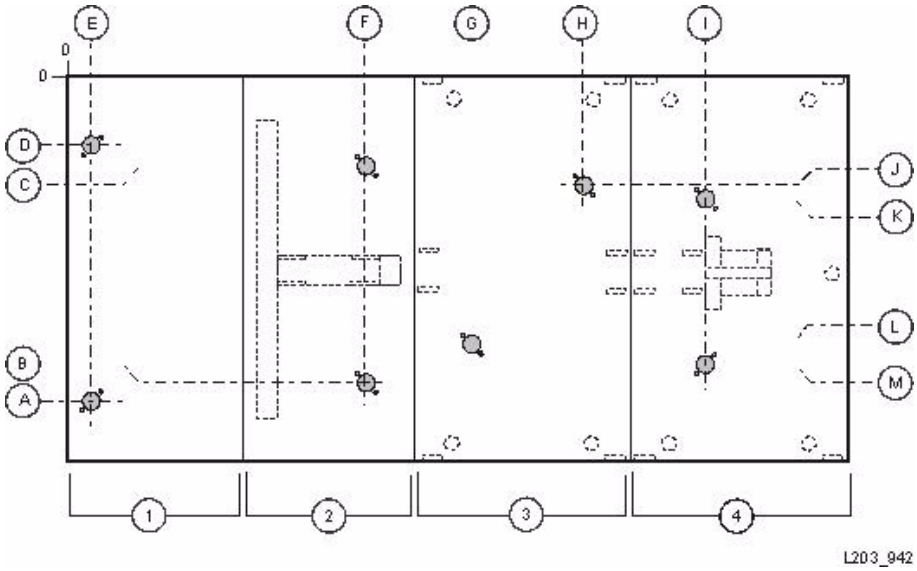
Fire Suppression Planning

The library does *not* ship with a Fire Suppression System installed, although features have been incorporated into the library to allow for one.

Professional Services offers fire suppression systems which are installed on site. Visit the Professional Services Web site for more information about these services or contact your local Professional Services representative (names are also listed on this Web site).

Figure 38 shows the accesses for fire suppression planning.

Figure 38. Fire Suppression Ceiling Access (Viewed from the top of the library)



1. Drive and Electronics Module:
   - A = 130.5 cm (51.4 in.)
   - B = 117.9 cm (46.4 in.)
   - C = 49.3 cm (19.4 in.)
   - D = 45.5 cm (17.9 in.)
   - E = 5.0 cm (2.0 in.)
2. Robotics Interface Module:
   - F = 134.4 cm (52.9 in.)
3. Storage Expansion Module:
   - G = 171.7 cm (67.6 in.)
   - H = 232.7 cm (91.6 in.)
4. Customer Interface Module:
   - I = 277.6 cm (109.3 in.)
   - J = 50.5 cm (19.9 in.)
   - K = 53.1 cm (20.9 in.)
   - L = 111.5 cm (43.9 in.)
   - M = 114.0 cm (44.9 in.)

Details:
Openings = Two per module that measure 5 cm (2 in.) diameter
Plates = Cover the openings and measure 7 cm (2.75 in.) square and 1 cm (0.48 in.) thick.
These plates are what contractors can use to drill in to for a custom fit of the nozzles.
Screws = Two T25 Torx screws
Nozzle protrusion (clearance) into the library for robotic operation = 1 cm (0.4 in.) from the *top* of the library

Note: Measurements are without covers and doors.

As a standard safety feature, the library comes equipped with photo-electric smoke detectors that *removes all power from the library* if smoke is detected in and around the library. Power is restored to the library by resetting the AC circuit breakers on the power distribution units.

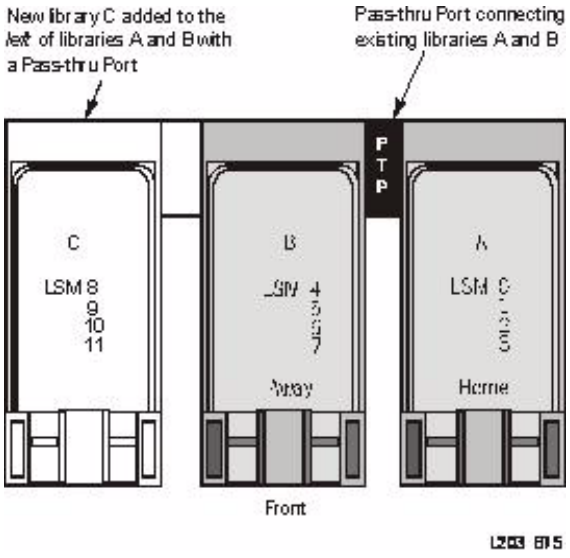
Pass-thru Port Planning

Figure 39 shows two examples of three libraries connected with PTPs.

- Example A shows the LSM numbering as you add libraries to the left.
- Example B shows the LSM numbering as you add libraries to the right.

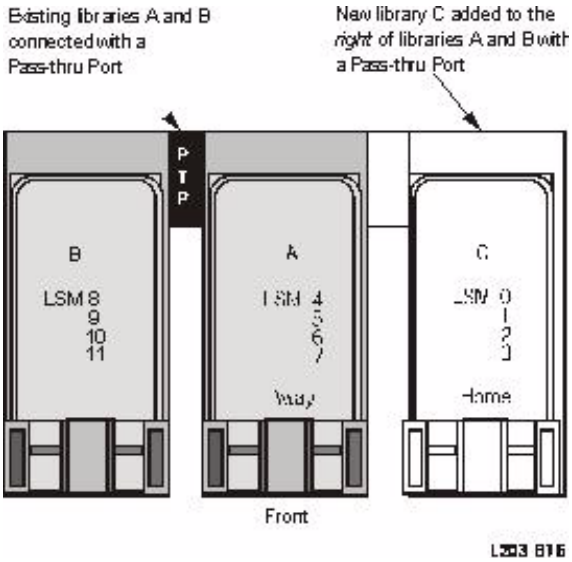
Figure 39. Pass-thru Port Planning Example

Example A



In this example, adding another library (C) to the *left* of the library complex increases the LSM numbering sequentially. *This is the preferred method.*

Example B



In this example, adding another library (C) to the *right* of the library complex requires a reconfiguration of LSM numbering.

Important:
For non-disruptive growth, the preferred method is to add libraries from **right** to **left**. However, the library can grow in the other direction—from *left* to *right*—but this requires a disruption to re-configuration the system, re-number the LSMs, and re-IPL the library.

To implement the pass-thru port feature, you must have:

- Accessory racks: 1 rack (required) 2 racks for power redundancy
- Inter-library Communications kit (PN 314842401)
- PTP conversion bill and instructions
- Software upgrade and reconfiguration

Make sure these are at the following levels *or higher*:

- Library firmware: FRS_1.70 (3.70.00) or higher—current is FRS_2.52
- Library Console: FRS_2.00 (such as 2.16)
- ACSLS: 7.1 plus PUT0501 for Near Continuous Operation
- HSC: 6.0 plus PTFs (minimum) or
  HSC: 6.1 which added Near Continuous Operation (NCO).

Obtaining a Password

The Library Console security system (interface with the library) *requires activation* of the site user accounts with a password.

StorageTek representatives (such as the installation coordinator, installer, or service representative) must obtain a password before any configuration of the library console is possible.

To save time, obtain this password *before* beginning the installation.

Before requesting an activation password:

- The requestor must have attended the SL8500 training courses (including training updates and Webinars) and passed all applicable tests.

Note: Contact Tier 3 (Technical Support) if you are not able to access the Activation Password application.

Directions for use of the password are supplied in the *SL8500 Modular Library System Installation Manual*, PN 96138.

Also, visit: http://sunsolve.sun.com for more information.

Installing the Library Console

The Library Console is a software application that provides all of the functions to test, monitor, and operate the library. You should also obtain and activate this software before installing the library.

Library Console is contained on a compact disk.

This software is loaded first to your personal computer, then customers must also load this to their remote computer.

Some notes about installing the Library Console software:

- For Windows, if the CD does not auto-start, go to the Windows START Menu. Select Run. Then type:

  ```
  D:\SLConsoleWindows
  ```
  where “D” is the letter for your CD-ROM drive. Click OK.

- For Solaris, type:

  ```
  /cdrom/cdrom0/SLConsoleSolaris.bin
  ```
  and follow the installer instructions.

When downloading the application, make sure to select the remote option.

Preparing for the Installation

The SL8500 library requires extensive site preparation to accomplish an error-free installation. Considerations that you and the customer must make before the equipment arrives are outlined in the following sections.

Personnel

Warning: *Weight of the upper modules:* You need to lift the upper drive bay and robotic rail modules. These modules weigh approximately 40 kg (85 lb) and are raised a height of 1.7 m (5.5 ft).

The estimated time to physically install a library is about 24 person/hours. This is based on *three qualified people* working approximately *eight hours*.

Note: For initial planning, you may want to estimate it as two days to completely install the library. This allows plenty of time to ensure a quality installation and allow for training.

To make the best use of personnel, multiple tasks should be done simultaneously. Time factors to consider include:

- Guiding the pallets from the dock to the computer room
- Removing packaging material when floor space is limited
- Lifting requirements of 40 kg (85 lb) to attach upper frame assemblies
- Configuring the library and up to 64 drives with switches and cables

Installation tips for these situations are supplied in the *Installation Manual*.

Power

Keep in mind the following power considerations:

1. A *qualified electrician* is required to install the power cable and must:

   - Use flexible or rigid conduit
   - Adhere to the torque specifications; *2 Nm (18 in-lb) torque*
   - Attach a 90-degree elbow-down fitting to the library's PDU or there will be problems attaching the cover and closing the rear door

   Make sure time has been scheduled and coordinated with the electrician.

2. Remember that there are two power configurations and four branch circuit options from which the customer can choose.

   Make sure the correct configuration and branch circuit is selected.

3. Plan the location for the second set of power wiring even if the customer is not purchasing the redundant power feature.

   Make sure each power source is on a separate branch circuit; otherwise the redundant power feature is defeated (for 2N power configurations).

Floor

Several requirements exist for the customer's *floor*:

Raised Floor

The SL8500 library does not require a raised floor. The primary concern is that the environmental requirements are met. As long as there is adequate airflow and environmental specifications are met, a raised floor is not required.

Weight

The weight of the library can vary depending on the configuration and number of modules (see Table 39 on page 84 for the listed weights). Make sure the customer's floor has been checked to verify that it will support this weight.

Co-planar

It is recommended that the customer's floor be laser-leveled before receiving any equipment and that the library modules be situated along the same horizontal plane (co-planar[1]) to within ± 25 mm (1 in.) tolerance.

Co-planer positioning of the library modules is extremely important, because up to six modules may be joined together linearly. If you are not within a 25 mm (1 in.) height condition between the first and second module, this will result in a 152 mm (6 in.) condition at the last module. Out-of-plane conditions will cause binding, premature wear, and damage to the HandBots.

Construction Area

The minimum working area (not including the space required for the pallets) is approximately 56 m^2 (600 ft^2).

Installation Tools

Table 48 lists the tools available in the installation kit that may be ordered through Logistics if one is *not* available locally.

Notes:

- These tools are *not* supplied with each library.
- You should always order the kit instead of ordering the tools separately.
- Separate tool orders are *only* for replacing damaged or missing tools.
- Once used, retain the kit for re-use locally or ship within your region.
- Kit dimensions are: 99 cm (39 in.) long, 71 cm (28 in.) wide, and 51 cm (20 in.) high. The kit comes with an extendable handle and wheels.
- Make sure you order any *additional items* (see the following page)

1. Lying or acting in the same plane.

Table 48. Installation Tools

Description	Part Number
Copper rail connector extraction tool	313921001
Frame jacks with handles (adjustable jack)	313880803
Pawl adjustment tool	314801802
Tool bag	24100254
Torx screwdriver and bits	4850
3/8-in. drive ratchet wrench	3010420130
6 in. extension for 3/8-in. drive ratchet	3010420624
3/4-in. socket for 3/8-in. drive ratchet	24100036
3/8-in. socket for 3/8-in. drive ratchet	24100251
9/16 in. socket for 3/8-in. drive ratchet	3010420467
1/4-in. hex (Allen) on 3/8-in. drive	3010420645
5/16-in. hex (Allen) on 3/8-in.drive	3010420646
3/4-in. combination open end/box end wrench	3010420417
5/8-in. combination open end/box end wrench	24100253
9/16-in. combination open end/box end wrench	3010420476
25 ft tape measure	3010420629
2 ft level	24100252
Utility knife	24100045
Safety glasses	4803
Wire side cutters	24100041
Rubber mallet	3010420627

In addition, these other items may be required:

- Serial cable for laptop (PN 24100134)
- Crossover cable for laptop (PN 24100163)
- *Rack hardware kit* (PN 314837601)
- *Laptop shelf* (PN 313981201)
- *Block kit assembly* (PN 314828101)
- *Tape drive power kit* (PN 314831201)
- *Floor planning template* (PN 109487201)
- Flashlight
- Step stool
- Safety glasses
- Work gloves
- Volt/Ohmmeter
- Optional power drill for tightening nuts and screws

Rack Stop Installation Tools

Tool Kit PN 418644901 includes one long tool, one short tool, and a serialized shipping container

- PN 418623102 is the short tool
- PN 418623002 is the long tool

Additional tools required (to be acquired locally):

- 1/16 HEX ALLEN DRIVER
- Original Field Track Alignment Tool, PN: 419894001

Recommended

- Step Stool; access to top rail
- Knee Pads; access to bottom rail
- SL8500 Array Extraction Tool PN: 24100275

Figure 40. Rack Stops Per Library

Expansion Modules	Rack Stops Per Rail	Total Rack Stops Per Library	Quantity of PN 418626901
0	1	15	1
1	1	15	1
2	1	15	1
3	1	15	1
4	5	80	5
5	6	95	6

Both special tools have been distributed to regional depots and can be ordered and checked out as typically done for spare parts:

- PN: 418644901 – rack alignment tool kit
- PN: 419894001 – original track alignment tool

Note: Installation time is estimated at 5 hours for a library containing 5 Storage Expansion Modules (SEMs) using two people.

Recommend two rack alignment kits and two track alignment tools be used to work both sides of the library in parallel.

Shipping Weights and Dimensions

The SL8500 library is delivered on pallets that can measure up to 2.4 m (8 ft) in length and weigh up to 491 kg (1082 lb). Make sure the customer has forklifts or pallet jacks that can handle these pallets. If moving between floors, make sure the customer has an elevator that can operate with these loads.

Note: The values listed are estimates and subject to change. Fractions are rounded up to the next whole number. Examples: 13.25 is rounded up to 14 or 23.68 is rounded up to 24.

- Table 49 lists the individual pallet size and weights
- Table 50 lists the total weight of the pallets for a library configuration
- Table 51 lists weights dimensions for additional components

Table 49. Shipping Pallets – Weights and Dimensions

Pallet	Description	Weight	Dimensions		
			Height	Width	Length
1	Lower Drive & Electronics Module	491 kg (1082 lb)	196 cm (77 in.)	92 cm (36 in.)	185 cm (73 in.)
2*	Upper Drive & Electronics Module	114 kg (250 lb)	76 cm (30 in.)	92 cm (36 in.)	185 cm (73 in.)
2/4*	Upper Modules	201 kg (443 lb)	137 cm (54 in.)	92 cm (36 in.)	185 cm (73 in.)
3	Lower Robotics Interface Module	241 kg (532 lb)	196 cm (77 in.)	92 cm (36 in.)	185 cm (73 in.)
4*	Upper Robotics Interface Module	91 kg (200 lb)	76 cm (30 in.)	92 cm (36 in.)	185 cm (73 in.)
4a	Storage Expansion Module	327 kg (720 lb)	122 cm (48 in.)	102 cm (40 in.)	246 cm (97 in.)
5	Customer Interface Module	319 kg (703 lb)	122 cm (48 in.)	82 cm (32 in.)	246 cm (97 in.)
6	Z-frame	145 kg (320 lb)	76 cm (30 in.)	64 cm (25 in.)	246 cm (97 in.)
7	Basic library rails	100 kg (220 lb)	33 cm (13 in.)	112 cm (44 in.)	125 cm (49 in.)
7a	Rails 1st expansion module	182 kg (400 lb)	33 cm (13 in.)	112 cm (44 in.)	218 cm (86 in.)
7b	Rails 2nd expansion module	272 kg (600 lb)	33 cm (13 in.)	112 cm (44 in.)	315 cm (124 in.)
7c	Rails 3rd expansion module Stacked and re-packed (114 in.)	372 kg (820 lb)	51 cm (20 in.) 51 cm (20 in.)	112 cm (44 in.) 56 cm (22 in.)	315 cm (124 in.) 315 cm (124 in.)
8	Arrays, basic library (16 boxes)	160 kg (350 lb)	122 cm (48 in.)	115 cm (45 in.)	153 cm (60 in.)
8a	Arrays, expan. mods. (16 boxes)	182 kg (400 lb)	122 cm (48 in.)	115 cm (45 in.)	153 cm (60 in.)
9	Covers and Doors (painted)	356 kg (785 lb)	122 cm (48 in.)	110 cm (43 in.)	254 cm (100 in.)
9c	Covers and Doors with CAP	356 kg (850 lb)	137 cm (54 in.)	110 cm (43 in.)	254 cm (100 in.)
10	4x Robotics (4 boxes)	57 kg (124 lb)	63.5 cm (25 in.)	100 cm (39 in.)	82 cm (60 in.)
10	8x Robotics (8 boxes)	102 kg (224 lb)	115 cm (45 in.)	100 cm (39 in.)	82 cm (60 in.)
–	CAP	22 kg (48 lb)	36 cm (14 in.)	38 cm (15 in.)	229 cm (90 in.)
* When both upper modules are shipped together, labels 2 and 4 are applied to the same pallet = 201 kg (443 lb).					

Table 50. Total Pallet Weights for a Selected Library Configuration

Library Configuration	Pallets Needed / Shipped	Total Weight
Basic Library	1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9, 10	2135 kg (4,716 lb)
Plus First Expansion Module	1, 2, 3, 4, 4a, 5, 6, 7a, 8, 8a, 9, 10	2724 kg (6,016 lb)
Plus Second Expansion Module	1, 2, 3, 4, 4a (x2), 5, 6, 7b, 8, 8a (x2), 9, 10	3323 kg (7,336 lb)
Plus Third Expansion Module	1, 2, 3, 4, 4a (x3), 5, 6, 7b, 7c, 8, 8a (x3), 9, 10	3931 kg (8,676 lb)
The weight of one CAP is included in the total weights listed. If ordering the optional CAP, increase the total weight by 22 kg (48 lb). CAPs are shipped in their own container and usually added to pallet 9.		

Table 51. Component Weights and Dimensions

Description	Weight	Packaged Dimensions		
		Height	Width	Length
CAP	22 kg (48 lb)	36 cm (14 in.)	38 cm (15 in.)	229 cm (90 in.)
Façade- Upper and Lower Ships with pallet 9	19 kg (40 lb)	13 cm (5 in.)	49 cm (19 in.)	242 cm (95 in.)
Copper Kit for Rails 76 inch Ships with pallet 7A	9 kg (20 lb)	8 cm (3 in.)	44 cm (17 in.)	196 cm (77 in.)
Copper Kit for Rails 114 inch Ships with pallet 7B	12 kg (25 lb)	8 cm (3 in.)	92 cm (36 in.)	178 cm (70 in.)
Copper Kit for Rails +114inch Ships with pallet 7C	14 kg (30 lb)	8 cm (3 in.)	92 cm (36 in.)	178 cm (70 in.)
Drive Bay Ships on a pallet	37 kg (80 lb)	94 cm (36 in.)	59 cm (23 in.)	83 cm (32 in.)
HBS	5 kg (10 lb)	16 cm (6 in.)	26 cm (10 in.)	61 cm (24 in.)
Op Panel/Display	11 kg (23 lb)	31 cm (12 in.)	41 cm (16 in.)	46 cm (18 in.)
PDU	9 kg (19 lb)	28 cm (11 in.)	74 cm (29 in.)	74 cm (29 in.)
PDU N+1	9 kg (19 lb)	21 cm (8 in.)	61 cm (24 in.)	69 cm (27 in.)
Power Supplies	5 kg (10 lb)	23 cm (9 in.)	26 cm (10 in.)	46 cm (18 in.)
Drive Tray - Common SL8500	14 kg (30 lb)	31 cm (12 in.)	33 cm (13 in.)	102 cm (40 in.)
Drive - Common Ships on a pallet	173 kg (380 lb)	107 cm (42 in.)	107 cm (42 in.)	138 cm (54 in.)
LTO Drive on SL8500 Tray	12 kg (26 lb)	31 cm (12 in.)	33 cm (13 in.)	102 cm (40 in.)
9940 Drive on SL8500 Tray	18 kg (38 lb)	31 cm (12 in.)	33 cm (13 in.)	125 cm (49 in.)
9940 Drive- Pallet Load Ships on a pallet	118 kg (260 lb)	107 cm (42 in.)	72 cm (28 in.)	127 cm (50 in.)
Rack Module (19" Rack)	19 kg (40 lb)	64 cm (25 in.)	51 cm (20 in.)	92 cm (36 in.)
Safety Door Ships on a pallet	20 kg (42 lb)	33 cm (13 in.)	66 cm (26 in.)	229 cm (90 in.)

Moving Unpacked Components

If necessary, you can unpack the library components from the pallets to move them to the installation site. Follow the unpacking instructions on the outside packaging material or installation manual.

Table 52 lists the specifications for the *larger* parts of the library.

Table 52. Unpacked Components

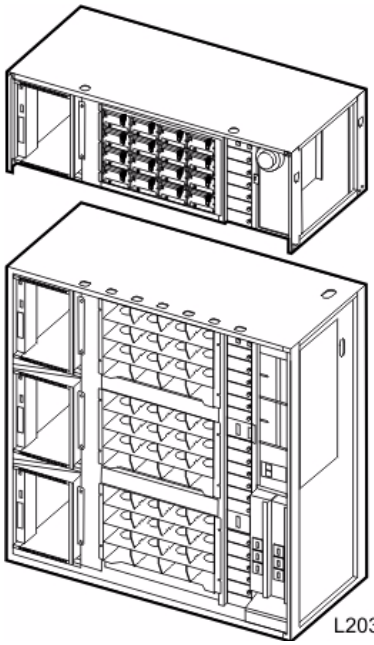
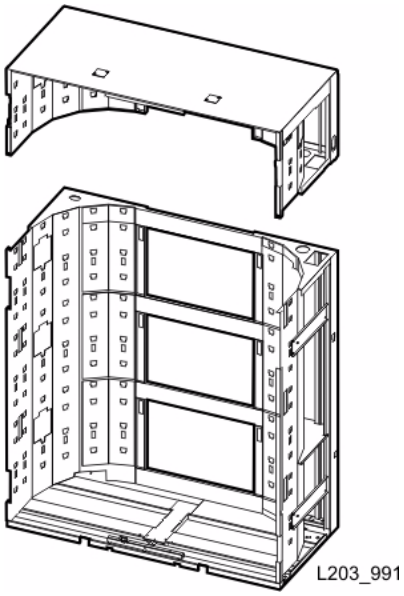
Component	Description
 L203_990	**Drive and Electronics Module** This module comes in two parts: The upper module specifications are: Height: 58.5 cm (23 in.) Width: 168 cm (66 in.) Depth: 76 cm (30 in.) Weight: 37 kg (80 lb) Pallet #: 2 **Note:** Removing the drive bay from the upper module makes it easier to lift and move. **Caution:** The lower module is the heaviest module in the library: Height: 173 cm (68 in.) Width: 168 cm (66 in.) Depth: 76 cm (30 in.) Weight: 386 kg (850 lb) Pallet #: 1
 L203_991	**Robotics Interface Module** This module comes in two parts: The upper module: Height: 54.6 cm (21.5 in.) Width: 168 cm (66 in.) Depth: 76 cm (30 in.) Pallet #: 2 The lower module: Height: 176.5 cm (69.5 in.) Width: 168 cm (66 in.) Depth: 76 cm (30 in.) Pallet #: 3 **Note:** Because of the open design of these modules, diagonal stabilizers are attached to help move and handle them.

Table 52. Unpacked Components

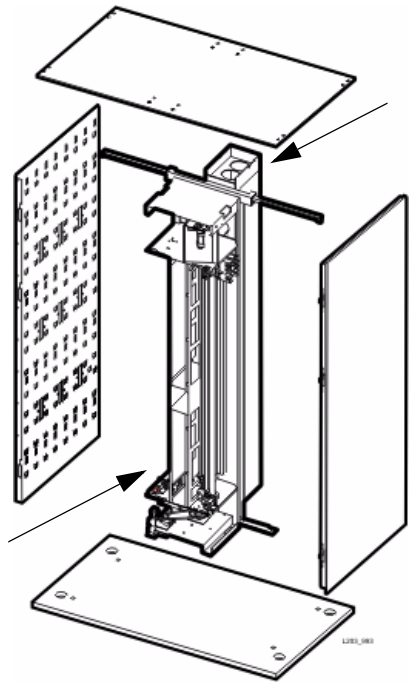
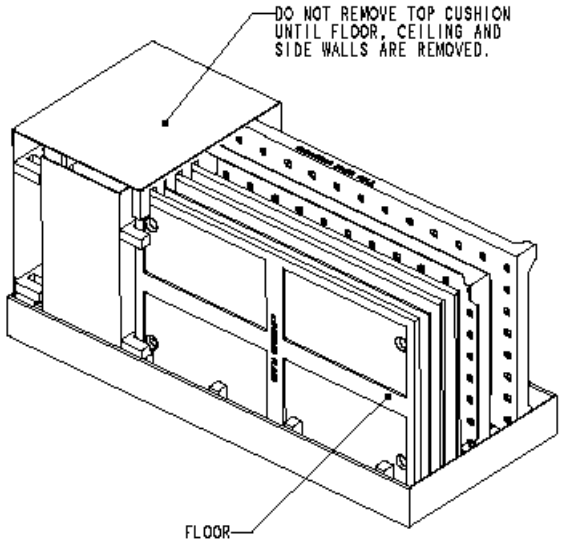
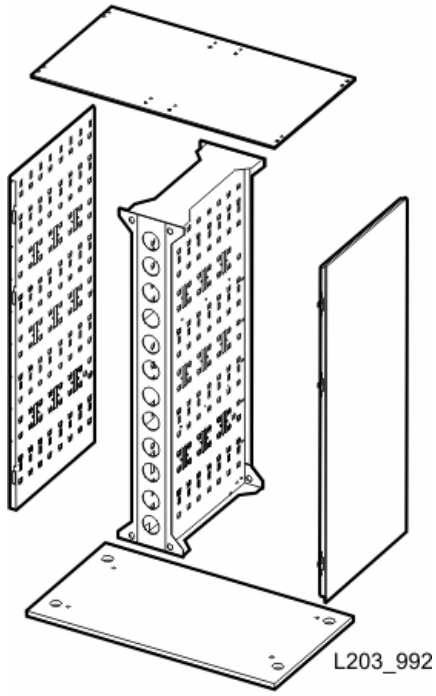
Component	Description
	**Customer Interface Module** This module is not pre-assembled and must be constructed on-site. Customer Module Center Section There are two center sections that must be attached to the floor of this module: • A *rear* section that does *not* contain components • A *front* section, called the Z frame, which contains the elevator and turntable assemblies. The dimensions of the Z frame are: Height: 227.3 cm (89.5 in.) Width: 44.5 cm (17.5 in.) Depth:51 cm (20 in.) Pallet #: 6 **Caution:** The Z frame weighs 77 kg (170 lb). **Note:** Allow 3 m (10 ft) of space at the end of the box or pallet to unpack these components.
	Floor: Height: 167.6 cm (66 in.) Width: 94.6 cm (37.25 in.) Depth:3.8 cm (1.5 in.) Pallet #: 5 Ceiling (roof): Height: 167 cm (65.75 in.) Width: 95.25 cm (37.5 in.) Depth:3.8 cm (1.5 in.) Pallet #: 5 Left and Right Walls: Height: 231 cm (91 in.) Width: 186.7 cm (73.5 in.) Depth:4.4 cm (1.75 in.) Pallet #: 5

Table 52. Unpacked Components

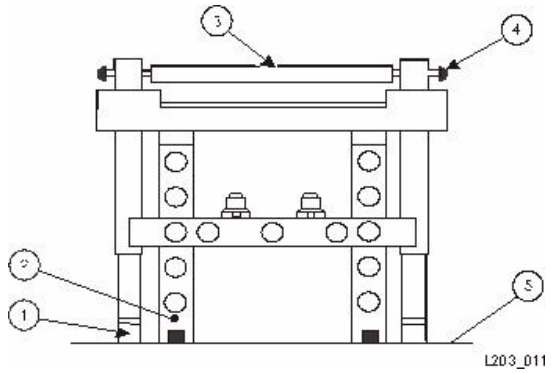
Component	Description
	**Storage Expansion Module** These modules are *not* pre-assembled and must be constructed on-site. **Note:** Allow 3 m (10 ft) of space at the end of the box or pallet to unpack these components. Floor: Height: 167.6 cm (66 in.) Width: 94.6 cm (37.25 in.) Depth:3.8 cm (1.5 in.) Pallet #: 4 Ceiling (roof): Height: 167 cm (65.75 in.) Width: 95.25 cm (37.5 in.) Depth:3.8 cm (1.5 in.) Pallet #: 4 Center Wall Section Height: 227.3 cm (89.5 in.) Width: 44.5 cm (17.5 in.) Depth:95.25 cm (37.5 in.) Pallet #: 4 Left and Right Walls: Height: 231 cm (91 in.) Width: 186.7 cm (73.5 in.) Depth:4.4 cm (1.75 in.) Pallet #: 4
Doors Pallet #: 9 Front: Height: 231 cm (91 in.) Width: 61.5 and 66 cm (24.25 and 26 in.) Depth:8.25 cm (3.25 in.) Rear access: Height: 231 cm (91 in.) Width: 85.7 cm (33.75 in.) Depth:10 cm (4 in.) **Rack** assemblies: Height: 48.26 cm (19 in.) Width: 33.65/38 cm (13.25/15 in.) Depth:72.5 cm (28.5 in.)	**Rails** are composed of five major parts. And depending on the configuration, are the longest parts in the library: 1. Clamps (installed at the factory) 2. Rail extrusions 3. Bottom floor extrusion 4. Geared tracks 5. Power/signal strips Pallet #: 7 (a, b, or c) Extrusion lengths: 1 m (3.3 ft) 2 m (6.4 ft) 3 m (9.5 ft) 3.9 m (12.6 ft)

Adjustable Jacks

Special jacks (Figure 42) maybe needed to assist in unpacking, moving, and positioning the larger modules. This jack is part of the tool kit, which is required for an installation.

See “Installation Tools” on page 105 for a list of tools.

Figure 41. Adjustable Jack



1. Wheels or bearings
2. Frame
3. Adjustment bar
4. Adjustment crank location
5. Floor

Figure 42 shows two ways to position the adjustable jack.

Figure 42. Jack Positioning

Shown in position to move the lower Drive and Electronics Module. Notice the clearance below the module.

Shown in position to move or adjust the location of the Storage Expansion Module or Customer Interface Module.

Moving Libraries

Moving an installed library involves extensive work.

Connected library modules can *not* be moved as a unit.

If a library *must be moved*, you must first determine where the library is to be moved. If you need to move the library through a doorway, hallway, of different floor, you must *disassemble* the entire library and re-assemble it.

If the library is to be moved within the room, you must then:

- Disconnect all power and signal cables to the library and drives
- Remove all drives
- Remove all equipment racks
- Remove all arrays and cartridges
- Disconnect all cables between the modules
- Physically separate the modules
- Remove arrays to accommodate inserting the roller assemblies
- Attach roller assemblies to each module to move it to the desired location
- Adjust all modules for co-planar condition
- Re-attach the modules and rails
- Reconnect the library module interconnect cables
- Reconnect all external cables

Remote Support

Service and support representatives are available to assist ***you*** and the customer with hardware and software problem resolution.

During the initial order and installation planning, make sure that you inform the customer about the local and remote support options.

Service Delivery Platform

The Service Delivery Platform (SDP) is a remote support solution for the SL8500 library. The SDP consists of a smart appliance placed at the customer site that connects to the library plus to any StorageTek T-Series tape drives.

If the customer wants remote support as part of the SL8500 library installation, the SDP Systems Assurance Guide needs to be completed.
Visit:

- https://onestopwiki.sfbay/index and
- https://onestopwiki.sfbay/index.php?title=SDP_Support_Tools.

This configurator assists you with:

- Creating a Bill of Materials (BOM) that is required for the SDP installation
- Provides you with a link to Software Manufacturing and Distribution
- Lists instructions for locating the SDP Software Kit

Ask your local logistics personnel to order the parts using SAP or ACES.

Does the customer want remote support?	**Yes** ❑	**No** ❑
Has the SDP appliance been ordered?	**Yes** ❑	**No** ❑
Has the SDP Systems Assurance Guide been completed? Refer to the Site Preparation Kit or Web site.	**Yes** ❑	**No** ❑

Technical Excellence Center

Customer initiated maintenance begins with a telephone call from you to the Technical Excellence Center (TEC).

You will receive immediate attention from qualified personnel.

To contact the TEC, call:

800.525.0369 (inside the United States)

303.673.2778 (outside the United States)

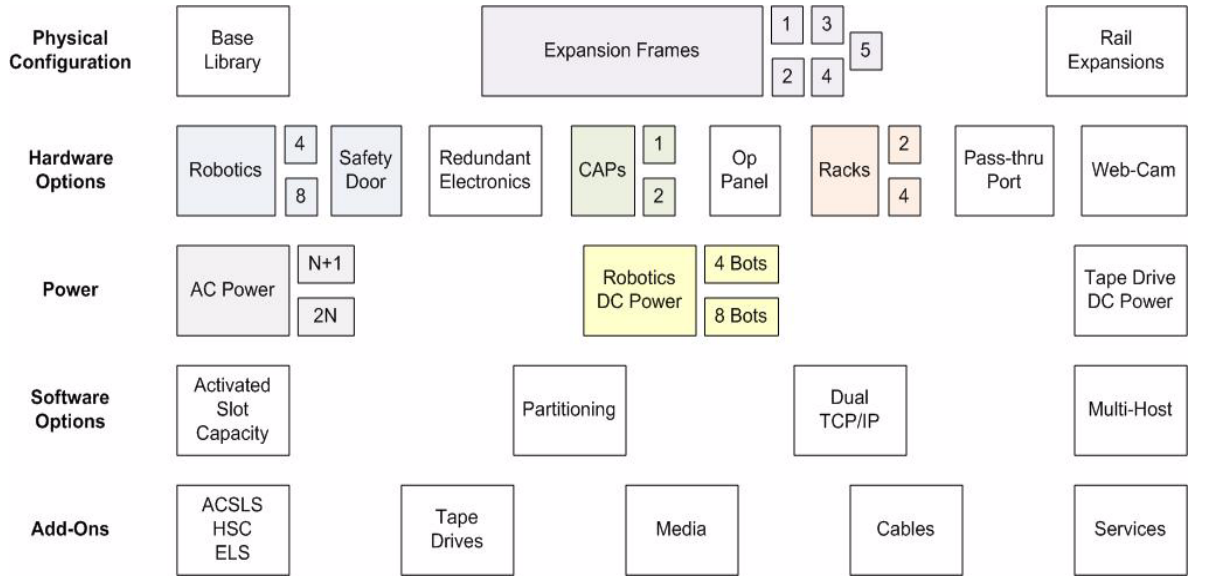
Ordering Information

5

Use this chapter to help you order the SL8500 Modular Library System, tape drives, media, and external cables.

Figure 43 show the ordering process for this chapter.

Figure 43. Ordering Process

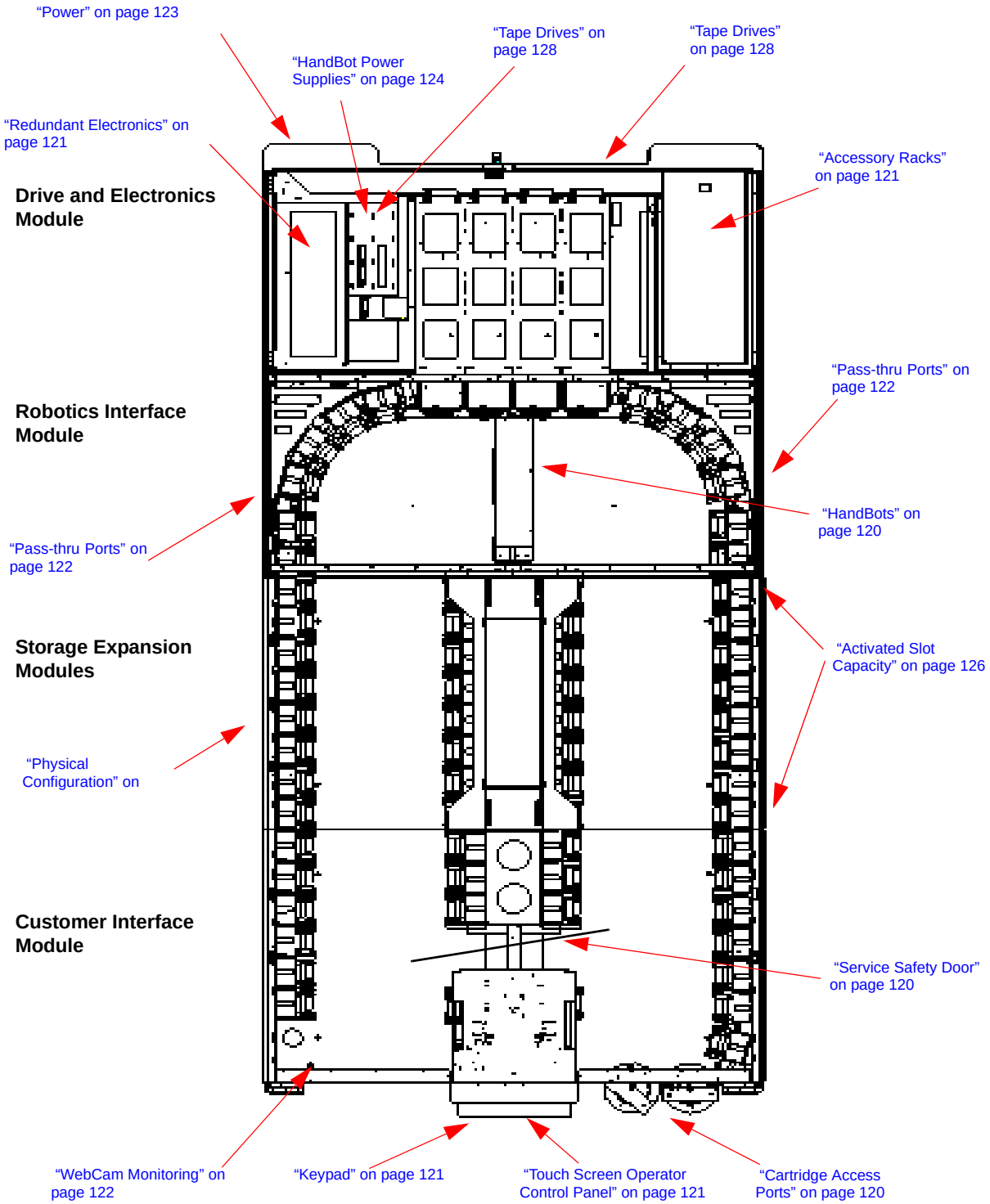


Using this flowchart, the ordering process consists of:

1. Decide upon the physical configuration, base library and any expansion modules.
2. Add any of the hardware options.
3. Specify the power options to support the configuration.
4. Choose any software options.
5. Select the:
   a. Type of library management software
   b. Type and quantity of tape drives and media (cartridge tapes)
   c. Supporting cables and network equipment

Library Features and Locations

Figure 44. Features and Their Locations



Physical Configuration

The SL8500 library has two options for a **base library**:

Table 53. Base Library Order Numbers – Required

Order Number	Description
SL8500-ENTRYSYS-N	SL8500 Entry Bundle, includes 1,000 activated slots
SL8500-BASESYS-Z-N	SL8500 Base Library, includes 1,448 activated slots

In addition, the following five part numbers are required:

Table 54. Additional Library Module Order Numbers – Required

Order Number	Description
SL8500-BASEASY-Z-N	Base module assembly
SL8500-BSEARRAY-N	Base machine array
SL8500-CIM-Z-N	CIM assembly
SL8500-CVR-Z_N	Cover group
SL8500-ZFRAME-Z-N	Z-frame assembly

Up to **five** additional storage expansion modules can be added to increase capacity of the library. The expansion module part number is listed below:

Table 55. Expansion Module Order Numbers – Optional

Order Number	Description
XSL8500-EXP-FRZ-N	Expansion frame

Rails must be ordered that correspond to the total number of expansion modules ordered above:

Table 56. Rail Order Numbers – Required

Order Number	Description
XSL8500-0EF-RAIL-N	Rails for 0 Expansion Frame
XSL8500-1EF-RAIL-N	Rails for 1 Expansion Frame
XSL8500-2EF-RAIL-N	Rails for 2 Expansion Frames
XSL8500-3EF-RAIL-N	Rails for 3 Expansion Frames
XSL8500-4EF-RAIL-N	Rails for 4 Expansion Frames
XSL8500-5EF-RAIL-N	Rails for 5 Expansion Frames

Hardware Options

The following section lists the hardware options for the SL8500 library.

HandBots

HandBots are the robotic units that physically move the cartridge tapes. Each library comes with four HandBots (standard); this optional feature adds another four Handbots for a total of eight to the library.

Table 57. HandBot Order Numbers

Order Number	Description
XSL8500-4BOT-Z -N	4-HandBots
See also"HandBot Power Supplies" on page 124.	

Service Safety Door

The Service Safety Door is a sliding door that allows maintenance to a failing component in the front frame to be replaced. This safety door is *required* to support redundant *eight* HandBots and optional to support *four* HandBots.

Table 58. Service Safety Door Order Numbers

Order Number	Description
XSL8500-SVDR-Z-N	Service Safety Door

Cartridge Access Ports

The library includes one 39-slot cartridge access port (CAP) with an *optional* feature to add a second 39-slot CAP.

Table 59. Cartridge Access Port Order Numbers

Order Number	Description
XSL8500-CAP-MAG-N	SL8500 CAP Magazine Assembly
XSL8500-MAG13-Z-N	Optional/Additional CAP Magazine Assembly

Touch Screen Operator Control Panel

The library supports an *optional* control panel which is actually a computer with a software application referred to as the Library Console.

- If this feature is not ordered, the library comes with a decorator panel.
- If this feature is ordered, the library gets the Touch Screen Operator Control Panel mounted on the facade.

Table 60. Touch Screen Operator Panel Order Numbers

Order Number	Description
XSL8500-TSOP-Z-N	Touchscreen Op Panel

Keypad

The library includes a keypad that has two buttons, eight LEDs, and two locks. The two buttons open and close the CAPs. The eight LEDs indicate library activity and status. The safety locks place the library in maintenance mode.

Accessory Racks

The library provides space for up to four traditional 19-inch racks to be installed in the Drive and Electronics Module. These racks are oriented so the components mount vertically instead of horizontally and can hold up to 6Us (1u = 1.75 inches) of equipment, such as switches, hubs, and servers.

Note: Equipment must be qualified to be installed in the racks. Follow the guidelines listed in Table 9 on page 25.

Table 61. Accessory Rack Order Numbers

Order Number	Description
XSL8500-RACK-Z-N	6U Accessory Rack
XSL8500-RACK-HW-Z	Rack Component HW Kit
Note: Order: – Up to two racks for an N+1 power configuration or – Up to four racks for a 2N power configuration.	

Redundant Electronics

Redundant Electronics is an optional feature that provides a redundant (*second*) set of controller electronics in case the primary set has a failure.

Table 62. Redundant Electronics Order Numbers

Order Number	Description
XSL8500-REDELECT-Z	Redundant Electronics
XSL8500-ETHRNT-Z	PUE Ethernet card/switch (PN: 419951602)

Pass-thru Ports

A library complex is created by connecting two or more SL8500 libraries together with pass-thru ports (PTPs). The PTPs are installed between the drive and electronics module and the robotics interface module of one library, and the same modules of an adjacent library.

Table 63. Pass-thru Port Order Numbers

Order Number	Description
X-SL8500P-BLANK-Z	PTP assembly *without* mechanisms
X-SL8501-P-PTP-N	PTP with mechanisms
XSL8500P-MECH-Z-N	PTP mechanisms for upgrade
XSL8501P-HUB-Z-N	Hub and ILC kit for PTP *(for every 5th library)*

Hub and inter-library communication (ILC) kit guidelines:

Order the hub if:

- You are installing the first PTP between libraries 1 and 2. This hub can service libraries 1, 2, 3, 4, and 5.

OR if:

- You are expanding the complex between libraries 6 and 7. This hub can service libraries 6, 7, 8, 9, and 10.

This number includes the Ethernet hub and cables to connect the additional libraries.

WebCam Monitoring

Because there are no viewing windows for this library, a library camera monitoring system is an optional feature. This feature includes two static cameras, one for each side of the library, and monitoring software.

Table 64. WebCam Order Numbers

Order Number	Description
XSL8500-WEBCAM-Z-N	WebCams

Power

Power selection for the SL8500 depends on three selections:

- Library AC power
- Robotic DC power
- Tape Drive DC power

Choosing options for each of these three is **required.**

AC Power

There are two possible AC power configurations for the library.

- **N+1 power**: the *standard power configuration* for DC power redundancy.
- **2N power**: an *optional configuration* for AC *and* DC power redundancy.

  Note: The 2N power distribution unit must connect to a separate power source to provide *both* AC *and* DC power redundancy.

There are three possible power options:

- **Delta:** 200–240 VAC, three phase, 50–60 Hz, 40 Amps,
- **Wye:** 200–240VAC, three phase, 50–60 Hz, 24 Amps
- **Single-phase:** 200–240 VAC, 50–60 Hz, 24 Amps (3-separate inputs)

You must select *one* of these power feature codes from Table 65.

Table 65. Power Distribution Order Numbers – Required

Order Number	Description
XSL8500-1PH-Z-N	N+1 Single Phase Power
XSL8500-DELTAZ-N	N+1 Delta Power
XSL8500-WYE-Z-N	N+1 Wye Power
XSL8500-AC-ASSY-Z	N+1 ASSY for use with N+1 power
XSL8500-ETHENT-Z	Ethernet Switch for 2N Power
XSL8500-DR-PWR-Z-N	One Drive Power Supply
XSL8500-RB-PWR-Z_N	One Robot Power Supply

HandBot Power Supplies

The HandBot power supplies plug into the Robot and Pass-thru Port Power Grid and provide 48 VDC power to the HandBots and pass-thru ports.

Power supply requirements depends on the number of HandBots and the type of library power configuration (N+1 or 2N).

- The N+1 power configuration provides *two* load sharing power supplies for every four HandBots plus *one* redundant power supply.
- The 2N power configuration provides *one* load sharing power supply for *each* HandBot.

Note: A 2N power supply requires a 2N Power Configuration. See Table 65 on page 123.

Table 66. HandBot Power Supply Order Numbers

Order Number	Description
XSL8500-RB-PWR-Z-N	One Robotic Power Supply

Guidelines:

- Four HandBot power (*standard* power for 4 robots)
  Order 3 power supplies (2+1 redundant)
- Four HandBot power (*optional* power for 4 robots)
  Order 4 power supplies (2+2 redundant)
- Eight HandBot power (*standard* power for 8 robots)
  Order 5 power supplies (4+1 redundant)
- Eight HandBot power (*optional* power for 8 robots)
  Order 8 power supplies (4+4 redundant)

Tape Drive Power Supplies

See “Tape Drives” on page 128 for information about specific drives.

Location and selection of the power supplies depends on the number of tape drives selected and the type of power configuration (N+1 or 2N). Each pair of supplies provides enough power to support up to 16 tape drives regardless of the type of drive.

- The N+1 power configuration provides *two* load sharing power supplies for every 16 drives with *one* redundant power supply.
- The 2N power configuration provides *one* load sharing power supply for every *four* tape drives.

Note: The power supplies are hot-pluggable and can be added to the library without any down time.

Table 67. Tape Drive Power Supply Order Numbers

Order Number	Description
XSL8500-DR-PWR-Z-N	One Drive Power Supply

Power supply guidelines:

- Drive power 1–16 drives *standard*
  Order 3 power supplies (2+1 redundant)
- N+1 Drive Power 17–32 drives
  Order 5 power supplies (4+1 redundant)
- N+1 Drive Power 33–48 drives
  Order 7 power supplies (6+1 redundant)
- N+1 Drive Power 49–64 drives
  Order 9 power supplies (8+1 redundant)
- 2N Drive Power 1–16 drives
  Order 4 power supplies (2+2 redundant)
- 2N Drive Power 17–32 drives
  Order 8 power supplies (4+4 redundant)
- 2N Drive Power 33–48 drives
  Order 12 power supplies (6+6 redundant)
- 2N Drive Power 49–64 drives
  Order 16 power supplies (8+8 redundant)

Note: The 2N drive power supplies *require* a 2N Power Configuration. See Table 65 on page 123.

Software Options

The following section lists the software options for the SL8500 library.

Activated Slot Capacity

Use these upgrade feature numbers to order additional slots, capacity:

Table 68. Slot Upgrade Order Numbers

Order Number	Description
XSL8500-UPG-1250-N	Slot upgrade, 1000 to 1250
XSL8500-UPG-1750-N	Slot upgrade, 1250 to 1448
XSL8500-UPG-1750-N	Slot upgrade, 1448 to 1750
XSL8500-UPG-2000-N	Slot upgrade, 1750 to 2000
XSL8500-UPG-2250-N	Slot upgrade, 2000 to 2250
XSL8500-UPG-2500-N	Slot upgrade, 2250 to 2500
XSL8500-UPG-3000-N	Slot upgrade, 2500 to 3000
XSL8500-UPG-3500-N	Slot upgrade, 3000 to 3500
XSL8500-UPG-4000-N	Slot upgrade, 3500 to 4000
XSL8500-UPG-4500-N	Slot upgrade, 4000 to 4500
XSL8500-UPG-5000-N	Slot upgrade, 4500 to 5000
XSL8500-UPG-5500-N	Slot upgrade, 5000 to 5500
XSL8500-UPG-6000-N	Slot upgrade, 5500 to 6000
XSL8500-UPG-6500-N	Slot upgrade, 6000 to 6500
XSL8500-UPG-7000-N	Slot upgrade, 6500 to 7000
XSL8500-UPG-7500-N	Slot upgrade, 7000 to 7500
XSL8500-UPG-8000-N	Slot upgrade, 7500 to 8000
XSL8500-UPG-8500-N	Slot upgrade, 8000 to 8500
XSL8500-UPG-9000-N	Slot upgrade, 8500 to 9000
XSL8500-UPG-9500-N	Slot upgrade, 9000 to 9500
XSL8500-UPG-10000-N	Slot upgrade, 9500 to 10000

Partitioning

Partitioning provides the ability to physically separate an SL8500 library in to four separate libraries or sections using the rails as boundaries. Partitioning is only available on single, stand alone libraries, complexes are not allowed. Each partition can be under the control of either ACSLS or HSC/ELS.

Table 69. Tape Drive Power Supply Order Numbers

Order Number	Description
XSL8500-UPG-PART-N	Add partitioning

Dual TCP/IP

The Dual TCP/IP feature provides a dual control path for host connectivity to a single SL8500 library.

Table 70. Tape Drive Power Supply Order Numbers

Order Number	Description
XSL8500-DTCPIP-N	Dual TCP/IP Host interface

Multi-Host TCP/IP

Multi-Host connectivity allows up to four TCP/IP connections to an SL8500 Library Complex; one that contains two or more libraries.

Table 71. Tape Drive Power Supply Order Numbers

Order Number	Description
XSL8500-MTCPIP-N	Multi-library TCP/IP Host interface

Add-ons

The last section of the ordering process includes

- Library Management Software such as ACSLS, HSC, and ELS.
- Tape Drives
- Media
- Cables
- Service (maintenance options)

Library Management Software

See "Library Management Software" on page 41 for a description about the different types of software available.

Tape Drives

The minimum number of tape drives the customer needs to order is *1*.
The maximum number of tape drives the customer needs to order is *64*.
See Appendix C, "Tape Drives" for information about the specific tape drives.

Tape drive ordering guidelines:

- Tape drives supported in the SL8500 include StorageTek tape drives as well as third party tape drives with a **fibre-optic interface** (such as Fiber Channel, ESCON and FICON interfaces).
- High voltage differential (HVD) and low voltage differential (LVD) small computer system interface (SCSI) tape drives *are not be supported*.
- The tape drive *must support* the dynamic World Wide Name feature.
- Tape drive configurations do not support Arbitrated Loops.
- *Equipment damage:* In case of a tape drive failure, the drives are removed from their trays which are specific to that drive type.
  Do not mix tape drives and drive trays.
- All T9840 tape drives use the same media type, a 9840 tape cartridge. However, the format and data capacity between the T9840 A/B (20 GB) is different than the T9840C (40 GB) and T9840D (80 GB).
- Encryption adds another element to content management.

  Refer to the Crypto Key Management System, Systems Assurance Guide for more information about encryption-capable tape drives, including:

  - T10000 A and B
  - T9840 D
  - HP and IBM LTO drives (Generation 4 and higher)

Cables

The following sections provide information about the different interface cables. When ordering cables, keep this in mind:

- **Riser cables** can be used in computer rooms and are not classified according to flammability or toxic gas emissions.
- **Plenum cables** are designed for installation in air ducts and manufactured to meet UL standards for flammability and produce little smoke.

Ethernet Cables

The library uses Ethernet cables for TCP/IP connections, which include host and library-to-library communications.

Table 72. Ethernet Cables

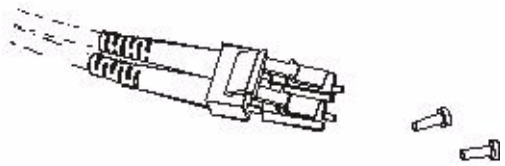
Description	Order Number
CAT5E, 8 ft, 24 AWG, Shielded	CABLE10187033-Z
CAT5E, 35 ft, 24 AWG, Shielded	CABLE10187034-Z
CAT-5E, 50 IN, 24 AWG, Shielded	CABLE10187035-Z
CAT5E, 35 ft, 24AWG, Shielded, Plenum	CABLE10187039-Z
CAT5E, 55 ft, 24AWG, Shielded, Plenum	CABLE10187040-Z
CAT5E, 100 ft, 24AWG, Shielded, Plenum	CABLE10187041-Z

Fiber-Optic Cables Work Sheet

Figure 45. Fiber Optic Duplex Connectors

LC connectors are the industry standard for all 2 Gbps Fibre Channel devices.

Note: The SL8500 drive tray requires LC plugs for connection on the rear panel.



SC connectors are the standard for 1 Gbps Fibre Channel devices such as the T9840A tape drive.

Important:
When re-using T9840A tape drives, you will need to use an SC to LC adapter (PN 312105301). The drive tray only supports LC connectors.

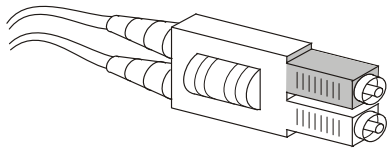


Table 73 lists the fiber-optic cables with LC connectors.

Table 73. Two Gigabit Fiber-Optic Cables

Select	Order Number	Description	Quantity
LC to **LC, 50/125 Micron**			
❑	CABLE10800340-Z	3 m (9.8 ft) Duplex, Riser	
❑	CABLE10800341-Z	5 m (16.4 ft) Duplex, Riser	
❑	CABLE10800310-Z	10 m (32.8 ft) Duplex, Riser	
❑	CABLE10800311-Z	50 m (164 ft) Duplex, Riser	
❑	CABLE10800312-Z	100 m (328 ft) Duplex, Riser	
❑	CABLE10800313-Z	10 m (32.8 ft) Duplex, Plenum	
❑	CABLE10800314-Z	50 m (164 ft) Duplex, Plenum	
❑	CABLE10800315-Z	100 m (328 ft) Duplex, Plenum	
LC to **LC, 9/125 Micron**			
❑	CABLE10800302-Z	3 m (9.8 ft) Duplex, Riser	
❑	CABLE10800331-Z	10 m (32.8 ft) Duplex, Riser	
❑	CABLE10800333-Z	50 m (164 ft) Duplex, Riser	
❑	CABLE10800306-Z	100 m (328 ft) Duplex, Riser	
❑	CABLE10800330-Z	10 m (32.8 ft) Duplex, Plenum	
❑	CABLE10800332-Z	50 m (164 ft) Duplex, Plenum	
❑	CABLE10800305-Z	100 m (328 ft) Duplex, Plenum	
Note:	When using cables with SC connectors, you will need to use an SC to LC adapter (part number 315447901). The SL8500 drive tray only supports LC connectors.		

ESCON Cables Work Sheet

ESCON cables, depending on the platform or network components, can have different types of connectors. Figure 46 shows examples of two styles of ESCON connectors.

Figure 46. ESCON Cable Connectors

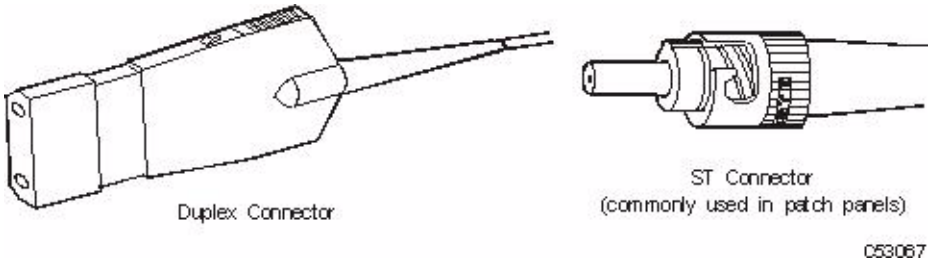


Table 74. ESCON Cable Part Numbers

Select	Order Number	Description	Quantity
❑	CABLE10800289-Z	13 m (4 ft) Riser	
❑	CABLE10800290-Z	31 m (100 ft) Riser	
❑	CABLE10800291-Z	61 m (200 ft) Riser	
❑	CABLE10800292-Z	107 m (350 ft) Riser	
❑	CABLE10800285-Z	13 m (4 ft) Plenum	
❑	CABLE10800286-Z	31 m (100 ft) Plenum	
❑	CABLE10800287-Z	61 m (200 ft) Plenum	
❑	CABLE10800288-Z	107 m (350 ft) Plenum	

Special Parts

Table 75. Special Parts Order Numbers

Description	Order Number	StorageTek PN
PEN/STYLUS COMBO	XSL-STYLUS-Z	11000998
PEN/STYLUS HOLDER	XSL-STYLUS-HOLD-Z	11000999
MAGAZINE ASSEMBLY, CAP	XSL8500-CAP-MAGZ	313927402
LOAD PLATE XSL8500-LOADPLATE	XSL8500-LOADPLATE	313994503
DLT, 8 CART DIAG KIT, VOLSER 000-007	XDLT-DIAG-KIT	314821901
LTO, 8 CART DIAG KIT, VOLSER 000-007	XLTO-DIAG-KIT	314822001
9840, 8 CART DIAG KIT, VOLSER 000-007	X9840-DIAG-KIT	314822101
9940, 8 CART DIAG KIT, VOLSER 000-007	X9940-DIAG-KIT	314822201
LTO2, 8 CART DIAG KIT, VOLSER 000-019	XLTO2-DIAG-KIT	314831101
RACK COMPONENT HARDWARE KIT	XSL8500-RACK-HW-Z	419649201
COLUMN LABEL SET ASSEMBLY,SL8500	XSL8500-COL-LABEL	314869801
LTO3, 8 CART DIAG KIT, VOLSER 000-027	XLTO3-DIAG-KIT	314872301
SDLT, 8 CART DIAG KIT, VOLSER 000-027	XSDLT-DIAG-KIT	314872401
T10000, 8 CART DIAG KIT, VOLSER 000-019	XT10000-DIAG-KIT	314876501

Order Number Listing

Table 76 provides a list of order numbers for the SL8500.

Table 76. Order Number Listing

Order Number	Description
SL8500-ENTRYSYS-N	SL8500 Entry Bundle, with 1,000 activated slots
SL8500-BASESYS-Z-N	SL8500 Base Library, with 1,448 activated slots
SL8500-BASEASY-Z-N	BASE Module Assembly
SL8500-BASEARRAY-Z-N	BASE Machine Array
SL8500-ZFRAME-Z-N	Z Frame Assembly
SL8500-CIM-Z-N	CIM assembly
SL8500-CVR-Z-N	Cover group
XSL8500-EXP-FR-N	Expansion frame
XSL8500-0EF-RAIL-N	Rails for 0 Expansion Frame
XSL8500-1EF-RAIL-N	Rails for 1 Expansion Frame
XSL8500-2EF-RAIL-N	Rails for 2 Expansion Frame
XSL8500-3EF-RAIL-N	Rails for 3 Expansion Frames
XSL8500-4EF-RAIL-N	Rails for 4 Expansion Frames
XSL8500-5EF-RAIL-N	Rails for 5 Expansion Frames
XSL8500-1PH-Z-N	N+1 Single Phase Power
XSL8500-AC-ASSY-N	N+1 ASSY,AC
XSL8500-DELTAZ-N	N+1 Delta Power
XSL8500-WYE-Z-N	N+1 Wye Power
XSL8500-DR-PWR-Z-N	One Drive Power Supply
XSL8500-RB-PWR-Z-N	One Robot Power Supply
XSL8500-RACK-Z-N	6RU Rack
XSL8500-RACK-HW-Z-N	Rack Component HW Kit
XSL8500-4BOT-Z-N	4 HandBots
XSL8500-SVDR-Z-N	Service Safety Door
XSL8500-TSOP-Z-N	Touchscreen Op Panel
XSL8500-WEBCAM-Z-N	WebCams
X-SL8501P-PTP-N	PTP with mechanisms
X-SL8500P-BLANK-Z	PTP without mechanisms
XSL8500P-MECH-Z-N	PTP mechanisms for upgrade
XSL8500-REDELECT-Z	Redundant Electronics Kit
XSL8501P-HUB-Z-N	Hub and ILC kit for PTP
XSL8500-UPG-CAP-N	39 Cartridge CAP

Table 76. Order Number Listing

Order Number	Description
XSL8500-UPG-HBZ-N	Add a second HBZ for 2nd CAP
XSL8500-DTCPIP-N	Dual TCPIP Host Interface
XSL8500-UPG-PART-N	Partitioning
XSL8500-MAG13-Z-N	SL8500 Magazine Assy for CAP
XSL8500-ETHRNT-Z	PUE Ethernet card/switch (PN: 419951602)
XSL8500-UPG-1250-N	Slot upgrade, 1000 to 1250
XSL8500-UPG-1448-N	Slot upgrade, 1250 to 1448
XSL8500-UPG-1750-N	Slot upgrade, 1448 to 1750
XSL8500-UPG-2000-N	Slot upgrade, 1750 to 2000
XSL8500-UPG-2250-N	Slot upgrade, 2000 to 2250
XSL8500-UPG-2500-N	Slot upgrade, 2250 to 2500
XSL8500-UPG-3000-N	Slot upgrade, 2500 to 3000
XSL8500-UPG-3500-N	Slot upgrade, 3000 to 3500
XSL8500-UPG-4000-N	Slot upgrade, 3500 to 4000
XSL8500-UPG-4500-N	Slot upgrade, 4000 to 4500
XSL8500-UPG-5000-N	Slot upgrade, 4500 to 5000
XSL8500-UPG-5500-N	Slot upgrade, 5000 to 5500
XSL8500-UPG-6000-N	Slot upgrade, 5500 to 6000
XSL8500-UPG-6500-N	Slot upgrade, 6000 to 6500
XSL8500-UPG-7000-N	Slot upgrade, 6500 to 7000
XSL8500-UPG-7500-N	Slot upgrade, 7000 to 7500
XSL8500-UPG-8000-N	Slot upgrade, 7500 to 8000
XSL8500-UPG-8500-N	Slot upgrade, 8000 to 8500
XSL8500-UPG-9000-N	Slot upgrade, 8500 to 9000
XSL8500-UPG-9500-N	Slot upgrade, 9000 to 9500
XSL8500-UPG-10000-N	Slot upgrade, 9500 to 10000

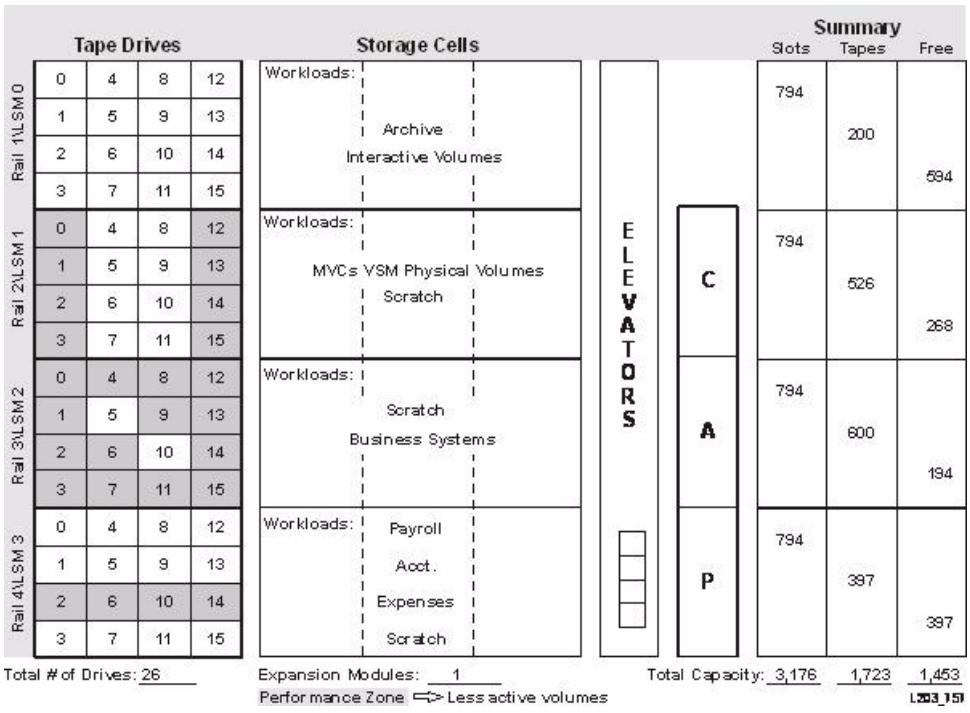
Content Management

A

The *most important* aspect of an SL8500 is the need to plan and *evaluate* the content with respect to the physical structure and capacities of an SL8500.

Figure 47 shows an example of how a content management philosophy might look using the information in this chapter.

Figure 47. Content Management Example



Capacity Per LSM / rail

Base 362

With:

One expansion 794

Two expansions 1,226

Three expansions 1,658

Four expansions 2090

Five expansions 2522

Total Library Capacity

Base 1,448

With:

One expansion 3,178

Two expansions 4,904

Three expansions 6,632

Four expansions 8,360

Five expansions 10,088

This chapter provides recommendations when evaluating workloads, including:

- Dedicate rails—separate workloads to specific rails (as in Figure 47)
- Manage cartridges—move inactive cartridges to archival LSMs or eject them
- Group tape drives—logically install drives by type, function, and quantity
- Minimize elevator and pass-thru port activity

Using these recommendations will help to optimize and enhance performance.

Notes:

- In the following topics, LSMs and rails are considered the same thing.
- Refer to the *SL8500 Best Practices Guide* for more information.

Dedicating Rails

The SL8500 is not just another library. The SL8500 architecture is *four separate library storage modules* that work together in parallel (LSM / rail). This architecture offers extremely flexible and scalable configurations that can *simplify* automated tape applications.

Instead of distributing cartridges and tape drives evenly across all the rails...

Look at it from a business perspective and logically plan each individual LSM / rail to meet the customer's specific needs and business requirements. Allocate separate tape application workloads to specific library storage modules.

Recommendations include:

❑ **Separate rails**	• Ideally, try to confine each workload to a single LSM to reduce pass-thru activity—this improves performance. If this is not possible because the workload is too large, consider breaking the workload into smaller segments that do fit. • Allocate rails to each major application. *For example*: HSM and VSM both need tape drives and media. Plan separate rails for these types of applications.
❑ **Combine workloads**	If you are *not* able to easily separate the workload, consider: • Using rails that are adjacent to each other. This provides a shorter distance for the pass-thru operation. • Pass-thru's are either: - **Vertical:** using the elevator in the same library, or - **Horizontal:** using pass-thru ports (PTPs) to a different library
❑ **Populate the rails**	When populating the rails: Media types • Make sure the rails have compatible cartridges for the tape drives Scratch cartridge pools • Make sure the rails have enough *scratch cartridges* Adequate free cells • Make sure there are adequate free cells so cartridges can ***float*** upon dismount
❑ **Use of the *top* rail**	• Avoid using the top rail to support an application that requires a significant number of ejects and enters. To enter and eject cartridges from LSM 0 requires elevator pass-thru activity. • Consider using the top rail as an archival LSM—one that uses *less active* tapes; or • Use the top rail as an LSM with *very active* tapes that requires fast access–using T9840C tape drives, with few enters and ejects.
❑ **Enters and Ejects**	• Whenever possible, enter cartridges through the cartridge access ports (CAPs). • When planning the workloads, place applications that require significant enters and ejects on rails adjacent to CAP magazines.

Managing Cartridges

Managing cartridges—how cartridges are entered, ejected, handled, and treated—in the library can have an affect on performance. Some considerations include:

❑ **Use tape management applications (ExLM)**	Use a library management application such as ExLM with HSC to keep active volumes on the same LSMs as compatible drives and to migrate less active volumes.
❑ **Use the float option**	When *float* is on, ACSLS or HSC selects a new home cell for a cartridge that is in an LSM as close to the drive as possible on a dismount. This option automatically clusters cartridges by the drives for the workload. Make sure each LSM contains enough free cells to allow selection of a new home cell in that LSM.
❑ **Cluster cartridges**	Cluster cartridges by workload on separate rails with enough tape drives to support the maximum activity—peak usage—for the workloads
❑ **Entering cartridges**	Enter cartridges through the CAP. When *manually* placing cartridges in the library with the front access door open, *library operations cease* and the library management software—such as ACSLS or HSC—must perform a *full audit* to update the library database to match the actual contents of the library. When you enter cartridges through the CAP the library stays online, mounts can continue, and the library management software always tries to move the cartridge to an LSM adjacent to the CAP magazine—minimizing pass-thru activity.
❑ **Ejecting cartridges**	*Ordered* or *Unordered* Ejects? Specifying ordered ejects places the volume serial numbers (VOLSERs) in a specific sequence. This operation is significantly slower than unordered ejects which allows ACSLS or HSC to eject cartridges to a CAP magazine adjacent to that LSM—minimizing pass-thru activity.
❑ **Archiving cartridges**	When using HSC with ExLM, move the *least recently used* (LRU) cartridges farther out on the rail, away from the tape drives and slots in the Performance Zone. Consider using the *top rail* as an archival LSM if the tape does not require CAP activity—few enters and ejects.
❑ **Managing space**	• Move *inactive* cartridges out of the library or off of an LSM to ensure there is adequate space for *active* cartridges. • Plan for times of *peak activity*. • Free cell management: - If the same drive-type and media-type are on the same rail for specific applications, fewer free cells are required. - If a specific application requires several enters and ejects or pass-thru operations, more free cells are required.
❑ **Supplying scratch cartridges**	Make sure each rail has the correct amount and type of data cartridges *plus* enough scratch cartridges to support the workload.

Grouping Tape Drives

During the installation, having an understanding about how to logically group and install the tape drives in an SL8500 can minimize both elevator and PTP activity. Strategies to use when determining where to install the tape drives include:

❑ **Cluster tape drives**	Install tape drives that use the same media types on the same rails. *For example*: place T9840 drives on one rail and T9940 drives on a different rail with the media to match. *Potential issues:* Clustering tape drives and media on the same rail works well until: • The number of mounts exceeds the capacity of the HandBots. • There are too many “active” cartridges to fit on that rail • The number of concurrently mounted tapes exceeds the maximum number of tape drives. *Indicating:* There are too many active cartridges on that rail for the HandBots to mount (keep up with) or not enough tape drives. *Recommendations:* When resources for a specific workload exceeds the capacity of a rail, spread the cartridges and drives over two or more rails. Some suggestions might be to: • Add more tape drives (if possible). • Add expansion modules to increase cartridges for that rail • Use the TLC/FSM tool to model and re-evaluate the content. • Upgrade to an eight HandBot configuration.
❑ **Use the CAP**	Enter tape cartridges so compatible media is on the same rail with the tape drives. *For example*: enter cartridges using a CAP magazine adjacent to the desired rail (LSM) where compatible tape drives are located.
❑ **Try not to exceed limits**	Configure heavy tape applications so they do not exceed the performance limits of that LSM and/or library configuration. *For example*: limit peak HSM workloads by the number of concurrent recalls in that configuration.
❑ **Use the TLC/FSM tool**	**Important:** Use the SE tool Tape Library Configurator / Field Simulation Model (TLC/FSM) to determine the optimal drive configurations. When you supply a configuration and a workload (trace file of the mounts), TLC/FSM can output drive utilization statistics and suggestions.
❑ **Redundant HandBot configurations**	When configuring the SL8500 with eight HandBots (two per rail), install drives in the outer two columns first—this allows both HandBots to access drives at the same time.
❑ **Manage your tapes**	Use ExLM to help manage tape locations to provide quick access to tape drives.

Minimizing Elevator and PTP Activity

As pass-thru activity (elevator and pass-thru ports) increases, performance (exchanges per hour) decreases. Here are several things you can do to minimize or improve pass-thru activity.

❑ **Mounting cartridges**	Mount cartridges in tape drives that are on the same rail (LSM).
❑ **Use the float option**	• Take advantage of the `float` option to limit pass-thru activity. • Make sure volumes can *float* to locations in other LSMs—after a pass-thru—by maintaining some free cells within each LSM. • When dismounting cartridges, and *float* is on, ACSLS and HSC try to avoid an elevator pass-thru among LSMs by assigning a new home cell—if that cartridge's old home slot is in a different LSM. • When float is on ACSLS and HSC attempts to put the cartridge: - In the same LSM as the tape drive - To the closest LSM to the drive with free storage slots
❑ **Entering cartridges**	Enter cartridges into an LSM that has compatible tape drives for that media-type. **Note:** When entering tape cartridges, place them in the CAP magazine adjacent to the LSM where they will reside. *For example*: you only have T9840 drives on LSMs 2 and 3. You should enter 9840 cartridges in to the CAP slots adjacent to these LSMs.
❑ **Maintain scratch cartridge levels**	Make sure that scratch cartridges are available in sufficient quantity for each tape workload. For an SL8500, this means having scratch cartridges available on each rail (LSM) of the library.
❑ **Keep free cells**	Make sure there are adequate free cells in each LSM.
❑ **Plan pass-thru activity**	When planning workloads for a *library complex* where the workload requires more than one LSM, consider the following: **Elevators:** Use *adjacent* LSMs in the same library to limit the distance the cartridges must travel. Remember, there is a 50% chance with drive preferencing that the cartridge and drive are on the same rail between two LSMs. • Elevators have the capability of passing up to *four* tapes. • Currently, elevator pass-thru times are faster than the pass-thru ports. **PTPs:** If the library has high pass-thru activity using the elevator, consider using *adjoining* LSMs and the pass-thru ports. • PTPs have the capability of passing up to *two* tapes.
❑ **Use ExLM**	Use ExLM for mainframe operating systems to manage cartridges.

Cartridge Access Port Guidelines

Although operation of the cartridge access port does not directly affect the performance of the library, here are some guidelines that can help with its overall operation.

❑ Entering cartridges

- Whenever possible, enter cartridges through the CAP.
- When planning the workloads, place applications that require significant enters and ejects on rails adjacent to CAP magazines.
- Use the "TLSM" parameter on the HSC enter command to direct cartridges to specific LSMs. This will cause pass-thru activity.
- An alternative to using the "TLSM" parameter is to load only the magazines adjacent to the desired or specific LSM.
- Use the *watch_vols* utility for ACSLS.
- ***Tip:*** Place labels outside the CAP indicating which magazine and LSM gets what type of cartridge. *For example:*
  - LSM 1 uses T9840 tape drives, load that magazine with only 9840 tape cartridges
  - LSM 2 uses LTO tape drives, load that magazine with only LTO tape cartridges
  - LSM 3 uses cartridges for a specific application or job, load that magazine with the necessary cartridge types

  This will help operators identify what cartridges go to which LSM.

❑ Using the top rail

- Avoid using the top rail to support an application that requires a significant number of ejects and enters. To enter and eject cartridges from LSM 0 requires elevator pass-thru activity.
- Consider using the top rail as an archival LSM—one that uses *less active* tapes; or as an LSM with *very active* tapes that requires fast access, uses T9840C tape drives, with few enters and ejects.

❑ Inserting cartridges

Insert cartridges with the correct orientation:

- Flat in the slots (seated)
- Parallel to the floor
- Hub-side down
- Barcode label pointing out and below the readable characters.

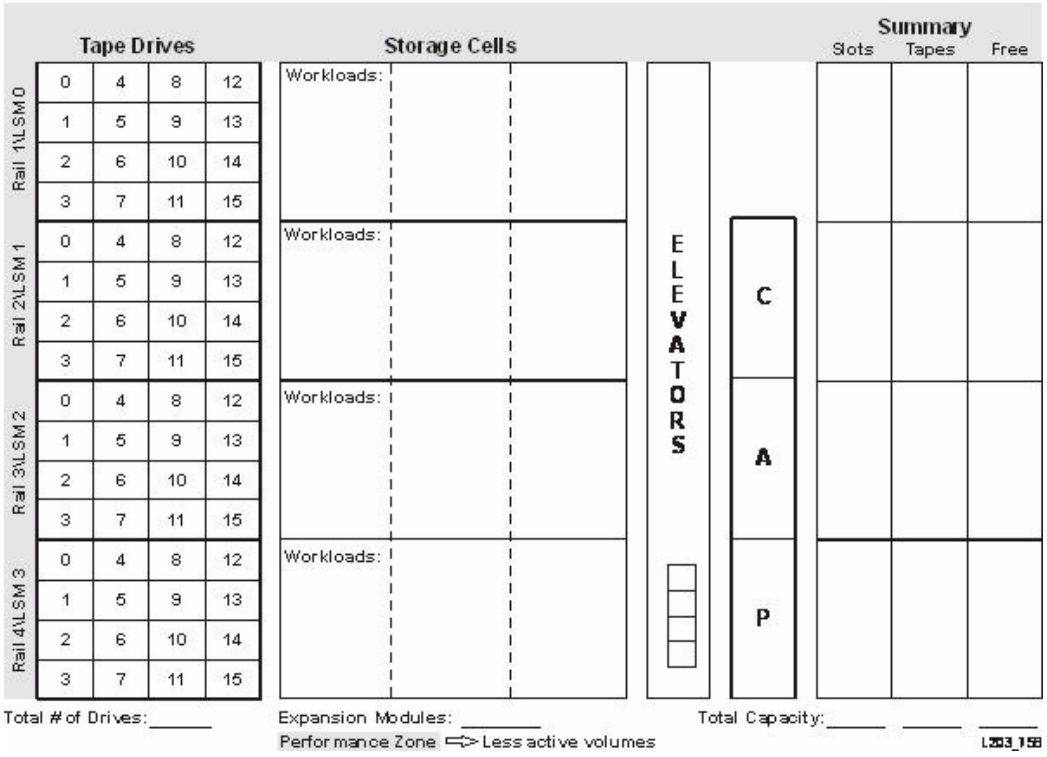
Note: You can skip magazine slots, but make sure all magazine arrays are in place.

Hub-side

Planning for Content

Figure 48 on page 141 provides space that you can use to help plan the content of an SL8500 library.

Figure 48. Content Management Work Sheets



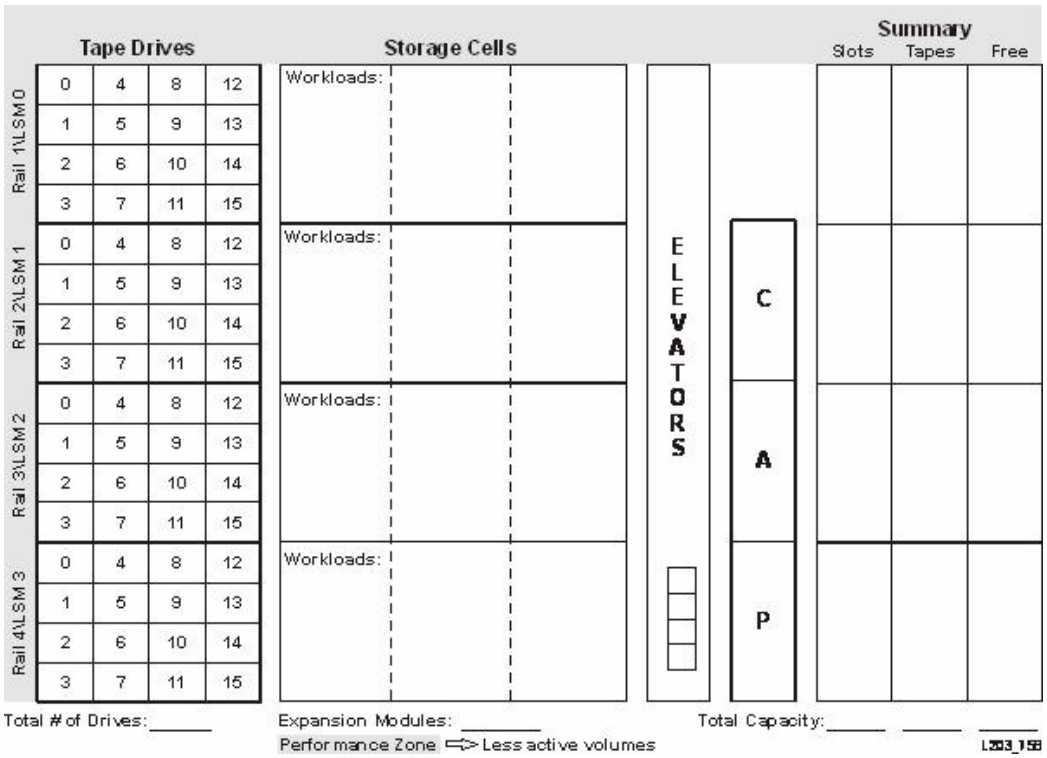
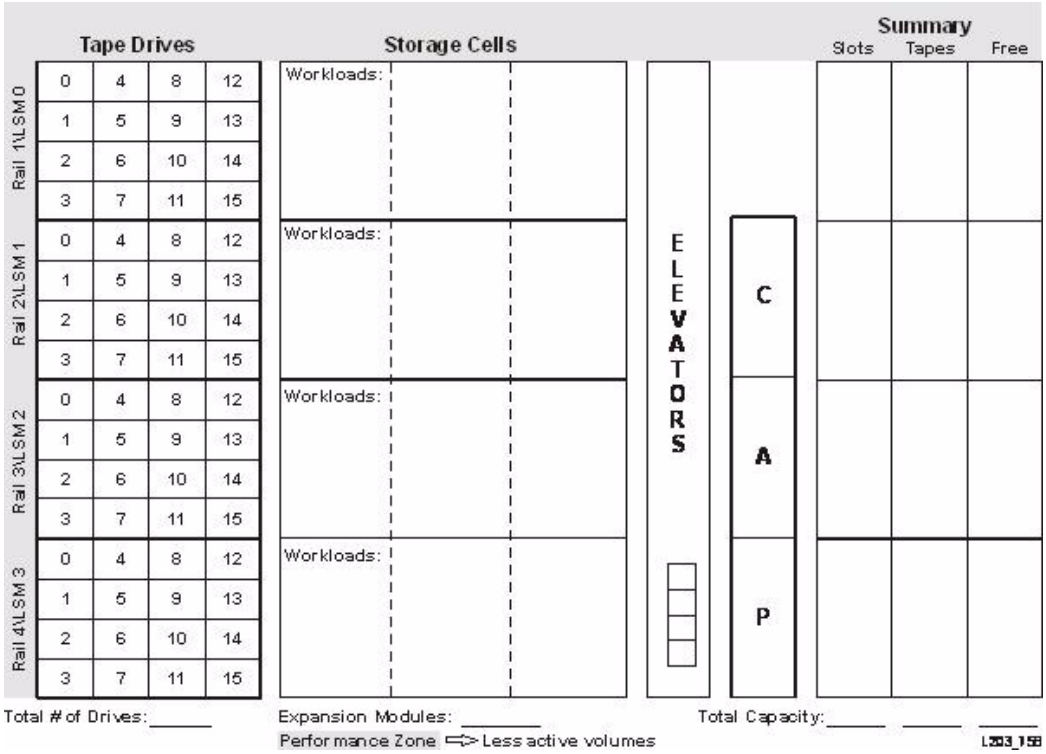
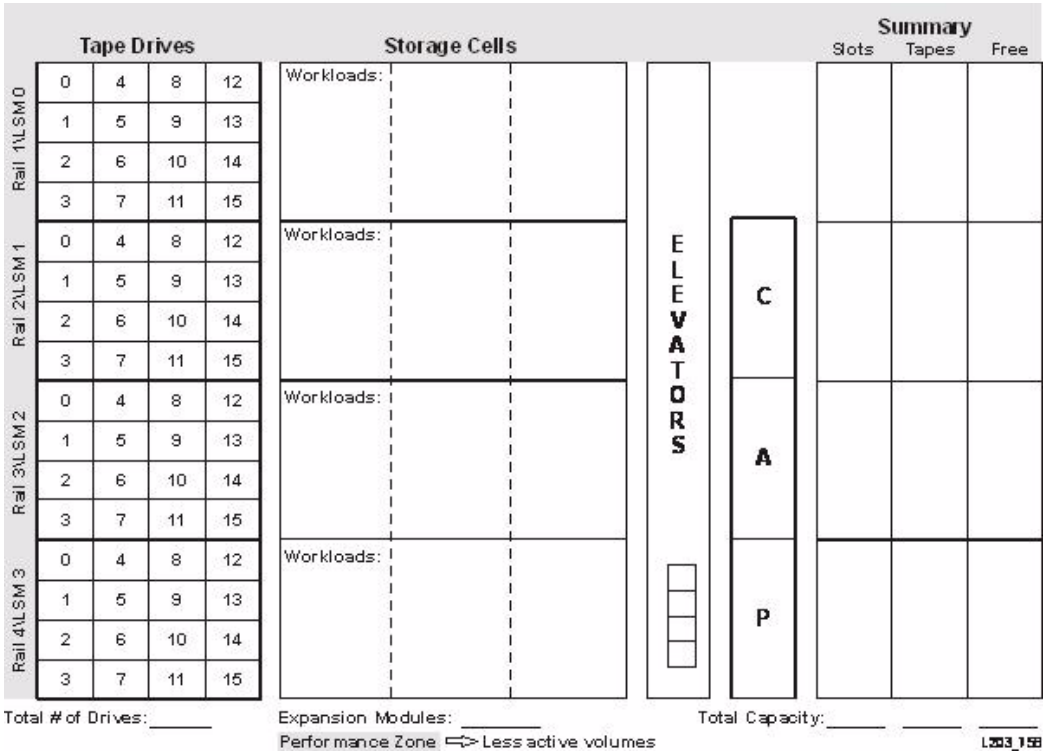


Figure 48. Content Management Work Sheets





Software

B

This appendix describes the differences and provides information about the library management software, shows some cell mapping examples, and lists the feature codes for ACSLS and HSC products.

From a Software Point of View

Most of the information in this system assurance guide has been about hardware, site planning, and features; so what about library management software?

Library management software for the SL8500 library includes:

- Host Software Component (HSC)
- Automated Cartridge System Library Software (ACSLS)
- VSM 2, 3, and 4
- Independent Software Vendors (ISVs)
- Plus future versions of these

From a software point of view, there are differences between the SL8500 library and other StorageTek automated cartridge subsystems, such as structural elements, addressing, drive numbers, pass-thru ports, and some operational differences.

Structural Elements

Library Storage Module (LSM)
The SL8500 library has four robotic rails that provide power and communications to the HandBots. Each of these rails is considered an LSM. Because of this, there are four LSMs within each SL8500 library.

Panels
Panel numbering differs from other libraries because it uses positive and negative numbers.

- Panel 0 is the cartridge access port (CAP).
- Panel 1 is the drive panel.
- All other panels start their numbering after the drive bay (Panel 1) forward. Panel 2 is right of the drives and -2 is left of the drives. These are the start of the data cartridges.

- Special panels include:
  - Corners are special because there are no inner wall corner panels
  - Pass-thru ports are special because the top six slots are inaccessible because of the PTPs.
  - Pass-thru port panels are also special because the top cartridge slot (under the port) is reserved as a redundant robotics drop-off slot; two for each rail, one on each side.

Addressing

Cartridge locations in previous libraries were listed by Panel, Row, and Column. The cartridge slot locations for an SL8500 use five parameters: Library, Rail, Column, Side, and Row.

Table 77. Slot Addressing

Parameter	Address	Description	Example	
			Software	Physical
Library	L,0,0,0,0	L = Number of the library in the complex (1 to 31)	1,0,0,0,0	1,0,0,0,0
Rail	L,R,0,0,0	R = Number of the rail in the library (LSM 1 to 4)	1,3,0,0,0	1,3,0,0,0
Column	L,R,C,0,0,	C = Column number (depending on modules in the library)	1,3,-10,0,0	1,3,-11,0,0
Side	L,R,C,S,0	S = Outer wall is 1; Inner wall is 2	1,3,-10,2,0	1,3,-11,2,0
Row	L,R,C,S,W	W = Row: Variable (1 to 14)	1,3,-10,2,5	1,3,-11,2,5

For more information about addressing, see

- “Library Walls, Arrays, and Slots” on page 4
- “Address Scheme” on page 4
- “Understanding the Address Scheme” on page 5

Tape Drives

All of the tape drives in the SL8500 library are physically located in the Drive and Electronics Module and are identified using the five parameters.

Table 78 shows the *internal*—**software**—mapping (*inside* the library),
Table 79 shows the *external*—**physical**—numbering (*outside* the library).

Table 78. Software Drive Numbering

LSM	Internal - Software Drives Numbers			
LSM 0	**Drive 0**	Drive 4	Drive 8	Drive 12
	Drive 1	Drive 5	Drive 9	Drive 13
	Drive 2	Drive 6	Drive 10	Drive 14
	Drive 3	Drive 7	Drive 11	Drive 15
LSM 1	Drive 0	Drive 4	Drive 8	Drive 12
	Drive 1	Drive 5	Drive 9	Drive 13
	Drive 2	Drive 6	Drive 10	Drive 14
	Drive 3	Drive 7	Drive 11	**Drive 15**
LSM 2	Drive 0	Drive 4	Drive 8	Drive 12
	Drive 1	Drive 5	Drive 9	Drive 13
	Drive 2	Drive 6	Drive 10	Drive 14
	Drive 3	Drive 7	Drive 11	Drive 15
LSM 3	Drive 0	Drive 4	Drive 8	Drive 12
	Drive 1	Drive 5	Drive 9	Drive 13
	Drive 2	Drive 6	Drive 10	Drive 14
	Drive 3	**Drive 7**	**Drive 11**	**Drive 15**

Table 79. Physical Drive Numbering

External - Physical Drive Numbers				DC PWR
				24
Drive 61	Drive 62	Drive 63	**Drive 64**	23
Drive 57	Drive 58	Drive5 9	Drive 60	22
Drive 53	Drive 54	Drive 55	Drive 56	21
Drive 49	Drive 50	Drive 51	Drive 52	20
				19
				18
Drive 45	Drive 46	Drive 47	Drive 48	17 (N+1)
Drive 41	Drive 42	Drive 43	Drive 44	16
Drive 37	Drive 38	Drive 39	Drive 40	15
Drive 33	Drive 34	Drive 35	Drive 36	14
				13
				12
Drive 29	Drive 30	Drive 31	Drive 32	11
Drive 25	Drive 26	Drive 27	Drive 28	10
Drive 21	Drive 22	Drive 23	Drive 24	9
Drive 17	Drive 18	Drive 19	**Drive 20**	8
				7
				6 (robot)
Drive 13	Drive 14	Drive 15	Drive 16	5 (robot)
Drive 9	Drive 10	Drive 11	Drive 12	4
Drive 5	Drive 6	Drive 7	Drive 8	3 (N+1)
Drive 1	**Drive 2**	**Drive 3**	**Drive 4**	2 (DRV)
				1 (DRV)

These tables show a matching of drives (the highlighted drives). *For example:*

- Internal/software LSM 0 Drive 0 matches with external/physical Drive 64.
- Internal LSM 1 Drive 15 matches with external/physical Drive 33.
- Internal LSM 2 Drive 3 matches with external physical Drive 20.

A default behavior of some tape management software (such as ACSLS) is to dismount the drive and leave the cartridge in the same LSM (rail). This depends on software features such as fixed volume location, float/no float, or extended store.

Important:
System administrators and the installers of the library need to be in agreement about the placement and location of the tape drives. Placement affects the configuration of the software and the performance of the library.

For example: If a cartridge is in LSM 3 (the bottom rail) and a mount is requested on a drive in a different LSM, the HandBot gets the cartridge, places it in the elevator (a pass-thru operation), another HandBot retrieves the cartridge, and mounts it in the tape drive.

On dismount, if the software is configured for fixed volume location, the HandBot removes the cartridge from the drive, places it in the elevator (a pass-thru operation), the HandBot in LSM 3 retrieves the cartridge, and puts in back in its original slot.

Cartridge Access Ports

The two CAPs service all the LSMs in the library.

- When a CAP is in use by one LSM, all 39 Slots are reserved for that LSM, and no other LSMs can access it.
- The CAPs cover the size of three LSMs (1,2, and 3); three magazines with 13-Slots each. There is no adjacent section in the CAP for the top LSM (0), which requires a pass-thru operation with the elevator.
- **CAP A** is:
  - Standard CAP (comes with the library)
  - Located on the left, with controls on the left side of the keypad
  - Software address 0 or (ACS, 1, 0)
- **CAP B** is:
  - Optional CAP (must be ordered)
  - Located on the right, with controls on the right side of the keypad
  - Software address 1 or (ACS, 1, 1)
- For addressing purposes, the CAP needs a location (ACS,LSM,CAP#). The LSM of choice is LSM 1, so the CAP addresses are: (ACS, 1, 0) for CAP A and (ACS, 1, 1) for CAP B.
- When loading cartridges in the CAP, slots can be skipped or magazines can be missing.
- If a HandBot is inoperative, that portion of the CAP is inaccessible.

Elevators

Elevators are considered pass-thru ports. Each elevator has three pass-thru operations per rail. Each rail can pass-thru to the other three rails.

Operational Differences

LSM Prefencing:
Is basically the same as with other libraries and tries to minimize pass-thru operations (elevator, turntable, and pass-thru ports).

- Mount scratch tapes — Selects cartridges based on the LSM (rail)
- Query mount — Orders drives by LSM (rail) proximity
- Query mount scratch — Orders drives by LSM (rail) proximity
- Enter — Enters cartridge from the CAP to the closest LSM with free Slots

Limits:

- For HSC, the maximum number of libraries is 32 (or 128 LSMs, [0-127]).
- For ACSLS, the maximum number is 31 (or 127 LSMs, [0-126]).
- The maximum number of panels in a library is 60.

Mount and **Dismount Commands:**
You or CSC can still specify a cartridge by VOLID or VOLSER and specific drive location. If a cartridge move using a pass-thru operation (elevator) the default behavior is for that cartridge to remain in the drive's LSM.

Enter (Import) and **Eject** (Export) **Commands:**
Library management software normally tries to **Enter/Import** a cartridge to an LSM (rail) adjacent to the CAP.

Currently with HSC, if there are open slots in the top LSM (00), an **Enter** command attempts to place the cartridge in that LSM (00), then work its way down. For example: If a cartridge is entered in the second magazine of a CAP, and there are open slots in LSM 0, the library performs a pass-thru operation with the elevator from the CAP to LSM 0.

For an **Eject/Export** command, the software ejects the cartridge to the CAP magazine adjacent to the LSM. For an **Eject/Export** command from LSM 0, the library performs a pass-thru operation to an open slot in the top magazine of the CAP.

Host Software Component

The StorageTek Host Software Component (HSC) is one type of management software that can control the SL8500 library. This software resides in the host but is transparent to the operating system.

HSC receives requests from the programmatic interface and translates them into commands that are carried by the control path to the LSM.

The Storage Management Component (SMC) also resides on the MVS host along with HSC and communicates to:

- Influence tape allocation to ensure the correct tape drives are selected
- Intercept mount/dismount and swap messages and translate them to perform tape hardware functions.

Important:

- **HSC 5.0** and **5.1** *are not supported with the SL8500 library.*
- **HSC 6.0** with new PTFs is required to support the SL8500 library.
- **HSC 6.1** contains additional support for the SL8500, such as Near Continuous Operation (NCO) that allows the addition and deletion of panels, drives, and LSMs for Capacity on Demand without needing to reconfigure or restart HSC.
- **Large Capacity Library Support**

  HSC 6.0 and 6.1 currently support 43 panels. The following PTFs are needed to allow support for up to 67 panels:

Support	HSC 6.0.0	HSC 6.1.0
HSC	SOS6000 - L1H122N	SOS6100 - L1H121Z
	SMS6000 - L1H122M	SMS6100 - L1H121Y
HSC with ExLM needs these additional PTFs	SOS6000 - L1H12VM	SOS6100 - L1H12VO
	SMS6000 - L1H12VN	SMS6100 - L1H12VP
HSC and the Move utility	SOS6000 - L1H12WR	SOS6100 - L1H12WT

- **HSC 6.2** contains additional support for the SL8500 Redundant Electronics feature.

Redundant Electronics	MVS	VM
Support	6.2 – L1H15O1	6.2 – L1H15O2
Compat 23	6.2 PTFs: L1H15ME	6.2 PTFs: L1H15MF
Toleration	6.2 PTFs – L1H15HA	6.2 PTFs – L1H15H9

Enterprise Library Software

Enterprise Library Software (ELS) is the successor to NCS and VTCS and consolidates HSC, VTCS, ExPR, ExLM, and ExHPDM. To support the Redundant Electronics feature, it will require:

- Version 7.0 – L1H15O3 (Support)
- Version 7.0: L1H15MH (Compat 23)
- Version 7.0 – L1H15HB (Toleration)

Automated Cartridge System Library Software

The StorageTek Automated Cartridge System Library Software (ACSLS) is another type of management software that can control the SL8500 library.

This software is a UNIX-based application for mainframe, AS/400, UNIX, Windows, and Linux platforms.

ACSLS functions as the standard in automated library management software for Open Systems environments and efficiently shares library resources with just about any application on almost any platform.

Important:
ACSLS 7.1 or higher is required for support (with PTF-809236).
A TCP/IP connection is needed to connect the server to the library.
There are no required configuration changes for ACSLS to function.

To allow for *dynamic* slot upgrades (Capacity on Demand), you can purchase and install the expansion modules, then upgrade as needed to the maximum number of slots for the number of expansion frames installed.

Table 80. ACSLS Requirements

Specifications	ACSLS	ACSLS High Availability
Minimum hardware requirements	• 256 MB RAM • 4 GB of disk space • CD-ROM for product installation • Offline database backup capability (recommended)	• 44SF-28R Sunfire V240 server or 44SB-02K • SunBlade 1500 Workstation • 44SE-D2A Sun StorEdge D2 disk array • SNFCS40 Brocade SilkWorm switch (optional)
Minimum software requirements	• ACSLS 7.1	• ACSLS 7.1 (or) • ACSLS 7.3 • ACSLS HA Agent • VERITAS Foundation Suite HA
Connections	TCP/IP (SCSI *not* supported)	TCP/IP (SCSI *not* supported)
Supported operating systems	Sun Solaris 8.0 or 9.0	Sun Solaris 8.0 or 9.0, AIX 4.3.3 and 5.1 and Linux Red Hat 8.0

Presently ACSLS has performance recommendations for utilizing and minimizing pass-thru activities:

- Minimizing pass-thru activity between LSMs
- Floating cartridges during a dismount
- Entering cartridges into a library
- Ejecting cartridges from a library
- Maintaining empty storage cells in a library
- Minimizing pass-thru activity with ACSAPI requests
- Using ACSAPI requests and ACSLS commands

This information is documented in detail in Appendix C “Improving Library Performance,” in the *ACSLS Installation and Configuration Guide*.

ACSLS Differences with a SL8500

There are several differences about how ACSLS operates with the SL8500 library, these include:

- ACSLS considers each SL8500 rail as a separate LSM.
- ACSLS LSMs are numbered from 0 to 3.
- SL8500 CAPs span three rails (2-4). For ACSLS, this is LSMs 1-3.

Upgrading ACSLS

You can upgrade directly to ACSLS 7.1 from earlier versions of ACSLS, including: 6.1.1 – 6.1 – 6.0.1 – 6.0 – 5.4 – and 5.3.2.

Refer the *ACSLS Installation, Configuration, and Administration Guide* for upgrade installation procedures and Appendix C “Improving Library Performance.”

AS/400 Configuration Requirements

Requirements for AS/400 to function as another type of management software to control the SL8500 library include:

- **RMLS/CSC must be at 1.3.0**
  RMLS/CSC is the client component of ACSLS that runs on the AS/400. It performs the mounts, dismounts, enters, and ejects on the AS/400. This product integrates into the tape management systems for the AS/400. The tape management systems that RMLS/CSC integrates with are: IBM/BRMS, HelpSystems/RobotSave, and LXI/MMS.
- **OS/400 must be at V5R2**
  OS/400 is the operating system that runs on an AS/400 and the iSeries platform. (iSeries is interchangeable with AS/400).
- ACSLS only supports TCP/IP communications to RMLS/CSC.
- SNA (Systems Network Architecture) is not supported.

VSM

There are no required configuration changes for VSM / VTCS to run with the SL8500 library.

Independent Software Vendors

What independent software vendors (ISVs) will be tested and supported?

Table 81. Supported Independent Software Vendors

ISV	Platform Supported
CA BrightStor, Enterprise Backup	Windows, Solaris , AIX, HP-UX
CA BrightStor ARCserve	Windows, Solaris
Legato NetWorker	Windows, SUN, AIX, HP-UX
Tivoli Storage Manager	Windows, AIX
VERITAS NetBackup	Windows, Solaris, AIX, HP-UX

Tier 1 and 2 Partners

Table 82 lists partners into Tier 1 and Tier 2 groups.

Table 82. Tier 1 and Tier 2 Partners

Tier 1	Tier 2
VERITAS NetBackup	CommVault Galaxy
VERITAS Backup Exec	ADIC AMASS/StorNext
Legato NetWorker	BackBone NetVault
Tivoli Storage Manager	Atempo Time Navigator
HP DataProtector	ASM (Windows/Sun)
CA BrightStor, Enterprise Backup	Syncsort Backup Express
CA BrightStor ARCserve (No ACSLS Support)	

■ Software Feature Codes

StorageTek continues to expand the capabilities of its industry leading library management software with releases of ACSLS and HSC.

ACSLS Feature Codes

The model number for ACSLS is: **ACSLS 02**
This is the model number which includes ACSLS software with the following feature codes:

Table 83. ACSLS Feature Code Work Sheet

Required?	Action	Select	Feature	Description
Yes	Select the a **Model**	■	0000	ACSLS Base Model
Yes	You *must* select a **Platform**	❑	0AIX	ACSLS Software AIX Version
		❑	0LNX	ACSLS Software LINUX Version
		❑	0SLR	ACSLS Software SOLARIS Version
Yes	Select the **Level** of ACSLS:	❑	L700	ACSLS Level 7.1 or higher
No	Select **Options**	❑	HA01	High Availability SOLARIS Version
		❑	VSHB	VERITAS High Availability Suite
		❑	OEMS	OEM Software
Yes	You *must* select one item from the **Slot** features based on number of slots required. Make sure to match or exceed the feature code with the number of slots in the SL8500 library	❑	Q001	Up to 100 Slots
		❑	Q002	Up to 200 Slots
		❑	Q003	Up to 300 Slots
		❑	Q004	Up to 400 Slots
		❑	Q005	Up to 500 Slots
		❑	Q006	Up to 600 Slots
		❑	Q007	Up to 700 Slots
		❑	Q008	Up to 800 Slots
		❑	Q009	Up to 900 Slots
		❑	Q010	Up to 1,000 Slots
		❑	Q011	Up to 1,100 Slots
		❑	Q012	Up to 1,200 Slots
		❑	Q013	Up to 1,300 Slots
		❑	Q014	Up to 1,400 Slots
		❑	Q015	Up to 1,500 Slots **Base Module**
		❑	Q020	Up to 2,000 Slots
		❑	Q025	Up to 2,500 Slots **First Expansion**

(continued on next page)

Table 83. ACSLS Feature Code Work Sheet (Continued)

Required?	Action	Select	Feature	Description
Yes	Select the number of **Slots** (continued).	❑	Q030	Up to 3,000 Slots
		❑	Q035	Up to 3,500 Slots
		❑	Q040	Up to 4,000 Slots
		❑	Q045	Up to 4,500 Slots **Second Expansion**
		❑	Q050	Up to 5,000 Slots
		❑	Q055	Up to 5,500 Slots
		❑	Q060	Up to 6,000 Slots **Third Expansion**
		❑	Q070	Up to 7,000 Slots
		❑	Q080	Up to 8,000 Slots **Fourth Expansion**
		❑	Q090	Up to 9,000 Slots
		❑	Q100	Up to 10,000 Slots **Fifth Expansion**
		❑	Q110	Up to 11,000 Slots
		❑	Q165	Up to 16,500 Slots
		❑	Q220	Up to 22,000 Slots
		❑	Q275	Up to 27,500 Slots
		❑	Q500	Up to 50,000 Slots
		❑	Q750	Up to 75,000 Slots
		❑	Q751	Up to 99,998 Slots
		❑	Q999	99999+ Slots

HSC Feature Codes

Table 84. HSC Feature Codes

Description	Code
MVS HSC	1190M30
DSLO License	2902
38,000 Cartridges	2923
Level 6.0	L600

Tape Drives

C

The SL8500 library supports a wide variety of tape drives with fiber-optic based interfaces, including: Fibre Channel, FICON, and ESCON.

This appendix provides information about these tape drives.

Table 85. Supported Tape Drives and Microcode Levels

Vendor	Drive Type	Firmware*	Latest Level
StorageTek	T9840A	1.34.158	1.44.110
	T9840B	1.34.358	1.44.310
	T9840C	1.34.558	1.44.509
	T9840D	1.42.707	1.44.710
	T9940B	1.34.408	1.44.410
	T10000A	1.37.114	1.44.110
	T10000B	1.38.208	1.44.210
HP	LTO2	K3A1	K710
	LTO3	L25S	L6HS 2 Gb FC M6BS 4 Gb FC
	LTO4	H44S	H58S 4 Gb FC
	LTO5	To Be Supplied (new drives)	
IBM	LTO2	66K2	73V1
	LTO3	73P5	93G0
	LTO4	91VF	94D7
	LTO5	To Be Supplied (new drives)	
Quantum	SDLT600	V40	V53
	DLT-S4	V.41	V.42
Note: *This is the *minimum* recommended tape drive firmware level.			

T9840 Tape Drives

Description	The T9840—models A, B, and C—are **access-centric** tape drives that have an average access time of just 12 seconds. These tape drives are ideal for applications that demand high data throughput and fast recall.
Read/Write Technology	The T9840C and D uses a variable rate randomizer, with partial response, maximum likelihood circuitry and LZ1 as the data recording method. A 16-channel head reduces the required number of tape passes to record data to tape and also extends media life (few passes).
Media	These drives obtain their high-performance by using a unique *dual-hub* cartridge design with midpoint load technology. This design enables fast access and reduces latency by positioning the read/write head in the middle of the tape. With the 9840 unique dual-hub design, the entire tape path is contained within the cartridge, which reduces contamination and enables the drives fast access.
Operating Systems	Versions of both enterprise and open system platforms, such as: Windows: NT, 2000; UNIX: Solaris, HP-UX, AIX; Linux; MVS, VM, and OS/390

T9940 Tape Drives

Description	StorageTek's T9940B tape drive is a **capacity-centric** tape drive that offers exceptional storage capacity. This tape drive is ideal for applications that demand high throughput and capacity.
Read/Write Technology	The T9940B use a variable rate randomizer, with partial response, maximum likelihood circuitry and LZ1—an Adaptive Lossless Data Compression technique—as the data recording method. A 16-channel head reduces the required number of tape passes to record data to tape and also extends media life (few passes).
Media	The tape cartridge for this drive uses a single-reel hub design—the supply reel is inside the cartridge and the take-up reel is inside the tape drive.
Operating Systems	Versions of both enterprise and open system platforms, such as: Windows: NT, 2000; UNIX: Solaris, HP-UX, AIX; Linux; MVS, VM, and OS/390

T10000 Tape Drives

Description

The T10000 tape drive is a small, modular, high-performance, **capacity-centric** tape drive that is capable of storing up 500 GB of uncompressed data on a single cartridge while supporting a throughput rate of 120 MB/s.

Read/Write Technology

The T10000 uses partial response, maximum likelihood (PRML) complemented by dual magneto-resistive (MR) head technologies that provide *32* channels that write data to the tape and read it back. This dual-head technology:

- Provides the high-density data format
- Increases data integrity
- Promotes longer media life
- Achieves significantly high transfer rates

Media

The new tape cartridge for this drive uses a single-reel hub design—the supply reel is inside the cartridge and the take-up reel is inside the tape drive.

Connectivity

The interface connections to the T10000 are strictly fiber-optic—either Fibre Channel or FICON (*future offering*)—to support the high rate of data transfers.

Operating Systems

The T10000 supports a variety of operating system platforms:

- Enterprise mainframes (such as z/OS and OS/390) and
- Open system platforms (such as Windows, UNIX, and Linux).

HP LTO Specifications

Description

Hewlett-Packard LTO tape drives are a small, modular, **capacity-centric** drive. These drives conform to the LTO open standard where drive technology is based on an open standard that provides media compatibility across all brands and manufacturers of LTO Ultrium products.

Read/Write Technology

LTO drives record data using write-equalized run length limited (RLL) code. LTO2 uses an LZ1-based compression scheme while LTO3 uses PRML and a derivative of the Advanced Lossless Data Compression (ALDC-2) technique.

Data is written in a linear format with a serpentine pattern—the tape reverses direction after each set of tracks is written to the end of tape (EOT).

Media

The tape cartridge for LTO Ultrium drives is a single-reel hub design—the supply reel is inside the cartridge and the take-up reel is inside the tape drive. The drives require different media and must be labeled as such:

Note: HP drives support the LTO standard for backward compatibility, which is to write back one generation and read back two generations.

Operating Systems

The target customers for HP LTO drives are mid-range tape automation environments with Windows NT/2000, Netware, Linux, and UNIX (HP-UX).

IBM LTO Specifications

Description	IBM TotalStorage 3580 LTO tape drives are small, modular, **capacity-centric** drives and conform to the LTO open standard for compatibility.
Read/Write Technology	IBM drives use a magneto resistive (MR) head design to help minimize debris and wear. Data is written in a linear format with a serpentine pattern—the tape reverses direction after each set of tracks is written to the end of tape (EOT). LTO2 use a LZ1-based data compression scheme while LTO3 uses a derivative of the Advanced Lossless Data Compression (ALDC-2) technique.
Media	The tape cartridge for LTO Ultrium drives is a single-reel hub design—the supply reel is inside the cartridge and the take-up reel is inside the tape drive. The drives require different media and must be labeled as such: **Note:** IBM drives support the LTO standard for backward compatibility, which is to write back one generation and read back two generations.
Operating Systems	Operating system support is available for: IBM AIX, OS/400 and i5/OS, Microsoft Windows 2000 Server 2003, Sun Solaris 8 and 9; HP-UX 11.0 and 11, and Red Hat Enterprise Linux 3; SUSE LINUX Enterprise Server 8.

Super DLT600

Description	The Super DLT (SDLT) is the next generation of follow-on products to the popular DLT family—once a standard for mid-range UNIX and Windows environments. The SDLT is a modular design, **capacity-centric** tape drive that supports multiple product generations and consists of both a new drive and a new tape cartridge.
Read/Write Technology	The Super DLT product family incorporates an advanced tape recording technology called Laser Guided Magnetic Recording (LGMR). This technology combines optical and magnetic technologies for higher capacities—data is written on the magnetic side of the tape; servo positioning occurs optically on the other side of the tape. Magnetoresistive Cluster (MRC) heads provide a densely packed array of read/write heads that are precisely positioned using thin-film processing. Partial Response Maximum Likelihood (PRML) technology provides the high-performance required for linear tape products.
Media	The tape cartridge for SDLT drives is a single-reel hub design—the supply reel is inside the cartridge and the take-up reel is inside the tape drive. Two types of tape cartridges exist: SDLTtape I and SDLTtape II. Read only compatibility with SDLT I and read and write compatibility with SDLT II.
Connectivity	2 Gb Fibre Channel (FC)
Operating Systems	Support includes: Windows NT/2000/2003 Server, Novell NetWare, Unix, and Linux,

Dynamic World Wide Name

Each connection (port) in a Fibre Channel environment must have a unique ID called the World Wide Name (WWN). The WWN is a 64-bit address that identifies each individual device, company, with vendor information.

When a device logs-in to a Fibre Channel network, the WWN is validated for access by comparing Port Name, Node Name, and Port ID. All three of these identifiers must match or this indicates the configuration has changed and the port is blocked from access.

StorageTek uses the IEEE registered format for Name Address Authority (NAA), company ID, and vendor specific identifier for a total of 64 bits for login validation.

StorageTek's company ID is 24 bits consisting of: 500104F (hex)

The SL8500 includes the dynamic World Wide Name (dWWN) feature, that, when enabled, assigns world wide names to the library drive *slots* rather than the drives themselves.

This feature allows you to swap or replace devices, such as tape drives, without bringing down the entire operating system to update a .conf file or GEN file because of a new WWN.

Changing the WWN feature must be coordinated with the system administrator and is usually enabled during installation.

Note: Both library and tape drives must have microcode or firmware that supports the dynamic World Wide Naming feature.

Important:
Tape drives that are migrated from other libraries *will be assigned a different* WWN when installed in an SL8500 library. The existing network may not associate this new WWN with the originally assigned name.

This will require a reconfiguration of the network for these tape drives.

Arbitrated Loops

SL8500 tape drive configurations *do not support Arbitrated Loops*.

Tape Drive Comparisons

Table 86. Tape Drive Comparison

Specification	StorageTek				HP		IBM	
	T10K A	T10K B	T9840C	T9840D	LTO4	LTO5	LTO4	LTO5
Capacity (native)	500 GB	1 TB	40 GB	75 GB	800 GB	1.5 TB	800 GB	1.5 TB
Transfer rates (native)	120 MB/s	120 MB/s	30 MB/s	30 MB/s	120 MB/s	140 MB/s	120 MB/s	140 MB/s
Buffer size	256 MB	256 MB	64 MB	64 MB	256 MB	256 MB	256 MB	256 MB
Load Time (seconds)	16 sec	16 sec	6.5 sec	8.5 sec	19 sec	12 sec	15 sec	12 sec
Access (seconds)	46 sec	46	8 sec	8 sec	72 sec	60 sec	46 sec	60 sec
Tape speed (m/s)	2–4.95	2–3.74	3.295	3.4	7.0	—	7.0	—
Rewind time (sec)	90	90	16 / 8	16 / 8	106/54	96/ 78 sec	106/54	96/ 78 sec
Unload Time	23 sec	23 sec	11.5 sec	12 sec	22 sec	17 sec	22 sec	17 sec
Interfaces								
Fibre Channel	2 & 4 Gb/s	4 Gb/s	2 Gb/s	4 Gb/s	4 Gb/s	8 Gb/s	4 Gb/s	8 Gb/s
SCSI / SAS	no	no	no	no	Ultra-320	6 Gb SAS	Ultra-320	6 Gb SAS
FICON	2 Gb/s	2 Gb/s	2 Gb/s	2 Gb/s	Not Supported		Not Supported	
ESCON	2 Gb/s	2 Gb/s	18 MB/s	2 Gb/s				
Compatibility								
Availability (MTBF)	290,000 hrs		290,000 hrs		250,000 hrs		250,000 hrs	
Tracks	768	1152	288	576	896	1280	896	1280
Length–usable	855 m (2805 ft)	855 m (2805 ft)	251 m (889 ft)	251 m (889 ft)	820 m (2690 ft)	850 m (2789 ft)	820 m (2690 ft)	850 m (2789 ft)

Media

D

Tape cartridges are not shipped as part of the SL8500 Modular Library System and must be ordered separately.

Notes:

- The customer can use their existing cartridges as long as they are compatible with the supported tape drives and still within their warranty period.
- Professional Services and Data Center Services offer transition support and services to help migrate media and drives.
- Make sure that the customer orders the cartridge tape labels before the installation.
- Labels cannot be ordered separately from the cartridge tape.

Note: For more information and about how to order, refer to the *Media Catalog*.

Disclaimer

Media Usage:
The storage media (tape cartridges) used in a tape drive and/or library can have a *significant* impact on the overall performance. The following are policies regarding tape storage media:

- StorageTek warrants tape storage media that is branded StorageTek.
- The customer is responsible for all expenses and costs related to the repair or replacement of hardware damaged by non-StorageTek branded tape storage media.
- The customer may be billed for any service provided by StorageTek resulting from or related to problems caused by non-StorageTek branded tape storage media.

This appendix describes the tape cartridges used in the SL8500 library.

Note: Contact a StorageTek representative to obtain more information about tape cartridges and labels.

9840 Tape Cartridge

The 9840 tape cartridge is a half-inch tape cartridge featuring a self-contained tape path with dual reels for fast midpoint loads, which eliminates the time required to thread tape.

The 9840 tape cartridge was designed concurrently with the T9840 tape drive to provide fast access to data. One important characteristic is the *midpoint load design* that provides access to data within 12 seconds (on average).

The 9840 design achieves this fast access by having *both* supply and take-up reels inside the cartridge.

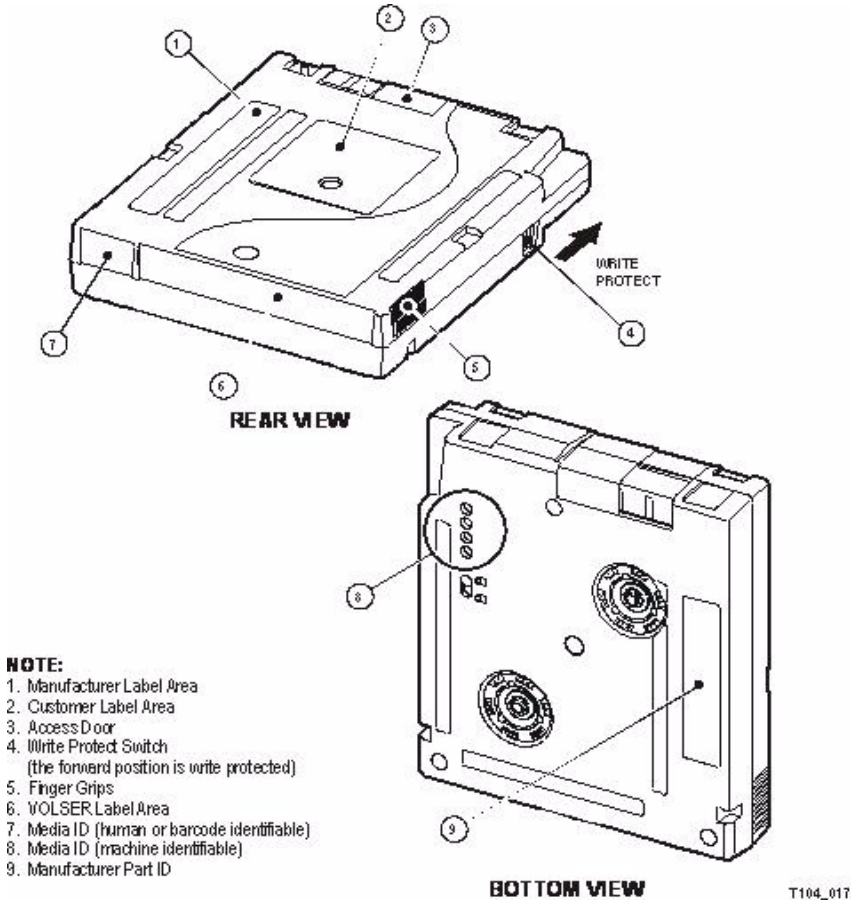
1. Write-protect switch
2. Customer label
3. Volume serial number (label)
4. Media ID label

These cartridges are used exclusively in T9840A, B, C, and D tape drives.

The media ID labels required for the 9840 tape cartridges are:

- R = data cartridge
- U = Cleaning cartridge

Figure 49. 9840 Tape Cartridge



9940 Tape Cartridge

The 9940 tape cartridge is a high-capacity, single-reel cartridge with the following characteristics:

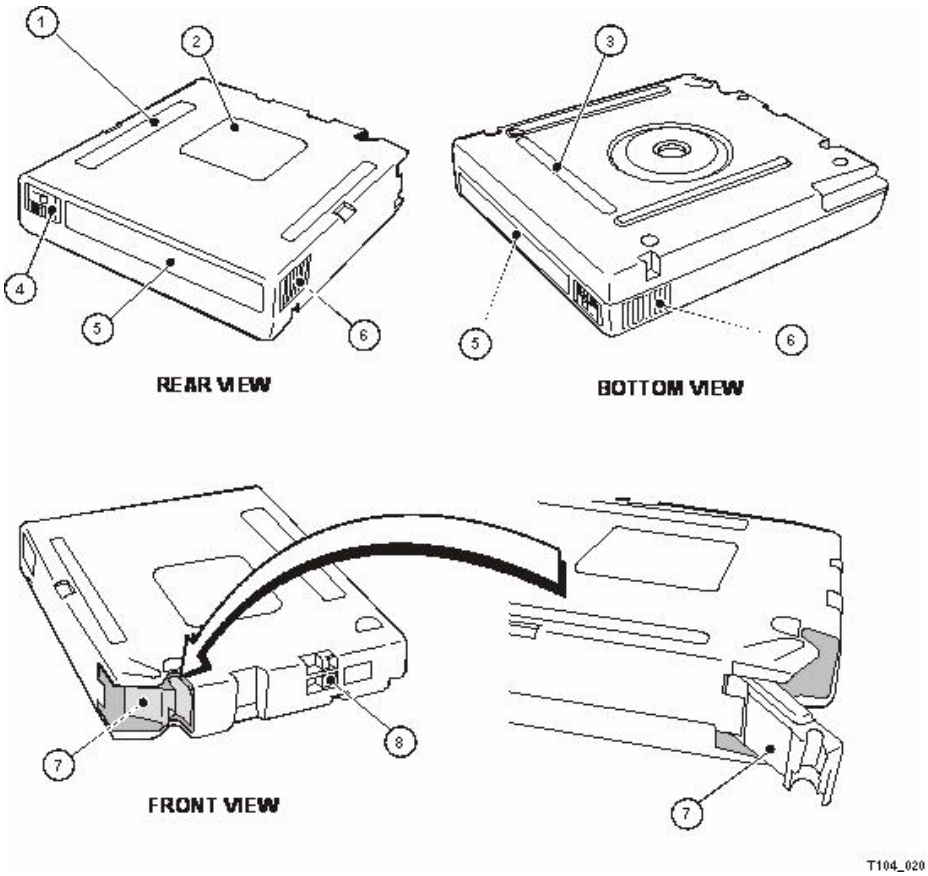
- Advanced metal particle (AMP) tape for higher recording density
- Proprietary back coating reduces static and tape compression
- Pre-written servo tracks provides for precision head alignment
- Half-inch 3480 form-factor tape cartridge.

9940 tape cartridges are used exclusively in T9940A and T9940B tape drives.

The media ID labels required for the 9940 tape cartridges are:

- P = Data cartridge
- W = Cleaning cartridge

Figure 50. 9940 Tape Cartridge

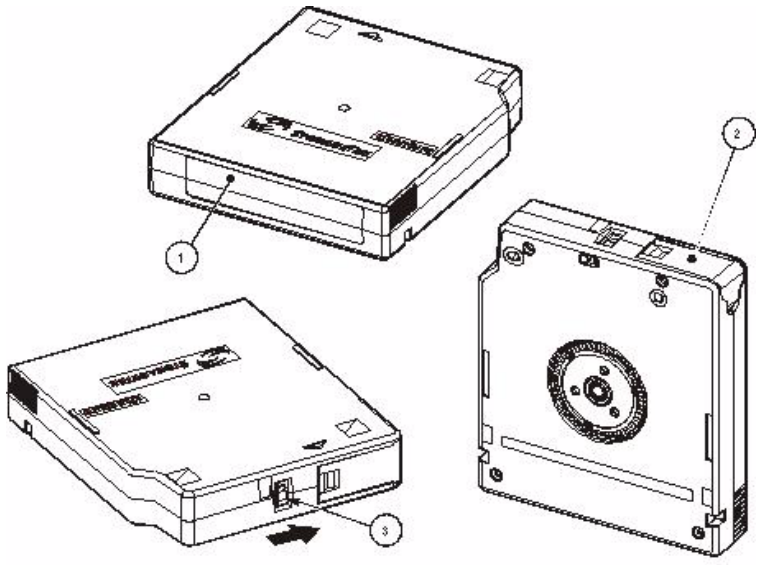


1. Manufacturer label area
2. Customer label area
3. Manufacturer part number or ID
4. Media ID label
5. Volume serial number (VOLSER)
6. Finger grips
7. Leader block
8. Write protect switch (file protect switch)

T10000 Tape Cartridges

Optimized for high capacity, the T10000 tape cartridges use a single reel hub to maximize performance. There are four types of tape cartridges:

Figure 51. Tape Cartridge Types



1. Label area
2. Door (color):
   - **Black** = data cartridge
   - **Red** = sport (a smaller capacity data cartridge)
   - **White** = cleaning cartridge
   - **Yellow** = VolSafe cartridge
3. Write protect switch

The media ID labels are:

T1 = Data cartridge
TS = Sport Cartridge
CT = Cleaning cartridge
CL = Universal Cleaning cartridge

Cleaning Cartridges

Cleaning cartridges clean the tape path and read/write head up to 100 times, after which, the tape drive rejects the cartridge.

Data Cartridges

There are two types of data cartridges; capacity and sport. These cartridges are under warranty for 10,000 (ten-thousand) mounts[1].

Important: After 15,000 mounts, a tape drive *will not* accept the cartridge.

The tape is under warranty for 200 full file writes to the media. *The tape drive issues a warning message when that number is exceeded* giving the customer time to transfer the data.

VolSafe Cartridges

VolSafe is an extension of the write protect function for a StorageTek tape drive. These cartridges are for write once read many (WORM) applications and cannot be erased without destroying the tape itself.

1. A mount is defined as the tape drive threads the tape onto the machine reel and goes to load point; just inserting the cartridge into the tape drive does not constitute a mount.

LTO Tape Cartridges

The Linear Tape-Open (LTO) Ultrium family of tape cartridges are optimized for high capacity and performance and are composed of half-inch, high-grade, patented, ceramic-coated metal particle tape.

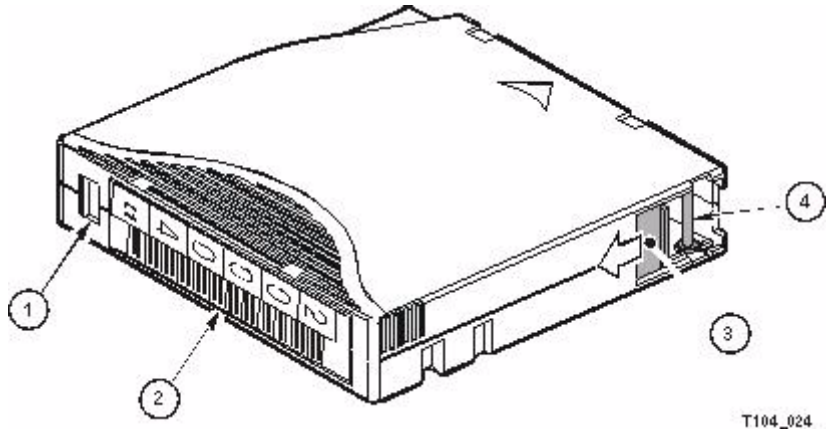
The media ID labels for LTO tape cartridges are:

LTO data cartridges:

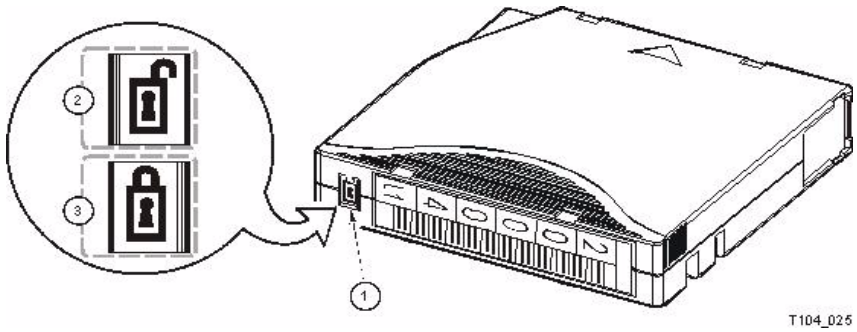
- LV = Generation 5 WORM
- LU = Generation 4 WORM
- LT = Generation 4 WORM
- L5 = Generation 5 (1,500 GB)
- L4 = Generation 4 (800 GB)
- L3 = Generation 3 (400 GB)
- L2 = Generation 2 (200 GB)
- L1 = Generation 1 (100 GB)

Cleaning cartridge: CU = Universal

Figure 52. LTO Tape Cartridge



1. Write-protect switch (red switch)
2. Volume ID label (barcode to hub side)
3. Access door
4. Leader pin



1. Write protect switch
2. Write enabled
3. Write Protected

Super DLT Tape Cartridges

Super DLT (SDLT) tape cartridges are composed of half-inch, patented, ceramic-coated metal particle media.

By transferring the optical servo guide information to the opposite side of the media, the SDLT cartridge enables a higher density of recording tracks on the magnetic surface of the media.

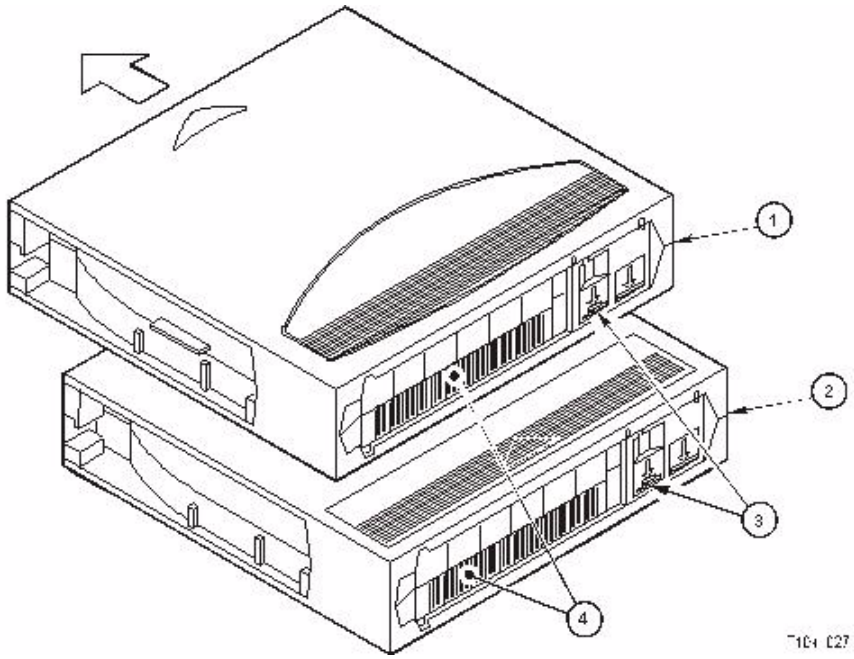
There are two types of SDLT tape cartridges:

- SDLTtape I: for use with SDLT models 220 and 320 (160 GB)
- SDLTtape II: for use with the SDLT 600 (300 GB)

The media ID labels for SDLT tape cartridges are:

- S = SDLTtape I
- 2 = SDLTtape II

Figure 53. DLT and SDLT Tape Cartridges



1. Super DLTtape
2. DLTtape
3. Write protect switch
4. Volume serial numbers

Notes:

- You cannot insert a Super DLTtape II tape cartridge into an SDLT 220, SLDT 320, or any other earlier model of DLT tape drive.
- Both Super DLTtape cartridges have a keying feature that prevent them from being inserted into the older generation DLT tape drives.

VolSafe Cartridges

The original write once, read many (WORM) tape-based storage solution, VolSafe secure media can be configured to meet the most stringent storage regulatory requirements, such as:

- Sarbanes-Oxley Act[2]
- Securities Exchange Commission (SEC)
- Health Insurance Portability and Accountability Act (HIPAA)
- Department of Defense Disclaimers

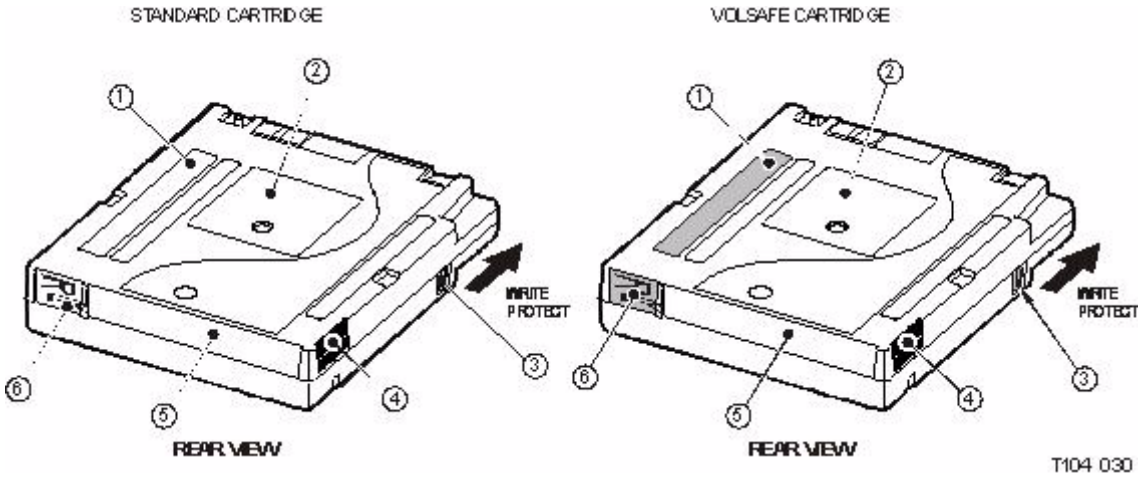
VolSafe- and WORM-enabled tape drives provide fast access and high performance with non-erasable, non-rewritable formats. Data can be written on or appended to a tape cartridge until it is full. This data can not be overwritten or erased without destroying the cartridge.

Unlike many other alternatives, *all* T-Series tape drives are VolSafe-technology-capable allowing the customer to simply purchase the media, not a new drive.

VolSafe and WORM cartridges can often be identified by the color, for example:

- T10000 cartridges use the color yellow to identify VolSafe cartridges
- 9840 cartridges use the color green
- LTO3 technology uses two-tone cartridges to identify WORM cartridges
- SDLT drives can convert *standard data cartridges* into WORM cartridges

Figure 54. VolSafe/WORM Tape Cartridge Example



1. Manufacturer label area
2. Customer label area
3. Write protect switch
4. Finger grips
5. Volume serial number label
6. Media ID label

2. The Sarbanes-Oxley Act introduced highly significant legislative changes to financial practice and corporate governance regulations.

Barcode Labels

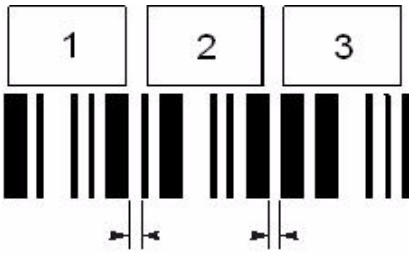
The labels used for the tape drives and libraries are based on the Code 39 barcode standard. This standard uses discrete barcodes, which means that a fixed pattern of bars represents a single character.

Each character is made up of *nine* bars—*five* black bars and *four* white bars—*three* of which are wider than the others. This is the reason for the name Code 39 and why some people refer to it as the 3 of 9 Code.

Figure 55. Barcode Label Examples

For example: This barcode represents the letter A, using

- Six narrow bars and three wide bars
- Two wide black bars and one wide white bar



Inter-character Gap

When multiple characters are arranged together as a label or volume serial number (VOLSER), a single, narrow white bar is placed between the individual character barcodes.

This is called the Inter-character Gap.

The Code 39 standard supports 36 unique alpha-numeric characters—the letters A through Z and the numbers 0 through 9—for use in making customer labels. Note that no lower case letters are used.

This standard also supports seven special characters (- . $ / + % *), which are not part of the customer label.

Delimiter

For the decode algorithms to function properly, delimiters or start and stop characters are needed to bind the actual barcode label characters together.

One of the most common characters to use for a delimiter is the asterisk (*), one of the seven special characters. The asterisk should never be used in a barcode as part of the customer-defined characters.

Barcode algorithms only decode the characters between the asterisks; they ignore characters outside the asterisks. For example:

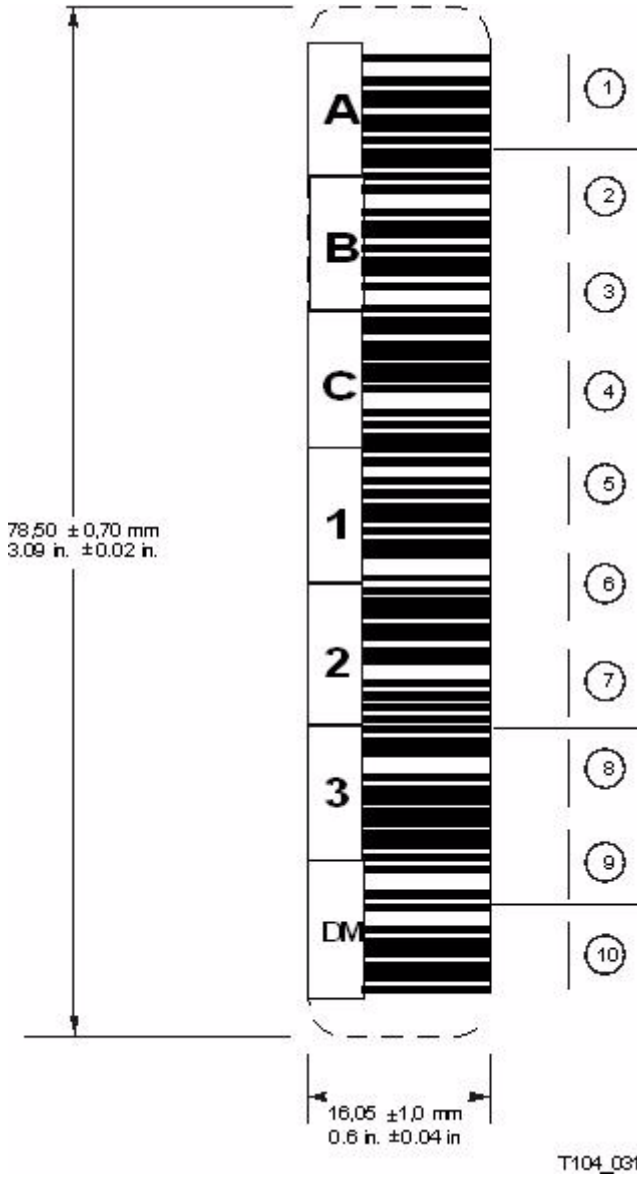
Actual Barcode Label	After Decoding	Comments
ABC123	ABC123	Good label
*ABC*23*	ABC	Misplaced stop character
ABC*23*	23	Misplaced start character
*ABC5678	Unreadable	No stop character detected

Barcode Standards

The SL8500 library reads barcodes of six characters or more that meet the following standards:

- American National Standards Institute (ANSI)
  MH10.8M-1993 Code 39 Barcode Specification
- Automatic Identification Manufacturers (AIM)
  Uniform Symbology Specification USS-39

Figure 56. Barcode Design



1. Start character
2. Character A
3. Character B
4. Character C
5. Number 1
6. Number 2
7. Number 3
8. Media character (D)
9. Media character (M)
10. Stop character

Media Domain and ID Labels

The media domain and media ID labels are the way a particular type of tape cartridge is identified by a library. This is an important feature called:

Any Cartridge, Any Slot™

The use of media domain and media ID labels allow customers to mix tape drive types and media types in a single library or library complex—a true mixed media solution.

The structure for the media domain and ID label is, for example:

Cartridge	Label	Media Domain	Media ID
LTO4	L4	L	4
T10000	T1	T	1

Table 87 on page 171 lists the media domain and ID labels.

Media Label Requirements

The SL8500 supports three types of media and tape drives:

- StorageTek T-Series (T9840 series, the T9940B, and T10000 series)
- Linear Tape-Open (LTO) generations 2, 3, 4, 5 and WORM technology
- Super DLT (SDLT) drives

Requirements for the media labels—volume serial numbers (VOLSER)—are:

T9x40 The T9x40 tape cartridges require a *six plus one-character* label that consists of the six-character customer label, then a single media ID character. These labels have a unique barcode format based on the Code 39 standard that use a unique start/stop character—the dollar sign ($)—and are printed only by EDP/Colorflex or American Eagle Systems/Wrightline for use in StorageTek libraries.

T10000 The T10000 cartridge uses an *eight-character* label with domain type and media ID. The media domain is a “T” and the media ID is 1.

The eight-character label is the future direction for all new tape technologies because of its flexibility to differentiate between tape technologies and it fully meets the ANSI Code 39 specification.

LTO LTO tape cartridges require an *eight-character* label. This label consists of a six-character customer defined volume serial number, the domain type (tape technology), and the media ID for that particular technology.

SDLT SDLT tape cartridges require a *seven-character* label. The six-character DLT labels do not indicate the media type and is *not* compatible with the SL8500 libraries. The seven character label has a small identifier *next to* the sixth character on the label for the media ID (either S or 2).

Label Examples

Figure 57 shows some examples of labels, media domains and IDs.

Figure 57. Label Examples

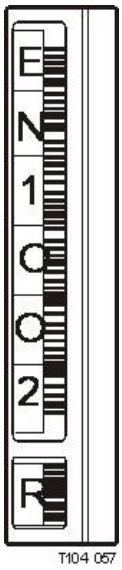
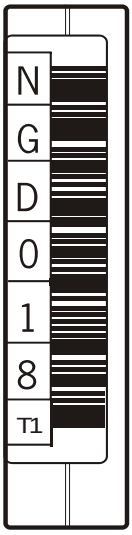
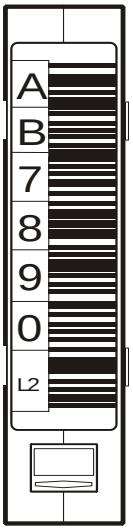
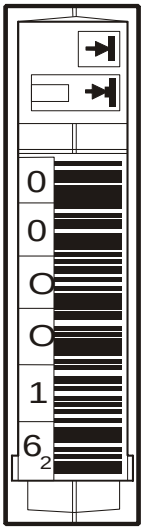
T9x40 Six-plus-one	T10000 Eight-characters	LTO Eight-characters	SDLT Seven-characters
			

Table 87 lists examples of the media domain and ID designators.

Table 87. Media Domain and Media ID Designators

T9940 cartridge: P = T9940 Data W = Cleaning **T9840 cartridge:** R = T9840 Data U = Cleaning Y = T9840D Clean Implied domain = 00	**T10000 cartridge:** T1 = T10000 Data TS = Sport CT = Cleaning CL = Cleaning	**LTO data cartridge:** LV = Gen 5 WORM” LU = Gen 4 WORM LT = Gen 3 WORM L5 = Gen 3 (1.5 TB) L4 = Gen 2 (800 GB) L3 = Gen 1 (400 GB) **Cleaning cartridge:** CU = Universal	**DLTtape cartridge:** B = DLT1 C = DLTtape III D = DLTtape IV E = DLTtape III-XT **SDLTtape cartridge:** S = Super DLTtape I 2 = Super DLTtape II 4 = DLT-S4 Implied domain = 01 S4 = DLT-S4

Note: 9840 and 9940 labels have an implied domain type of 00. SDLT tapes have and implied domain type of 01. These labels do not show the domain types, only the media ID is required.

Cleaning and Diagnostic Labels

Description

Cleaning and diagnostic cartridges require different labels to distinguish them from data cartridges.

- As the name implies, cleaning cartridges clean the tape path and read/write heads of the tape drives.
- Diagnostic cartridges are for service representatives to run read and write tests on the tape drive. In general, these tapes are standard data cartridges with a special diagnostic label.

The first three alphanumeric characters in the label sequence determine the type of cartridge being used.

Cleaning cartridge label format

[**CLNvnn**], where:
"**CLN**" is the cleaning cartridge identifier,
"**v**" is the drive type identifier, blank or a space, and
"**nn**" is a sequence of numbers (such as CLNU01 or CLN 02).

Notes:

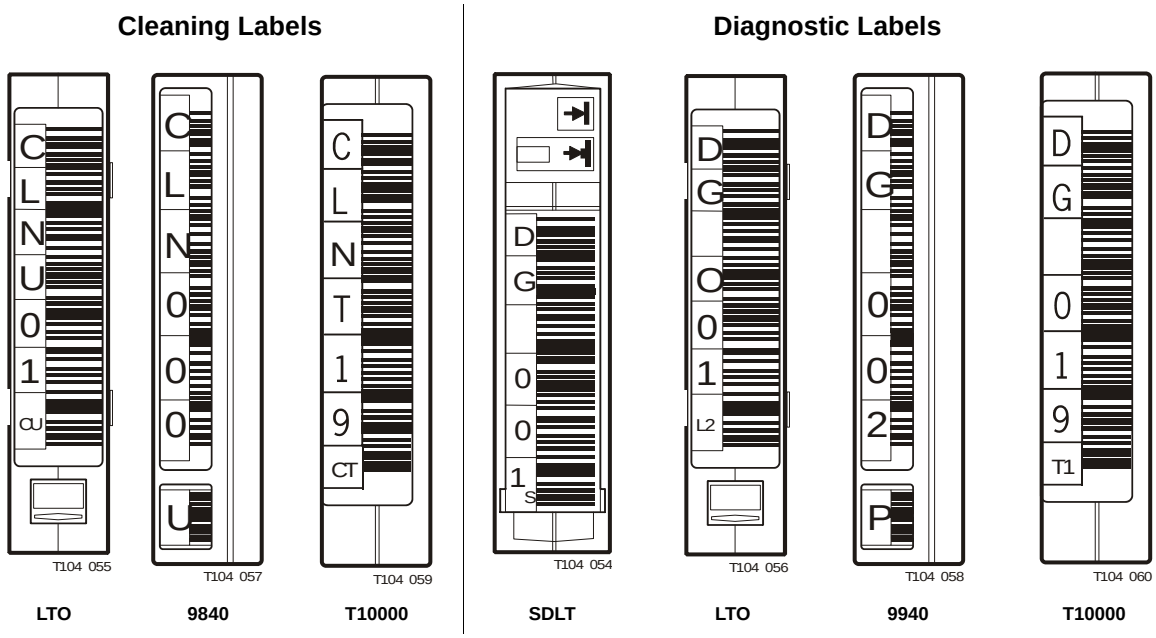
- First generation LTO cleaning cartridge labels also use the media ID type that coincides with the drive type.
- SDLT and 9840/9940 cleaning labels do not include the drive type identifier ("V") as the fourth character. This identifier began with the LTO cleaning cartridges and will continue on future tape technologies.

Diagnostic cartridge label format

[**DG{space}nnn**], where
"**DG**{space}" is the diagnostic cartridge identifier, and
"**nnn**" is a sequence of numbers (such as DG 001, and DG 019).

Diagnostic cartridge labels also require the unique media ID type that coincides with the drive type

Figure 58. Cleaning and Diagnostic Label Examples



Ordering Tape Cartridges and Labels

Contact your authorized selling agent for approved labeled cartridges.

Notes:

- You must select the volume serial number (VOLSER) range and other label options when ordering media.
- If you choose to order additional labels, call any authorized reseller.
- Labels for media used in libraries vary according to their applicable drive technology.

Volume Serial Numbers

- The VOLSER has a total of six characters.
  - The first three are the volume and can be either alpha or numeric.
  - The last three are the serial number and are always numeric.
  - Except with the individual color label options for 9x40 cartridges.
- If you choose the individual color label options, all characters can be either alpha, numeric, or any combination of the two. With this label option, you can choose a background color for each of the characters.

  Note: Most customers use the vibrant color option.

9840 and 9940 Cartridge Labels

Important:
For 9840 and 9940 tape cartridges only. StorageTek and EDP Trioptic hold a patent for the labels and EDP has exclusive rights to distribute (US only) the tri-optic label for these cartridges.

Customers can order these labels over the EDP Web site at:

http://www.tri-optic.com

Or by contacting EDP:

Table 88. EDP Trioptic Support

Client Support – USA	Client Support – Europe
Monday through Friday 8:00 AM to 5:00 PM Mountain Time Telephone: 888.438.8362 E-mail: Support@Tri-Optic.com	Telephone: (011) +44 (0) 1245 322380 E-Mail: Sales@EDPEurope.com

Media Comparisons

The following table provides a comparison of different (current) media types.Media Comparisons

Specifications	9840(C)	9840(D)	T10K(A)	T10K(B)	LTO4	LTO5	SDLT II
Capacity, native	40 GB	75 GB	500 GB	1 TB	800 GB	1.5 TB	300 GB
Transfer rate (MB/s)	30	30	120	120	120	140	36 MB/s
Read/Write speed	3.295	3.4	2–4.95	2–3.74	—	—	3.56 m/s
Search/Rewind speed	8.8	8.8	9.5	9.5	—	—	4.83 m/s
Format							
Recording density	6449 fr/mm	6449 fr/mm	—	—	—	343 kb/in	233 kb/in
Number of tracks	288	576	768	1152	896	1280	640
Total length	271 m (889 ft)	271 m (889 ft)	917m (3009 ft)	917m (3009 ft)	820m (2690 ft)	850 m (2789 ft)	630m (2066 ft)
Usable length	251 m (889 ft)	251 m (889 ft)	855m (2805 ft)	855m (2805 ft)	—	—	596m (1957 ft)
Availability							
Archival life (years)	15–30	15–30	15–30	15–30	15–30	15–30	15–30 yr
Load/unloads	10,000	10,000	15,000	10,000	5,000	5,000	5,000
Durability (full file writes)	361	361	350	350	260	260	260
Uncorrected bit error rate	$1x10^{-18}$	$1x10^{-18}$	$1x10^{-18}$	$1x10^{-18}$	$1x10^{-17}$	$1x10^{-17}$	1×10^{-17}
Permanent errors	Zero	Zero	Zero	Zero	Zero	Zero	Zero
Compatibility							
Read	A, B, C	A, B, C, D	A	A, B	2,3,4	3, 4, 5	SDLTtape I, II
Write	A, B, C	D	A	B	LTO3, 4	LTO4, 5	SDLTtape II
Supported tape drives	A, B, C	A, B, C, D	A, B	A, B	LTO4	LTO5	SDLT 320, 600
VolSafe / WORM?	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
Barcode characters	6 +1	6 + 1	8	8	8	8	7+1

Electrical Conversions

E

It is often necessary take certain electrical values (such as volts, amps, and watts) and convert them into other electrical values (such as kW, kVA and Btu). These values are used to calculate overall power, heating, and cooling requirements for customer sites.

This appendix describes how to take basic electrical values and convert them into these other types of electrical values.

Note: Not all of these are conversions, but formulas where using any two known values allow you to calculate a third.

Symbolic

A = Amperes (Amps)	**PF** = Power Factor
Btu = British Thermal Unit	**V** = Volts
kVA = Kilovolt-amperes	**VA** = Volt-amperes
kW = Kilowatts	**W** = Watts

To Find Volts, Watts, and Amperes

When Watts and Amperes are known:

Watts divided by Amps = *Volts* or W ÷ A = V

When Amps and Volts are known:

Amps multiplied by Volts = *Watts* or A **x** V = W

When Watts and Volts are known:

Watts divided by Volts = *Amps* or W ÷ V = A

For example: Given the following values you can use any two values to calculate a third Watts = 2400 (2.4 kW), Volts = 120, Amps = 20.

2.4 kW ÷ 20 A = 120 V

120 V **x** 20 A = 2,400 W (or 2.4 kW)

2,400 W ÷ 120 V = 20 A

To Find Volt-Amperes (VA)

When Volts and Amperes are known, you can use the previous example:

Volts multiplied by Amps = Volt-amperes (VA)
Volts [VAC] **x** Amps [A-rms] = Volt-amperes [VA]

For example: A small server is plugged into a 120 VAC 60 Hz power source and is rated at 2.5 amps.

120 VAC **x** 2.5 amps = 300 VA

To Find Kilovolt-Amperes (kVA)

Single Phase:

Again, using the previous example:

Volts multiplied by Amps divided by 1,000 = kilo-volt-amperes [kVA]
Volts [VAC] **x** Amps [A-rms] ÷ 1000 = kilo-volt-amperes [kVA]

For example: 120 VAC **x** 2.5 amps ÷ 1000 = 0.3 kVA

Three Phase:

Phase 1

Volts [VAC] x Amps [A-rms] ÷ 1000 = = kilo-volt-amperes [kVA]

Phase 2

Volts [VAC] x Amps [A-rms] ÷ 1000 = = kilo-volt-amperes [kVA]

Phase 3

Volts [VAC] x Amps [A-rms] ÷ 1000 = = kilo-volt-amperes [kVA]

Total kVA

kVA (phase 1) + kVA (phase 2) + kVA (phase 3) = kVA (3-phase total)

Using the single phase example above:

0.3 kVA + 0.3 kVA + 0.3 kVA = 0.9 kVA

To Find Kilowatts

Finding kilowatts is a little more complicated because the formula requires a value for the “power factor.” The power factor (PF) is not a precise value (unless known), but required. This factor can vary from 60–95% and is rarely published on the equipment. For purposes of these calculations a power factor of 0.85 is used.

Volts **x** Amps **x** PF ÷ 1000 = Kilowatts (kW)

Single Phase:

For example: A medium-sized server is plugged into a 120 VAC 60 Hz power source and is rated at 6.0 amps.

120 VAC **x** 6 amps **x** 0.85 (PF) = 612 ÷ 1,000 is 0.612 kW

208–240 Two Phase:

For example: A server using a 220 VAC power source is rated at 4.7 amps.

220 VAC **x** 4.7 amps **x** 2 (phases) **x** 0.85 (PF) = 1757.8 ÷ 1,000 = 1.76 kW

Three Phase:

Note: For 3-Phase power configurations you also need to multiply by 1.73.

For example: A large disk subsystem has 192 physical volumes, a power source of 208 VAC, and is rated at 22 amps.

208 VAC **x** 22 amps **x** 1.73 **x** 0.85 (PF) ÷ 1000 = 6.729 kW

To Convert Between kW and kVA

The only difference between kW and kVA is the power factor. Once again, the power factor is an approximation (unless already known). For purposes of our calculations, we will use a power factor of 0.85.

Note: The kVA value is always higher than the value for kW.

kW divided by 0.85 = kVA

kVA multiplied by 0.85 = kW

To Find British Thermal Units From Electrical Values

The commonly used method for converting electrical values to British Thermal Units is:

3.41214 **x** Watts = Btu/hr *or*

1 kW = 3 413 Btus

Many manufacturers publish kW, kVA and Btu in their equipment specifications. Often, dividing the Btu value by 3413 does not equal the published kW value.

- Where the information is provided by the manufacturer, use it.
- Where it is not, use the formula.

Comparisons

F

Because the SL8500 is a new library, a comparison between an existing StorageTek library—the 9310 Powderhorn—might help to put things into perspective.

This appendix provides comparisons between these two libraries.

Contrasts Between Libraries

Many concepts and terms used for earlier libraries apply to SL8500 libraries. However, many terms for the SL8500 have been modified from their original meanings. As the SL8500 library product is substantially different from earlier StorageTek library products, a general list of terms that relate old with new concepts is supplied in Table 89.

Table 89. Old versus New Terminology

9310 PowderHorn	SL8500
Automated Cartridge System (ACS): An LMU and its associated LSMs.	**Library complex:** Two or more libraries joined together with PTPs
Audit: The process of reading and cataloging all cartridges within an LSM or ACS; this is done through the Host Software Component (HSC) and the updated data is sent to the Control Data Set (CDS).	**Physical audit:** Cartridge volume identifiers (VOLIDs) and locations are stored within the library's memory—at power-on or when access doors are closed. **Verified audit:** By a Library Console command, cartridge VOLIDs and locations are validated. **Virtual audit:** Cartridge database is displayed through the Library Console.
Cartridge Access Port (CAP): Standard 21-slot or optional 80-slot, access door	**CAP:** Located on the right access door. CAP A is standard (39-slots); CAP B is optional.
Dual LMU: A master LMU that controls operation of the LSMs and a standby LMU that monitors the master; if a master LMU failure occurs, the standby LMU assumes control.	**Library complex:** Two or more libraries joined together with PTPs. SL8500 libraries in this configuration operate as peer-to-peer—there are no longer "master" or "standby" designations.
Enter: Enter a cartridge through the CAP	**Import:** Enter a cartridge through the CAP.
Eject: A specified cartridge is placed into the CAP by the robot for removal by the operator.	**Export:** A specified cartridge is placed into the CAP by a HandBot for removal by the operator.

Table 89. Old versus New Terminology (Continued)

9310 PowderHorn	SL8500
Hand: The component that reads cartridge VOLIDs, stores, and retrieves cartridges; cartridge VOLIDs are read before retrieval by the robot.	**HandBot:** The component that stores and retrieves cartridges; it reads cartridge VOLIDs: When entered through a CAP During an audit When retrieved through a PTP Since the location and VOLIDs of cataloged cartridges are resident on the HBC card, VOLIDs are not read during normal mount/dismount activities; mounts/dismounts are done by "dead reckoning."
Library: All software and hardware related to Automated Cartridge Systems.	**SL8500 Modular Library:** A single unit composed of at least three modules (drive and electronics module, robotics interface module, customer interface module); up to *five* storage expansion module may be added.
Library Control Unit (LCU): The power source and robotic controller for an LSM.	An LCU is *not* attached to the library; its function is now contained within library's HBC and HBT controller cards.
Library Management Unit (LMU): The controller of all LSMs connected to it; the interface between the LSMs and the host. The term is still used in relation to addressing.	An LMU is no longer housed in a separate unit; its function is now contained within library HBC (controller) cards. See also "Library Complex".
Library Storage Module (LSM): Storage module, up to sixteen per ACS (LMU).	**Rail:** Each rail within an SL8500 is designated as one LSM (4 LSMs per SL8500 Library) by host software.
Master PTP: The controlling PTP; its commands originate from the LCU that contains the LP/LPP card.	**Home library:** *Home* denotes the library supplying power and communication to the PTP. Power and communication originate from the *left* side (as viewed from the front) of the home library; either library may initiate a PTP activity. Two SL8500 libraries are joined together by *four* PTPs because there are four rails per library. An SL8500 library PTP cannot perform a pass-thru operation to or from a 9310 or L5500 LSM. **Note:** Internal racks and Ethernet switches are required for PTP operations.
Robot: A component that revolves around a central point in a circular LSM.	**HandBots:** Components that move linearly along rails and vertically along the hand's Z column. A single library can have from four to eight HandBots.

Table 89. Old versus New Terminology (Continued)

9310 PowderHorn	SL8500
Size/capacity: Determined by firmware and number of installed arrays; approximately 6,000 cartridges per LSM.	**Size/capacity:** Determined by the number of modules installed: three are required (1448 cartridges), but an additional *five* storage expansion modules can be added (1728 cartridges each). Slots are enabled to allow "capacity on demand."
Standby PTP: The LSM whose PTP mechanism does not contain the PTP motor or LP/LPP card (LCU).	**Away library:** *Away* denotes the library *not* supplying power or communication to the PTP. Away libraries are on the *left* side (as viewed from the front) of the home library; either library may initiate a PTP activity. SL8500 libraries are joined together by four PTPs because there are four rails. **Note:** Internal racks and Ethernet switches are required for PTP operations.
Tape drive capacity: Up to 80 (with 9741e cabinets).	**Tape drive capacity:** From 1 to 64, with 16 per drive array assembly
Theta: Describes the circular path of the robot.	Because the path for the HandBots is no longer circular, the term "theta" motion does not apply.
Wrist: Describes outer-to-inner wall hand motion.	**Wrist:** Describes outer-to-inner wall HandBot motion.
Z motion: Describes the vertical path of the robot (4410) or hand (9310/L5500)	**Z motion:** Describes the vertical path of a HandBot hand assembly.

Capacity Comparison with 9310 Libraries

The advantages of the SL8500 library can be seen when compared to a 9310 ACS that contains three, dense pack library storage modules (LSMs).

Three 9310 LSMs provide storage for 33 cartridges per 0.1 m^2 (1 ft^2), whereas an SL8500 library complex, composed of three SL8500s provides storage for 59 cartridges per 0.1 m^2 (1 ft^2).

Library Comparisons

Because the SL8500 is a new library, a comparison between the existing Powderhorn, 9310 might help to put things into perspective.

- Table 90 compares libraries between weights, measures, and capacities
- Table 91 compares power requirements

Table 90. Comparisons Between PowderHorn and the SL8500 Library

9310 PowderHorn		SL8500	
Measurements			
Storage Module (LSM)		**Modular Library**	
Height	235 cm (92.5 in.)	Height:	236.6 cm (93.15 in.)
Diameter	325 cm (128.0 in.)	Width:	170.8 cm (67.25 in.)
Control Unit (LCU)		Length:	
Height	161 cm (63.5 in.)	Base library	276.9 cm (109 in.)
Width	39.1 cm (15.4 in.)	1 expansion module	372.1 cm (146.5 in.)
Length	58.1 cm (22.9 in.)	2 expansion modules	467.4 cm (184 in.)
Management Unit (LMU)		3 expansion modules	562.6 cm (221.5 in.)
Height	93.0 cm (36.6 in.)		
Width	74.4 cm (29.3 in.)	**Note:** One of the benefits of the SL8500 is the consolidation LMU, LCU, Drive Cabinets, and LSM within the SL8500.	
Length	59.7 cm (23.5 in.)		
Drive Cabinet (9741e)		*Plus* additional consolidation with internal rack space for network components.	
Height	183 cm (72.0 in.)		
Width	74.9 cm (29.5 in.)		
Length	58.4 cm (23 in.)		
Drives per cabinet	20 drives		
Total Area (60 drives)	10.3 m^2 (110.8 ft^2)	**Total Area** (64 drives)	9.6 m^2 (103.4 ft^2)
Weight			
LSM		Base library	
Empty	2449 kg (5,400 lb)	Empty	1497 kg (3,300 lb)
Fully Loaded	3810 kg (8,400 lb)	Loaded	2835 kg (6,250 lb)
LCU	136 kg (300 lb)	1 expansion module	1883 kg 4,150 lb)
LMU	113 kg (250 lb)	Loaded	3640 kg (8,025 lb)
9741e Drive Cabinet	186 kg (410 lb)	2 expansion modules	2268 kg (5,000 lb)
One T9940 drive	7.7 kg (17 lb)	Loaded	4445 kg (9,800 lb)
9741e with 20 drives	340.2 kg (750 lb)	3 expansion modules	2654 kg (5,850 lb)
9741e with 40 drives	680.3 kg (1,500 lb)	Loaded	5250 kg (11,575 lb)
9741e with 60 drives	1020.5 kg (2,250 lb)	Loaded = All drives, cartridges, and power supplies with 2N power and four robots	
9741e with 80 drives	1361 kg (3,000 lb)		
Total Weight (60 drives)	5420 kg (11,950 lb)	**Total Weight** (64 drives)	5250 kg (11,575 lb)

Table 90. Comparisons Between PowderHorn and the SL8500 Library (Continued)

9310 PowderHorn		SL8500	
Service Clearances			
LSM (door opening)	86.36 cm (34 in.)	Front	66 cm (26 in.)
LCU	39.0 cm (15.4 in.)	Rear	85 cm (33.5 in.)
LMU	81.3 cm (32.0 in.)	Pass-thru ports	15.25 cm (6 in.)
9741e Drive Cabinet	81.3 cm (32.0 in.)	Door width	10.16 cm (4 in.)
Planning Requirements			
Raised Floor Loading	244-293 kg/m^2 (50-60 lb/ft^2)	Raised Floor Loading	260 kg/m^2 (120 lb/ft^2)
Loading per pad	454 kg (1,000 lb)	Loading per pad	454 kg (1,000 lb)
Distribution pads	18 (per library)	Distribution pads	26 (with 3 expansions)
Assembly area	35 m^2 (400 ft^2)	Assembly area	56 m^2 (600 ft^2)
Power Requirements			
Voltage (selectable)	200 to 240 VAC	Voltage	200 to 240 VAC
Frequency	47 to 63 Hz	Frequency	47 to 63 Hz
Phases (Current)	Single	Phases (Current)	
LCU/LSM LMU	12 Amps 8 Amps	Single Phase	*3 inputs* (24 Amps) *6 redundant*
9741e Drive Cabinet	20 Amps	Three Phase: (*recommended*)	Delta (40 Amps) Wye (24 Amps) SUVA (24 Amps)
Power Consumption LCU/LSM LMU 9741e Drive Cabinet	 1.5 kW 0.126 kW 1.47 kW	Power Consumption (maximum loading**)	13.0 kW
Heat Output LCU/LSM LMU 9741e Drive Cabinet	 3,750 Btu/hr 2,050 Btu/hr 8,047 Btu/hr	Heat Output (maximum loading**)	44,380 Btu/hr
		** Maximum loading = 64 tape drives, 4 fully loaded racks, 8 HandBots, all front frame components, plus redundant control modules	
Minimum system (16 drives)	3.56 kW 12,140 Btu/hr	Minimum system (16 drives)	3.32 kW 11,320 Btu/hr
Maximum system (60 drives, 3 x 9741E)	10.76 kW 36,700 Btu/hr	Maximum system (64 drives, plus 8 HandBots, 4 racks)	12.27 kW 41,840 Btu/hr
Note: See Table 91 on page 185 for additional comparisons for power requirements			

Table 90. Comparisons Between PowderHorn and the SL8500 Library (Continued)

9310 PowderHorn		SL8500	
Capacities			
Tape drives (max)		Tape drives (max)	
single library	80 (four 9741e)	single library	64
ACS	960	complex	640
Tape cartridges (max)		Tape cartridges (max)	
single library	6,000 (5,500)	single library	10,088
ACSLS managed	144,000	complex	greater than 100,00
NCS/HSC managed	96,000		
Storage Density	33 cartridges per 0.1 m^2 (1 ft^2)	Storage Density	59 cartridges per 0.1 m^2 (1 ft^2)
Libraries in an ACS	24 (ACSLS control) 16 (HSC control)	Libraries in a Complex	10 (ACSLS) or 10 (HSC)
Cartridge Access Ports	21-cells standard 80-cells *optional*	Cartridge Access Ports	39-slots standard 39-slots *optional* 78 total
Storage (Tape Cartridges)			
Single Library	1,500 cartridges (min.)	**Single Library**	1,448 cartridges (min.)
T9840 A (20 GB)	30 TB	T9840 A (20 GB)	29 TB
T9840 B (20 GB)	30 TB	T9840 B (20 GB)	29 TB
T9840 C (40 GB)	60 TB	T9840 C (40 GB)	58 TB
T9940 B (200 GB)	300 TB	T9940 B (200 GB)	290 TB
LTO Gen 2 (200 GB)	300 TB	LTO Gen 2 (200 GB)	290 TB
ACS (*24 libraries*)	84,000 cartridges	**Complex** (*10 libraries*)	100,000 cartridges
T9840 A (20 GB)	1.68 PB	T9840 A (20 GB)	
T9840 B (20 GB)	1.68 PB	T9840 B (20 GB)	TBD
T9840 C (40 GB)	3.36 PB	T9840 C (40 GB)	
T9940 B (200 GB)	16.8 PB	T9940 B (200 GB)	
	132,000 cartridges	LTO Gen 2 (200 GB)	
LTO Gen 2 (200 GB)	26.4 PB		
Performance (Tape Drives)			
Single Library	80 drives	**Single Library**	64 drives
T9840 A (10 MB/s)	2.9 TB/hr	T9840 A (10 MB/s)	2.3 TB/hr
T9840 B (19 MB/s)	5.5 TB/hr	T9840 B (19 MB/s)	4.4 TB/hr
T9840 C (30 MB/s)	8.6 TB/hr	T9840 C (30 MB/s)	6.9 TB/hr
T9940 B (30 MB/s)	8.6 TB/hr	T9940 B (30 MB/s)	6.9 TB/hr
LTO Gen 2 (32-35 MB/s)	10 TB/hr	LTO Gen 2 (32-35 MB/s)	8.1 TB/hr
ACS (24 libraries)	960 drives	**Complex** (10 libraries)	640 drives
T9840 A (10 MB/s)	34.56 TB/hr	T9840 A (10 MB/s)	
T9840 B (19 MB/s)	65.56 TB/hr	T9840 B (19 MB/s)	TBD
T9840 C (30 MB/s)	103.68 TB/hr	T9840 C (30 MB/s)	
T9940 B (30 MB/s)	103.68 TB/hr	T9940 B (30 MB/s)	
LTO Gen 2 (32-35 MB/s)	120.96 TB/hr	LTO Gen 2 (32-35 MB/s)	

Table 91. Power Requirement Comparisons

Between PowderHorn and the SL8500 ~ A Quick Reference

9310 PowderHorn					SL8500 Library								
2 Hands		Watts			4 Robots		Watts			8 Robots	Watts		
Component	Qty	Idle	Max Cont.	Peak	Component	Qty	Idle	Max Cont.	Peak	Qty	Idle	Max Cont.	Peak
LCU & LSM	1	200	**800**	1500	LSM	1	112	**220**	564	1	224	**440**	1128
LMU	1	126	**126**	126	ECM Control Module	1	100	**100**	100	1	100	**100**	100
Dual LMUs	1	252	252	252									
					Rack space (base)			1440	—	Base	—	1440	—
Rack space (each 9741)		—	490	—	Rack space (redundant)			2880	—	Redundant	—	2880	—
Tape Drives:					**Tape Drives:**								
T9x40 / T10000	4	582	714	770	T9x40 / T10000	4	372	504	560	4	372	504	560
	16	1690	**2226**	2450		16	1480	**2016**	2240	16	1480	**2016**	2240
	20	2062	2730	3010		20	1852	2520	2800	20	1852	2520	2800
	40	4124	5460	6020		40	3704	5040	5600	40	3704	5040	5600
	64	6582	8694	9590		64	5952	8064	8960	64	5952	8064	8960
LTO / SDLT	4	386	450	478	LTO / SDLT	4	176	240	268	4	176	240	268
	16	914	1170	1282		16	704	960	1072	16	704	960	1072
	20	1090	1410	1550		20	880	1200	1340	20	880	1200	1340
	40	2180	2820	3100		40	1760	2400	2680	40	1760	2400	2680
	64	3446	4470	4918		64	2816	3840	4288	64	2816	3840	4288
					Pass-thru Ports	each	20	22	26	each	20	22	26
Example (max case): For a Powderhorn (2 hands) LCU, LSM with 1 LMU and 16 T9X40 drives: 800 + 126 + 2226 = **3152 watts** (max)					Example (max continuous case): For a SL8500 (4 robots) LCU, LSM, 1 ECM and 16 T9X40 drives: 220 + 100 + 2016 = **2336 watts** (**max continuous**)					Example (max continuous case): For a SL8500 (8 robots) LCU, LSM, 1 ECM and 16 T9X40 drives: 440 + 100 + 2016 = **2556 watts** (max)				

TCP/IP Connectivity

G

This appendix provides three network topology examples with routing tables and the CLI commands used to configure each example.

- “Multi-Homed Configuration on Two Subnets” on page 197
- “Multi-Homed Configuration with Different Subnets” on page 199
- “Single Interface Host with Multi-Homed SL8500” on page 201

This appendix also provides a fourth example that can be used as a service configuration.

- “Service Connection” on page 203

With the Dual TCP/IP feature, if the customer only has one connection into the SL8500, the second port (2A) can be used as a connection for service.

For example, connections to the

Service Delivery Platform (SDP)

In the past, SDP connections to an SL8500 library used the customers public network—which often changed the customers reasoning to have an SDP connection.

With the Dual TCP/IP feature and enabling Port 2A, you can create a separate network for SDP connectivity to the SL8500 and appropriate T-Series tape drives.

StorageTek Library Console (SLC)

With the Dual TCP/IP feature and enabling Port 2A, you can connect and start a remote SLC connection at the *rear* of the library.

Laptop Ethernet connections

With the Dual TCP/IP feature and enabling Port 2A, you can use both the command line interface and Ethernet connection to configure the library (using PuTTY), perform diagnostic functions (load and unload drives), and initiate a cell audit for example.

Differences, Benefits, and Terminology

The SL8500 now features Dual TCP/IP—which provides two public network interfaces to the library and/or library complex.
This feature requires a library firmware of FRS_3.08 or higher.

Differences

Important:
There are differences between the terms Dual LMU[1] (from previous libraries) and Dual TCP/IP for the SL8500. Here is an overview between the two.

An overview of Dual LMU (9330 and 4430) and Dual TCP/IP (SL8500).

1. **Dual LMU (9330 and 4430):** Consists of a: 1) Master LMU and a 2) Standby LMU. Each LMU has its own connection to the host.
   - The Dual LMU design is an **active/passive** design—the master LMU handles *all* requests from the host.
   - One Library Control Unit (LCU) is required per library storage module or silo (9310 or 4410).
   - The standby LMU monitors the state of the master LMU through a heartbeat between the two units. If the master fails to respond, the standby takes over.
   - The standby LMU can also take over for the master LMU when it receives a switch transmission command from HSC or ACSLS. Note: ACSLS and HSC **do not** automatically initiate a switch when communications to the master LMU fails.
   - The switch-over process takes about eight minutes and requests in progress may be lost.
   - Both LMUs are capable of being the master, but only one can be the master at a given moment.
2. **Dual TCP/IP (SL8500):** Provides *two separate* host connections between the host software (ACSLS or HSC) and the library controller.
   - Dual TCP/IP is an **active/active** design—when both communication paths are available, ACSLS and HSC use both of them to communicate with the SL8500.
   - In the SL8500, the HBC card provides *all* of the functions of the LMU, the LCU, and the library communications facility (LCF).
   - Currently, there is only one HBC card in the SL8500 library.

1. LMU = Library management unit

- HSC uses each path alternately.
- ACSLS continuously monitors both connections using one path as primary and occasionally using the second path.
- This helps ensure that both paths are working properly so that if one fails, there is a high degree of confidence that the other path is operational.
- Both HSC and ACSLS detect when a path is unavailable and automatically re-send transmissions over the other path.
- The SL8500 also re-sends transmissions over the other path when a path becomes unavailable. After retrying for four to five minutes, ACSLS, HSC, and the SL8500 will mark a path as unavailable and just use the remaining path.
- When a path is marked as unavailable, ACSLS, HSC, and the SL8500 continues to monitor the path. When the path becomes available again, ACSLS, HSC, and the SL8500 will automatically re-connect to the path.

Benefits

The benefits between Dual TCP/IP and Dual LMU are:

- Dual TCP/IP is **active/active**. ACSLS and HSC use both paths. This helps ensure that both paths are working properly so that if one fails, there is a high degree of confidence that the other path is operational.

  Dual LMU is **active/passive**. There is a risk that when the master LMU fails, the standby LMU may not be operational.
- ACSLS and HSC monitor the communication paths and automatically retry communications over the remaining path.
- With Dual LMU, ACSLS and HSC *do not* automatically switch to the standby LMU when they lose communication with the master. An operator must issue a “Switch LMU” command to cause an actual switch from the host software.
- With Dual TCP/IP, ACSLS, HSC or the SL8500 detect a communication path that is unavailable and automatically retry transmissions over the alternate path within seconds. Generally, transactions are not lost.

  When the standby LMU detects that the master LMU is not responding to the heartbeat, it takes about eight minutes for the standby LMU to re-IPL and become the master LMU. Transactions in progress may be lost.

- The SL8500 had redundant hot-replaceable power for the electronics. A power supply failure in the 9330 or 4430 LMU will take down that LMU.

The benefits of Dual LMU verses Dual TCP/IP are:

- There is only one Library Controller card in the SL8500 at present. If the Library Controller fails, the SL8500 library complex is unavailable.

  However, none of the electronics in the Library Control Unit (LCU) on the 9310 and 4410 is redundant either.

Note: The Dual TCP/IP feature provides a *dual path* functionality, not redundant functionality. Redundancy with this feature is a function of the *network* to which the library connects.

Terminology

ARP—Short for Address Resolution Protocol, a network layer protocol that converts IP address into physical addresses, like Ethernet addresses. Address Resolution Protocol (ARP) Takeover allows traffic to be redirected from a failing OSA-Express connection to another OSA-Express connection.

Dual path/Dual TCP/IP—two distinct physical paths within a network architecture that interconnect two host systems.

Ethernet—a local-area network (LAN) architecture that serves as the basis for the IEEE 802.3 standard. Ethernet is one of the most widely implemented LAN standards.

Gateway—A node on a network that serves as an *entrance* to another network. A gateway is a device that *routes* traffic from one network to another network.

MAC address—Short for media access control.

Mbps—spelled this way it is short for megabits per second, a unit of measure for data transfer speed (a megabit is equal to one million bits).

Newer versions of Ethernet, called Gig-E or 1000Base-T support data transfers of 1 gigabit (1,000 Mbps).

MBps—Spelled this way it is short for megabytes per second.

Multi-homed—more than one network interface (for example, the two SL8500 TCP/IP ports)—this does *not* imply redundancy.

Netmask—This entry makes the library accessible through a subnet on a larger network, using a number from 0 to 32; for example, 126.80.70.121/**23**. The number 23 in this example is the netmask.

Network masks—also known as a subnet mask or netmask—use bits to identify the subnetwork, and how many host addresses may access it.

These masks are usually represented by a dotted decimal notation of four numbers from 0 to 255 separated by periods. For example 255.255.254.0 is a subnet mask.

A shorter form of notation—known as Classless Inter-Domain Routing (CIDR)—gives the network number followed by a slash (“/”) and the number of bits in the netmask.

Redundant TCP/IP—relates to dynamic routing or switching from a primary interface to a secondary interface in the event of a failure on one interface. *This is not supported*.

Routing—is the process of moving a packet of data from a source to a destination. Routing is a key feature in networking because it enables messages to pass from one device to another device, eventually reach its target.

Static Routing—routing information in the host system is manually configured by the system administrator. This is the only routing method supported by the SL8500.

TCP/IP—Transmission Control Protocol/Internet Protocol

TCP is one of the main protocols in networks that enable two hosts to establish a connection and exchange streams of data. TCP guarantees delivery of data and also guarantees that packets are delivered in the order they were sent.

IP specifies the format of packets and the addressing scheme.

Network Addressing

To communicate on a network, each device must have a unique number or “address.”

An Internet Protocol or IP address is a unique number that identifies a device and allows it to communicate on a network. All other IP network devices—including computers, routers, and libraries—must have its own unique address. IP addresses are usually represented by a dotted decimal notation of four numbers from 0 to 255.

For example: 128.80.142.23 is an IP address.

An IP address has two components, the network address and the host address. Assuming this is a Class B network,

- the first two numbers (128.80) represent the network address
- the second two numbers (142.23) identify a particular host or device on this network.

There are five classes of IP ranges: Class A, Class B, Class C, Class D, and Class E—while only A, B and C are commonly used. Each class allows for a range of valid IP addresses. Below is a listing of these addresses.

Table 92. Network IP Classes and Address Ranges

Class	Address Range	Supports
Class A	1.0.0.1 to 126.255.255.254	Supports 16 million hosts on each of 127 networks.
Class B	128.1.0.1 to 191.255.255.254	Supports 65,000 hosts on each of 16,000 networks.
Class C	192.0.1.1 to 223.255.254.254	Supports 254 hosts on each of 2 million networks.
Class D	224.0.0.0 to 239.255.255.255	Reserved for multicast groups.
Class E	240.0.0.0 to 254.255.255.254	Reserved.

Subnet Masks

Definitions:

- **Subnets** allow network administrators to further divide the host part of an IP address into further, smaller, networks—subnets.
- A **mask** is a filter that selectively includes or *excludes* certain values. Values that do not conform to the mask can not access the device.
- A **subnet mask**, or **netmask**, is a 32-bit mask that divides an IP address into subnets and specifies the available hosts on a network.

A subnet mask looks like an IP address and is often seen in 255.255.255.0 notation. It uses a “1” bit to filter, or “mask” allowable addresses in the network.

For example: 255.255.255.0 is a subnet mask.
Where:

- 255 values *mask* the access of an IP address range and
- 0 (or 000) values *allow* the access of an IP address range

When configuring the IP address, including the “slash” notation (for example / 24) is known as Classless Inter-Domain Routing (CIDR[2]) format and indicates the subnet mask for that IP address. While the more conventional notation 255.255.255.0 provides the same information, the subnet mask is more concise using the CIDR notation.

2. CIDR is often pronounced as Cedar.

Here is an example of a netmask, binary conversion, and the number of bits masked.

Netmask	First Octet	Second Octet	Third Octet	Fourth Octet
	255.	255.	255.	255
Conversion	11111111	11111111	11111111	11111111
Netmask length (CIDR notation)	/8	/16	/24	/32

The above example is a 32-bit address, which is a broadcast address and does not allow any hosts, computers, or other network devices access.

Commonly used netmasks are the 24-bit mask and 23-bit mask.

Netmask	First Octet	Second Octet	Third Octet	Fourth Octet
	255.	255.	255.	0
Conversion	11111111	11111111	1111111**1**	00000000
Netmask length (CIDR notation)	/8	/16	/**24**	—
Conversion	11111111	11111111	1111111**0**	00000000
Netmask length (CIDR notation)	/8	/16	/**23**	—

Using a 24-bit netmask would be capable of 2,097,150 networks or 254 different hosts. Below is a breakdown of each of the commonly used network classes:

Class	Netmask length	Networks	Hosts	Netmask
Class A	/8	126	16,777,214	255.0.0.0
Class B	/16	16,382	65,534	255.255.0.0
Class C	/24	2,097,150	254	255.255.255.0

See Table 93 on page 194 for a complete list of netmask values.

Netmask Quick Reference

Table 93. Netmask Quick Reference

Bits	Hosts	Netmask
/8	16777216	255.0.0.0—Class A network
/9	8388608	255.128.0.0
/10	4194304	255.192.0.0
/11	2097152	255.224.0.0
/12	1048576	255.240.0.0
/13	524288	255.248.0.0
/14	262144	255.252.0.0
/15	131072	255.254.0.0
/16	65536	255.255.0.0—Class B network
/17	32768	255.255.128.0
/18	16384	255.255.192.0
/19	8192	255.255.224.0
/20	4096	255.255.240.0
/21	2048	255.255.248.0
/22	1024	255.255.252.0
/23	512	255.255.254.0
/24	256	255.255.255.0—Class C network
/25	128	255.255.255.128
/26	64	255.255.255.192
/27	32	255.255.255.224
/28	16	255.255.255.240
/29	8	255.255.255.248
/30	4	255.255.255.252
/31		
/32	1	255.255.255.255—Single IP address

ACSLS and Dual TCP/IP Support

The purpose of dual TCP/IP is to automatically recognize and avoid a failing communication path. Since this is automated, there is no need for you to manually switch from an inoperative connection. The best solution is having ACSLS keep two connections to the library open because ACSLS will use all active connections. If one connection is inoperative, ACSLS will just use the remaining operative connection, while continuing to try to re-establish communication on the failing connection.

ACSLS provides the ability to configure two TCP/IP connections to a single library, using "`acsss_config`" or the Dynamic Configuration "`config`."

When configuring libraries, the user is asked how many connections there are to the library and then the name of the devices (IP addresses).

In order to take full advantage of dual TCP/IP support on the SL8500, the routing tables on the ACSLS server must be manipulated using the "`route`" command.

Is there a preferred configuration?
The preferred configuration for dual TCP/IP implementations is two network interfaces on two separate subnets for the ACSLS server. This provides maximum throughput and minimum resource contention with regard to network communications while adding a second physical connection improving reliability.

For more information about ACSLS, the SL8500, and Dual TCP/IP, refer to the: *ACSLS Installation Configuration and Administration Guide* (ICAG)

Notes:

- Always refer to the Customer Resource Center (CRC) for the latest Tech Tips, code updates, and information.
- Until the ACSLS ICAG is updated, a Technical Tip will be posted on the CRC with this information.
- Make sure you reference and use the ACSLS documentation to configure the routing tables on the ACSLS server to support Dual TCP/IP.

The minimum level of software required is:

- ACSLS 7.1 for Solaris on SPARC or AiX.
- Apply PUT0601 and the following PTFs:
- ACSLS 7.1.0 for Solaris on SPARC: PTF849144S
- ACSLS 7.1.0 for AiX:PTF849144A
- ACSLS 7.1.1 for Solaris on X86.
- Apply PTF849144X

For ACSLS HA, see the ACSLS documentation about Dual TCP/IP for more information.

HSC and Dual TCP/IP Support

HSC provides support to configure two TCP/IP connections using the LMUPATH control statement. This statement allows users to define network LMU attachments in a dual TCP/IP environment for an SL8500.

You must also specify a second LMUADDR parameter to define the dual TCP/IPs. HSC then automatically determines whether the connection is dual TCP/IP or dual LMU.

Once this is completed, vary the ACS offline and back online to pick up the revised LMUPATH statement that includes the second connection.

For more information about HSC, the SL8500, and Dual TCP/IP, refer to the: *HSC Systems Programmer's Guides*

Notes:

- Always refer to the Customer Resource Center (CRC) for the latest Tech Tips, code updates, and information.
- Until the HSC Systems Programmer's Guide is updated, a Technical Tip will be posted on the CRC with this information.
- Make sure you reference and use the HSC Programmer's Guide to configure the routing tables on the system mainframes to support Dual TCP/IP.

The minimum level of software required is:

NCS 6.0 or 6.1 with the appropriate PTFs (below):

HSC/MVS/VM:

- SOS600 L1H131L
- SMS600 L1H131K
- SOS610 L1H131N
- SMS610 L1H131M

MSP:

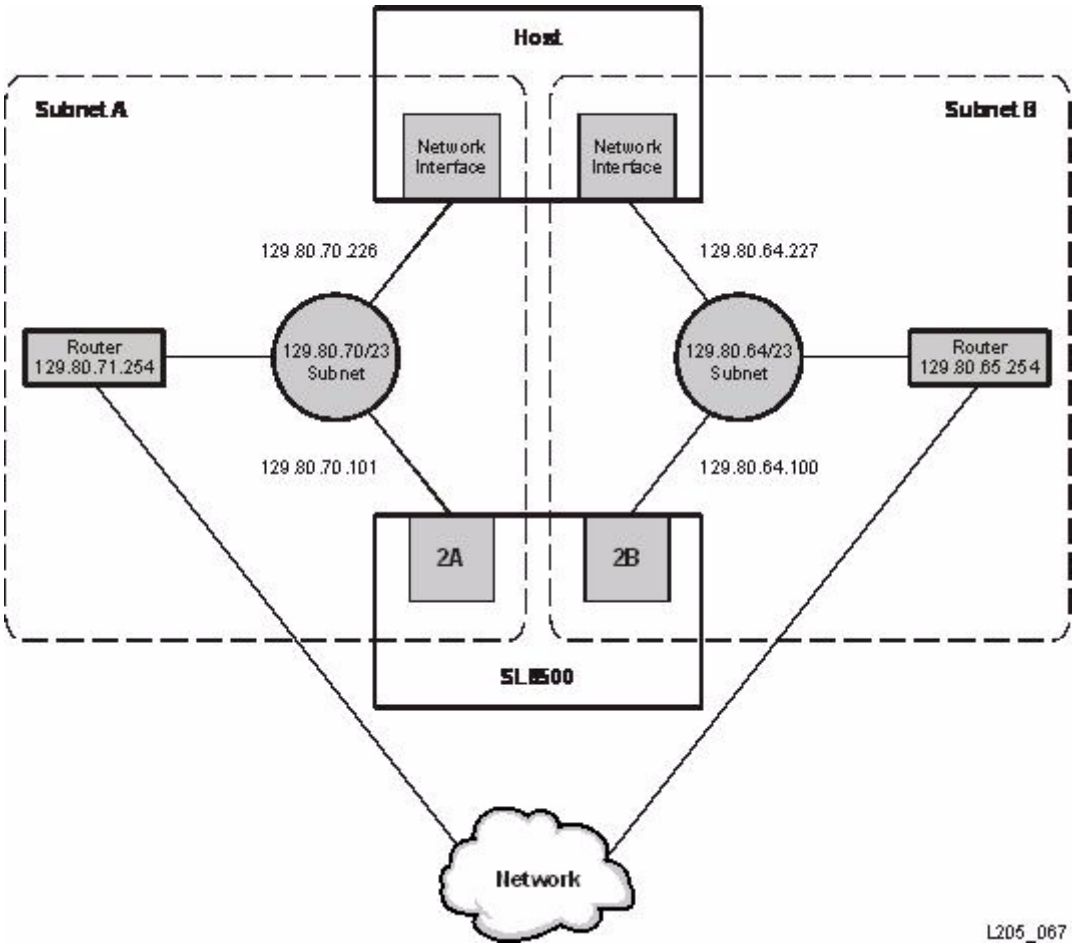
- MSP PTF LF61005 includes MVS PTF L1H131N

Multi-Homed Configuration on Two Subnets

Figure 59 illustrates a simple and easy-to-troubleshoot ACSLS/HSC configuration. In this topology, the route required to reach each network interface on the host can be described with a standard, static route.

- In this example, traffic sourced from the host for destination 129.80.70.101 (Port 2A) crosses through subnet A.
- Conditions on subnet B do not impact this path.
- Likewise, conditions on 129.80.64.100 (Port 2B) for subnet B do not impact subnet A.

Figure 59. Multi-Homed Host, Multi-Homed SL8500 on Two Subnets



SL8500 Routing Table:

Port	Destination	Gateway	Netmask
2A	129.80.70.0	*	255.255.254.0 (/23)
2B	129.80.64.0	*	255.255.254.0 (/23)

CLI Commands

The CLI commands to configure this example are:

Addresses

1. Take both ports down.
```
SL8500> network ip link set dev 2A down
SL8500> network ip link set dev 2B down
```
2. Add the **IP addresses** and **subnet masks** for both ports.
```
SL8500> network ip address add 129.80.70.101/23 dev 2A
SL8500> network ip address add 129.80.64.100/23 dev 2B
```
3. Bring both ports back up.
```
SL8500> network ip link set dev 2A up
SL8500> network ip link set dev 2B up
```

Routing

In this example, all connections are on the same subnet (129.80), so no special routing requirements are necessary. However, you may want to include a default gateway for the outside network connections.

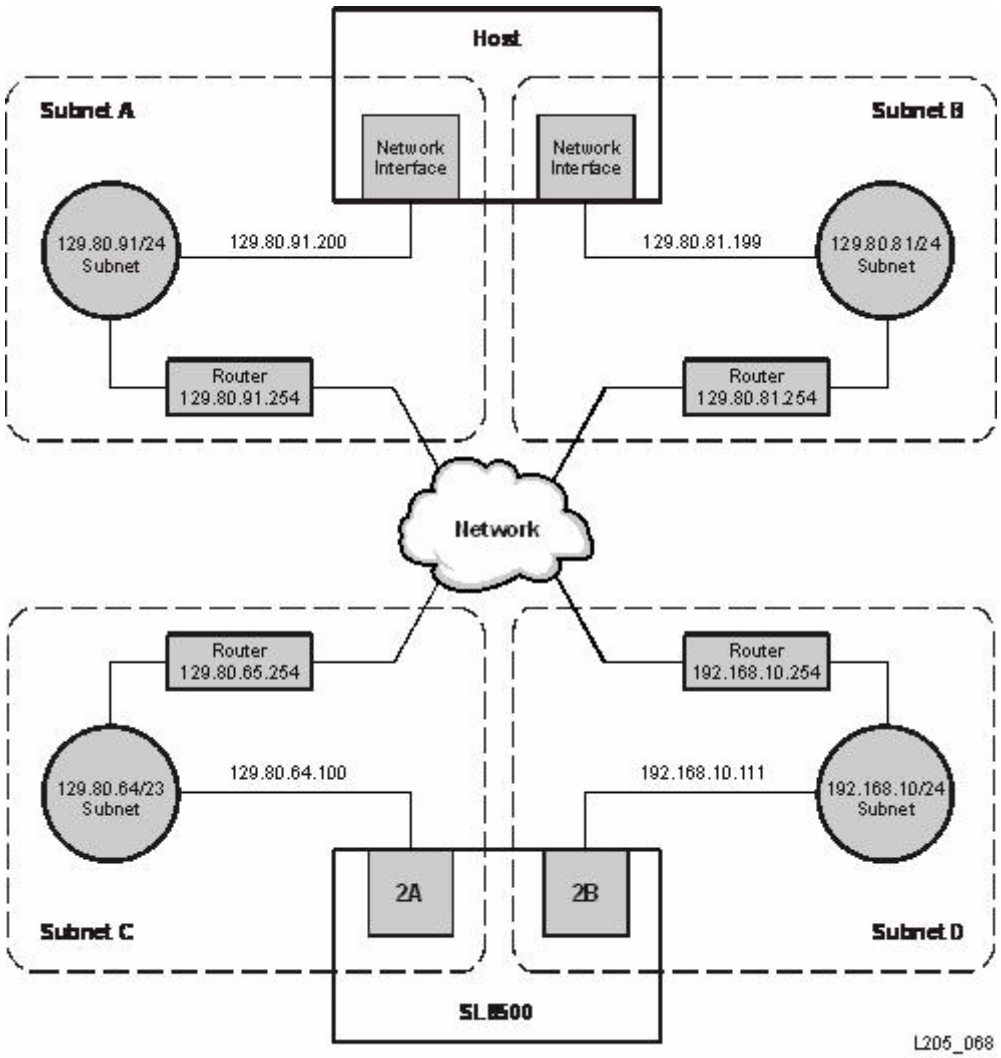
4. Add a default gateway for network access.
```
network ip route add default via 129.80.65.254
```

You must also configure the routing on the ACSLS server and/or system mainframes. Refer to the appropriate ACSLS or HSC documentation.

Multi-Homed Configuration with Different Subnets

Figure 60 illustrates distinct network paths within a large network. This is configured through static routing, but each destination route for each network must be defined. In this example, creating an association between destination networks permits us to specify two distinct paths; subnet A can only reach subnet C and subnet B can only reach subnet D.

Figure 60. Multi-Homed Host, Multi-Homed SL8500, Interfaces on Different Subnets



Host and SL8500 Routing Tables:

Host Routing Table		
Destination	Gateway	Netmask
129.80.91.0	*	255.255.255.0 (/24)
129.80.81.0	*	255.255.255.0 (/24)
129.80.64.0	129.80.91.254	255.255.254.0 (/23)
192.168.10.0	129.80.81.254	255.255.255.0 (/24)

SL8500 Routing Table		
Destination	Gateway	Netmask
192.168.10.0	*	255.255.255.0 (/24)
129.80.64.0	*	255.255.254.0 (/23)
129.80.91.0	129.80.65.254	255.255.255.0 (/24)
129.80.81.0	192.168.10.254	255.255.255.0 (/24)

CLI Commands

The CLI commands to configure this example are:

Addresses

1. Take both ports down.
```
SL8500> network ip link set dev 2A down
SL8500> network ip link set dev 2B down
```
2. Add the **IP addresses** and **subnet masks** for both ports.
```
SL8500> network ip address add 129.80.64.100/23 dev 2A
SL8500> network ip address add 192.168.10.111/24 dev 2B
```
3. Bring both ports back up.
```
SL8500> network ip link set dev 2A up
SL8500> network ip link set dev 2B up
```

Routing

Because this example is using *two* host IP address *into two* SL8500 ports and involves multiple routers, you need to describe the route using the router *closest* to the SL8500 (the format is host router address via SL8500 port router addresses).

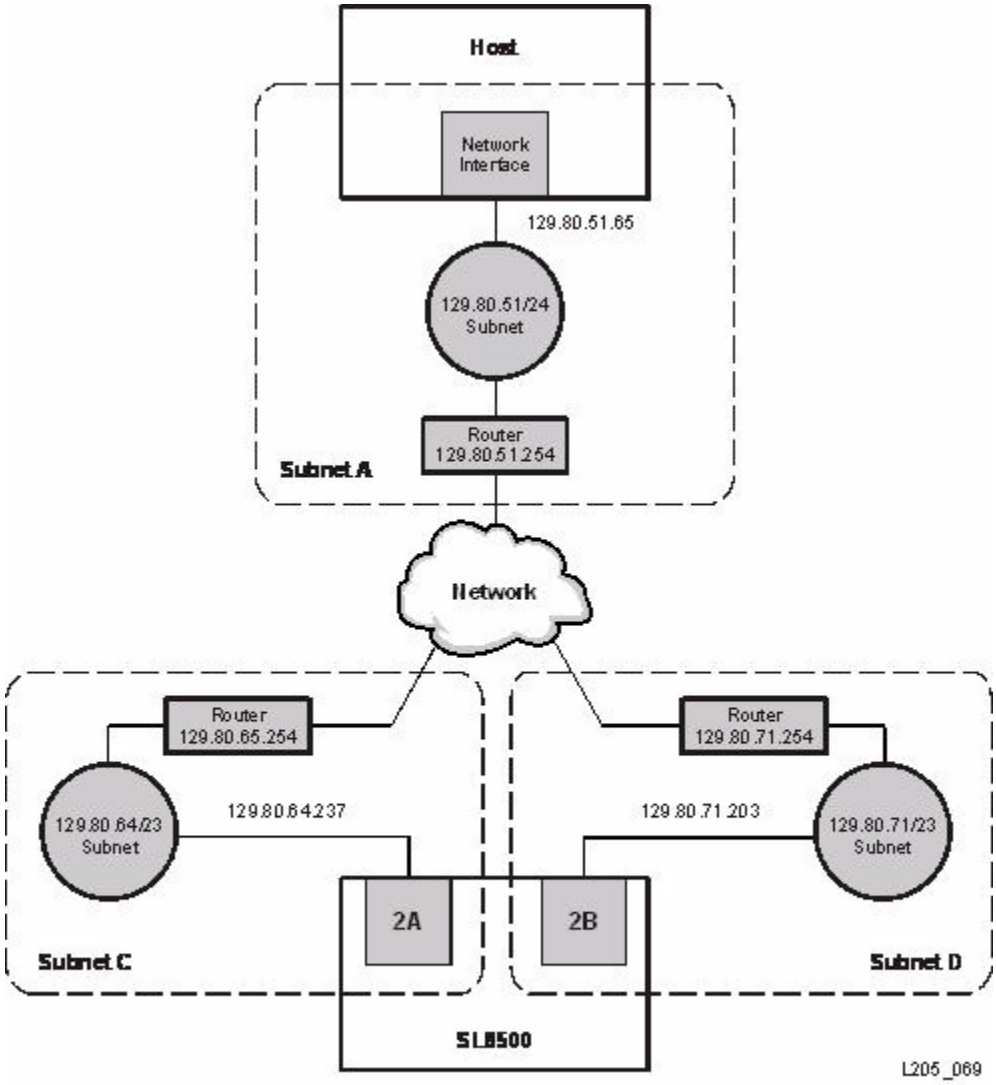
4. Add the route for host access through the subnets.
```
network ip route add 129.80.91.200 via 129.80.65.254
network ip route add 129.80.81.199 via 192.168.10.254
```

You must also configure the routing on the ACSLS server and/or system mainframes. Refer to the appropriate ACSLS or HSC documentation.

Single Interface Host with Multi-Homed SL8500

Figure 61 illustrates a single network interface. If set up incorrectly, loop problems may be encountered with this type of configuration.

Figure 61. Single Interface Host and Multi-Homed SL8500



Routing Tables (an example of using the policy routing command)

Port 2A Routing Table		
Destination	Gateway	Netmask
129.80.51.65	129.80.65.254	255.255.255.255 (/32)
Port 2B Routing Table		
129.80.51.65	129.80.71.254	255.255.255.255 (/32)
SL8500 Routing Table		
Destination	Gateway	Netmask
129.80.64.0	*	255.255.254.0 (/23)
129.80.71.0	*	255.255.254.0 (/23)
default (2B)	129.80.71.254	0.0.0.0

Notice the netmask for Ports 2A and 2B is /32. This value masks all other bits except the specific destination (host) IP address of 129.80.51.65 through the separate and unique gateway (router) IP addresses.

CLI Commands

Addresses

1. Take both ports down.
```
SL8500> network ip link set dev 2A down
SL8500> network ip link set dev 2B down
```
2. Add the **IP addresses** and **subnet masks** for both ports.
```
SL8500> network ip address add 129.80.64.237/23 dev 2A
SL8500> network ip address add 129.80.71.203/23 dev 2B
```
3. Bring both ports back up.
```
SL8500> network ip link set dev 2A up
SL8500> network ip link set dev 2B up
```

Routing

Because this example is using *one* host IP address *into two* SL8500 ports, you need to use the network ip policy routing commands.

4. Add the policy route for both ports.
```
SL8500> network ip policy route add 129.80.51.65 via 129.80.65.254 dev 2A
SL8500> network ip policy route add 129.80.51.65 via 129.80.71.254 dev 2B
```
5. Enable the policies.
```
SL8500> network ip policy enable dev 2A
SL8500> network ip policy enable dev 2B
```

No special routing is needed for this configuration for ACSLS or HSC.
Refer to the appropriate ACSLS or HSC documentation for more information.

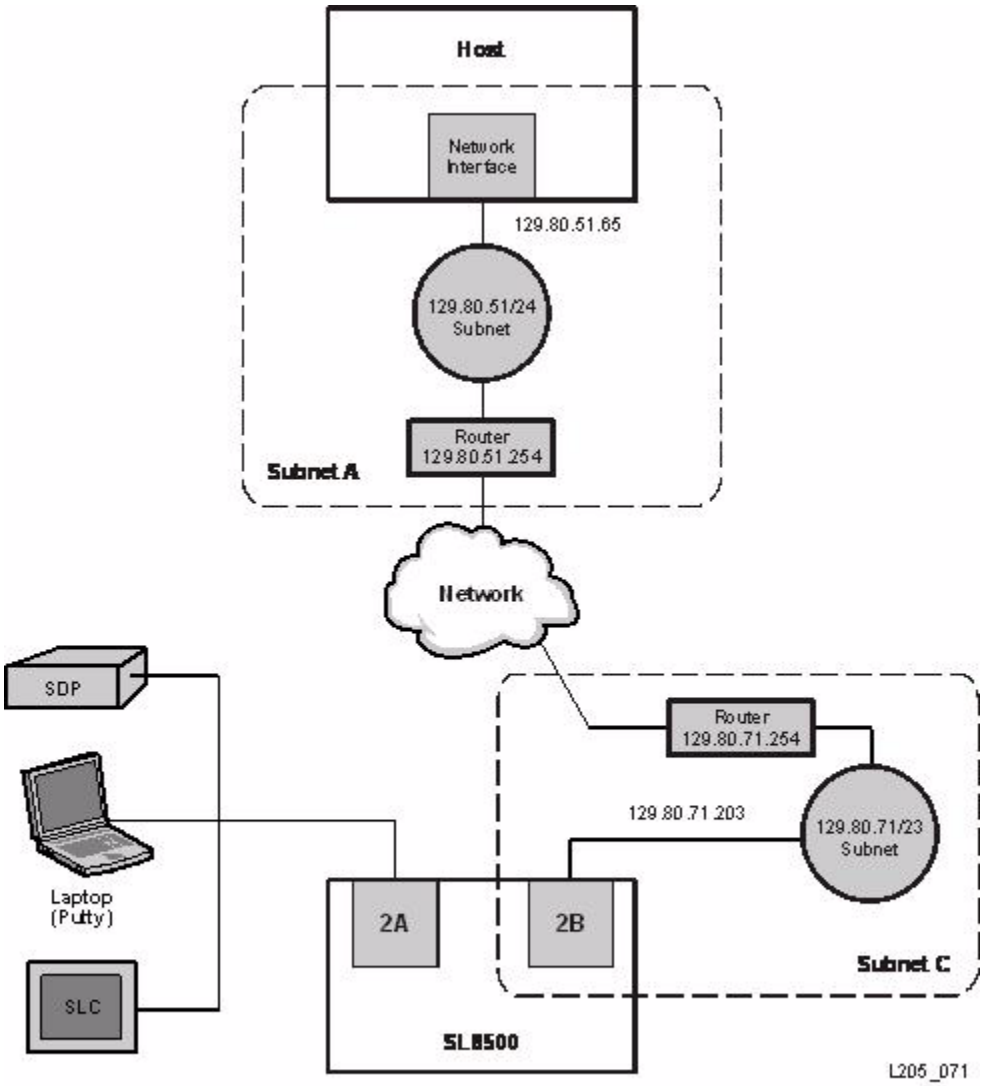
Service Connection

With the Dual TCP/IP feature, if the customer only has one connection into the SL8500, the second port (2A) can be used as a connection for service.

For example:

- Service Delivery Platform (SDP)
- Laptop (PC)
- StorageTek Library Console (SLC)

Figure 62. Dual TCP/IP Port 2A Service Connection



Potential Problems

While the SL8500's processor can auto-negotiate between 10 and 100 Mbps traffic, floods of address resolution protocol broadcasts (ARP is a network layer protocol that converts IP addresses into physical addresses) can overwhelm the library.

If the SL8500 is connected to shared networks, broadcast messages may be sent to all network nodes. While the library is receiving these irrelevant broadcasts, it cannot receive or reply to requests for library activity to the point that, to its host, it appears that the library's TCP/IP connection has been lost.

Similarly, heavy network traffic can overwhelm the Ethernet controller on the HBC card.

Shared Networks

The following are some examples of issues that can arise when you connect the SL8500 library to a shared network.

- A TCP/IP-connected library can handle standard host traffic, but it cannot handle floods of *Address Resolution Protocol* (ARP) broadcasts. **For this reason, it is best to attach the library on a controlled network, such as behind a switch or router.**
- Newer generation networks, such as 1000Base-T and Gig-E, support earlier communication modes—such as 10BaseT and 100BaseT. However, devices that are communicating with the library may transmit data at bandwidths that could overwhelm it. Again, for this reason, is best to **attach the library on a controlled network**, such as, with a switch that can isolate the library from network broadcasts.
- When you connect the library on shared networks, and broadcasts are sent to all network nodes, they may also be directed to the library (even though it does not need them). During the time the library is receiving these irrelevant broadcasts, it cannot receive requests or reply to others in a timely fashion. This heavy broadcast traffic on the network can saturate the library to the point that, to the host, it may appear that the TCP/IP connection has been lost.
- Heavy network traffic can also overwhelm the Ethernet controller causing the processor to continuously reset and re-initialize the controller, then recover the host-to-library communications.

Diagnosing TCP/IP Problems

If communication problems arise, problems can be diagnosed by using the following methods:

1. Use a “sniffer” (a device or program used to trace the network traffic for the library).
2. Display the port statistics on the switch or hub to which the library is connected. Search for any errors that were encountered.
3. Run a trace with the library management software that displays host-to-library packets and transmissions.

Solutions

If possible, use a dedicated private network for host management software-to-library communication.

If, however, a shared network is required, possible solutions are:

1. Directly connect the library to a switch that filters out undirected (broadcast) traffic.
2. Place the library on its own subnet—this may protect the library from receiving broadcast messages.
3. Use a managed switch—this can:
   - Set priorities on ports to supply the host and library with higher priority
   - Provide dedicated bandwidth between the host and library
   - Create a virtual local area network (VLAN) between the host and library
4. A virtual private network (VPN) can also insulate host-to-library traffic from other interference, such as irrelevant broadcasts.

Gigabit Ethernet Connections

The SL8500 library does not support native Gigabit Ethernet (Gig-E) connections.

Remember, the SL8500 network is only between the ACSLS server or HSC host and Gig-E communications and speed is not necessary.

When connecting to Gig-E networks, choose a switch or router that can convert to 100 Mbps for the library.

There is not an issue of what the customer puts on the other side of the server, host, or library to their clients.

Partitioning

H

The definition of a **partition** according to the Merriam–Webster dictionary is:

1. to divide into parts or shares.
2. to separate or divide by a partition, such as a wall.

In computing, many people are familiar with hard disk drive partitioning to create several logical divisions on the same hard drive. This separation allows administrators to apply different operating system functions, files, and formatting to the same physical hard drive. In layman's terms, partitioning a hard drive makes it appear to be more than one hard drive.

The SL8500 Modular Library System now provides the ability to partition the library—within hardware boundaries—to support from one to four physical partitions.

Purpose

Partitioning the SL8500 library means the customer can have:

- More than one operating system and application manage the library.
- An improvement in the protection or isolation of files.
- An increase in system and library performance.
- A higher level of data organization.
- An increase in user efficiency.

Partitions may be customized to fit different requirements, for example:

- allowing for special partitions to protect or archive data
- enabling multiple organizations, companies, or departments access
- isolating clients (such as for service centers)
- separating different encryption key groups
- dedicating partitions as test systems for new technologies or data migration to new tape drives

This appendix:

- Contains guidelines and essential elements for SL8500 partitions.
- Provides templates to help plan the partitioning of the library.
- Describes how to license and enable the partitioning feature.
- Shows how to partition the rails in the library.
- Describes how to override reserved cartridge access ports (CAPs)

Guidelines

Essential elements for understanding partitions are:

- **Clear communication between all parties,** such as system programmers, network administrators, both ACSLS and HSC administrators, and service representatives.
- Only a single library may be partitioned—pass-thru port (PTP) operations are not allowed. However, if libraries are currently connected using PTPs, and you—the customer—what to keep that structure for future development; a service representative can disconnect the local network interface and connections within the library to disable this configuration. Y*ou will not need to disassemble the complex.*
- Customers must be current on maintenance levels of their library management software (ACSLS and HSC).

  See the software and firmware requirements on page 210.
- Depending on the library configuration, each rail has:
  - Minimum capacity of *362* cartridges[1].
  - Maximum capacity of 2,522 cartridges[2].
  - From 1 to 16 tape drives.
- Each rail is the smallest element of a partition, but partitions may include more than one rail. If a partition includes more than one rail, those rails must be *adjacent*.
- Hosts with a common database—HSC hosts using a common Control Data Set (CDS)—can share a partition; these hosts are called a “host group.”

  A single HSC CDS cannot connect to more than one partition within the same SL8500 library; however, you can have one partition from each library in the same CDS. If you have two partitions in a library, you must also have two CDS; three partitions, three CDS.
- When partitioned, the library controller reports rails assigned to another partition within the library as “unallocated” (HSC) or as a new “SL8500_Unalloc LSM” (ACSLS). This provides two things:
  - It displays the entire library, and
  - If partitioning is changed (rails added to or removed from a partition), cartridge locations remain constant.

---

1. The basic configuration of an SL8500 library is 1,448 cartridges; spread across four LSMs provides 362 cartridges per rail.
2. The maximum configuration of an SL8500 library is 10,088 cartridges; spread across four LSMs provides 2,522 cartridges per rail.

Remember:

- Partitioned LSMs cannot communicate with other LSMs within the library unless they are in the same partition.
- Elevators and CAPs are *shared resources*—each partition can fully use these resources for enter and eject operations.
- No elevator pass-thru operations will occur between LSMs unless they are defined in the same partition, except when using the CAP to service Rail 1, regardless of its configured partition.
- Elevator operation is under the control of the library controller when CAP operations are issued. The library controller uses the elevators and HandBots to access the entire capacity of the CAPs for enters and ejects without regard for the partitions.
- Partitions can share the ownership of the CAPs. That is, if one host/partition has CAP A reserved, a different host/partition can have CAP B reserved, or one host/partition can have both CAPs reserved.
- Automatic mode is not supported in a partitioned library.
- Duplicate VOLSERs[3] are supported by the library; however, ACSLS and HSC do not, unless:
  - The duplicate VOLSERs are in different partitions.
  - With HSC managed partitions, the duplicate VOLSERs are in different control data sets.
  - With ACSLS managed partitions, the duplicate VOLSERs are on different ACSLS servers.
- All drives, storage slots and cartridges within a partition are solely owned by that host or host group.
- Library complex considerations:
  When breaking apart an established library complex to partition libraries within it, you need to understand the numbering and addressing scheme of the library.
- Rails do not need to be included in a partition, they can remain unassigned to allow for future growth.

3. VOLSER = volume serial number—the cartridge tape label.

Software and Firmware Requirements

Requirements for partitioning the SL8500 library include:

- Order number: SL8500-UPG-PART
- Upgrade number: XSL8500-UPG-PART
- Library firmware FRS_3.7x or higher
- StorageTek Library Console (SLC) at Version FRS_3.25 or higher
- ACSLS Versions 7.1 and 7.1.1 with PUT0701
- ACSLS HA 2 also requires PTF 6514766
- NCS (NearLine Control Solution) Version 6.1
- HSC (MVS) Version 6.1 with PTF L1H13GW and L1H13JK
- HSC (VM) Version 6.1 with PTF L1H13GX and L1H13JJ
- VSM (Virtual Storage Module) Versions 3, 4, or 5
- ExPR (Expert Performance Reported) with PTF L1E025H
- ExLM (Expert Library Manager) Version 6.0 with PTF L1L00F6, Version 6.1 (none), Version 6.2 with PTF L1L00F7

Hosts without the latest level of software (ACSLS or HSC) or without the latest PUTs and PTFs will not be able to bring a partitioned ACS online.

Always refer to the Customer Resource Center (CRC) for the latest versions of software, firmware, and documentation.

Capacities

Figure 63 shows an example of an SL8500 library with the capacities of each module; partition capacities per rail and per library configuration, plus drive modules (from 1 to 16 tape drives) for each rail.

Figure 63. Partition Planning and Capacities

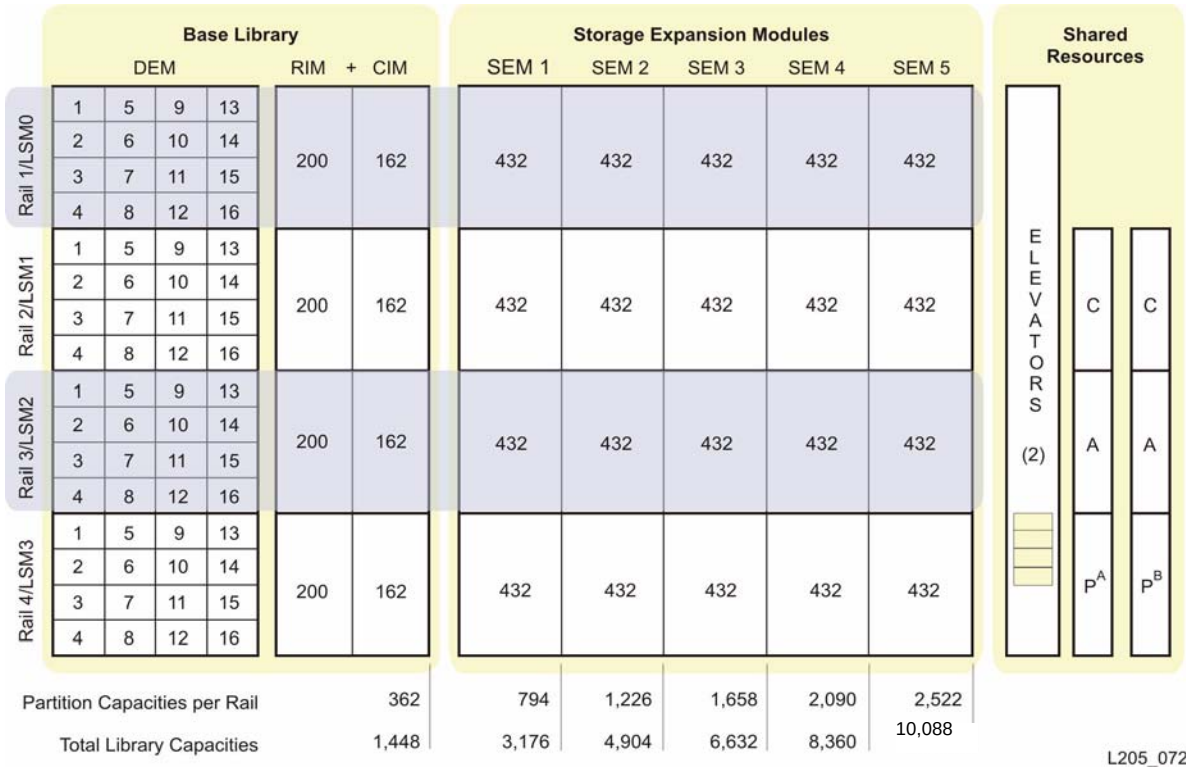


Table 94. Partitioned Capacities

	Library Configuration	Partition Capacity per Rail
Basic Library	Drive & Electronics Module	0
	Robotics Interface Module	200
	Customer Interface Module	162
	Base configuration per rail (total)	362
Expansion Modules	When adding expansion module, each *rail* gets **432** additional *data* cartridge slots	
	One expansion module	794
	Two expansion modules	1,226
	Three expansion modules	1,658
	Four expansion modules	2,090
	Five expansion modules (maximum)	2,522

Tasks

Use Table 95 to help prepare for partitioning.

Table 95. Steps and Tasks for Partitioning

✓	Step	Task	Reference	Responsibility*
❑	1. Team	Create a Team. When planning for partitions, using a process similar to that of the system assurance process, which is the exchange of information among team members. Team members should include representatives from both the customer and StorageTek to ensure that all aspects of the process are planned carefully and performed efficiently.		• Customer • SE, PS • Svc Rep
❑	2. Codes	Review the software and firmware requirements. Update as required.	"Software and Firmware Requirements" on page 210	• Customer • SE, PS • Svc Rep
❑	3. Planning	• Create a planning team • Define the customer expectations • Complete the assessment • Identify the configurations • Complete the planning diagrams	"Planning" on page 213	• Customer • SE, PS • Svc Rep
❑	4. Media	• Verify the distribution of cartridges and required tape drives are available and ready.		• Customer
❑	5. Library	• Convert a complex (if necessary).	SL8500 Partitioning Technical Brief (PN 96269)	• Svc Rep
❑	6. License	• License the partitioning feature and create the library partitions.		• Svc Rep
❑	7. Hosts	• Momentarily stop all host activity. • Make the hosts inaccessible.		• Customer
❑	8. Use	Instruct the customer how to: • Partition and re-partition • Override a CAP reservation		• Customer • Svc Rep

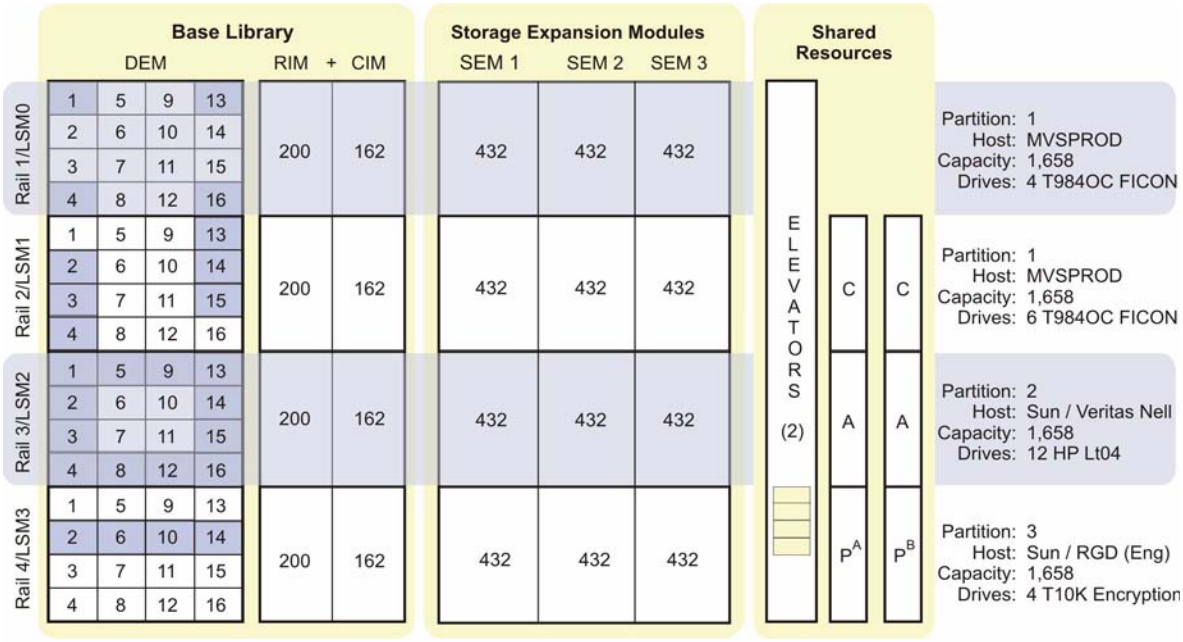
- SE = Systems engineer
- PS = Professional services representative
- Service = Service representative (Svc Rep)
- Customer = System administrators, network administrators, system programmers, operators

Planning

Identify and define the customer requirements and expectations	
Identify the proposed configurations	
Complete the following assessment:	
Is this a new installation or an existing installation?	New: ❑ Existing: ❑ If existing, cartridge migration may be required to configure the partitions correctly. Cartridge migration required? Yes ❑ No ❑
How many partitions are there going to be in the library?	
How many rails are there going to be for a partition? Remember to configure the elevator for use between partitions.	1. 2. 3. 4.
What is the name and purpose for each partition?	1. 2. 3. 4.
What type of operating systems for each partition?	1. 2. 3. 4.
What type of library management software for each partition? Make sure the customer has the latest versions and updates. See page 210 for information.	1. ACSLS: ❑ HSC: ❑ 2. ACSLS: ❑ HSC: ❑ 3. ACSLS: ❑ HSC: ❑ 4. ACSLS: ❑ HSC: ❑
What type of applications are being used?	1. 2. 3. 4.
How many cartridges are needed for each partition?	1. 2. 3. 4.
How many free slots are needed for each partition?	1. 2. 3. 4.
What are the tape drive types and quantities?	1. 2. 3. 4.
• Complete a plan using the figures in this chapter as an example. • Place this information with the library.	

Figure 64 provides an example to show the flexibility that partitions provide for host connections, applications, capacities, tape drive types and interfaces.

Figure 64. Partition Planning Example



Rail 1 and Rail 2 Combined as one Partition (ACS 0)			
Partition ID	**hli1** / MVS combined	Partition ID	**hli1** / MVS combined
Hosts	z/OS V1R1	Hosts	z/OS V1R1
ACSLS or HSC	HSC Version 6.1	ACSLS or HSC	HSC Version 6.1
Applications	Tivoli Version 5.3	Applications	Tivoli Version 5.3
Cartridge capacity	1,000	Cartridge capacity	580
Free slots	658	Free slots	1,078
Tape Drive types	4 T9840 C FICON	Tape Drive types	6 T9840 C FICON

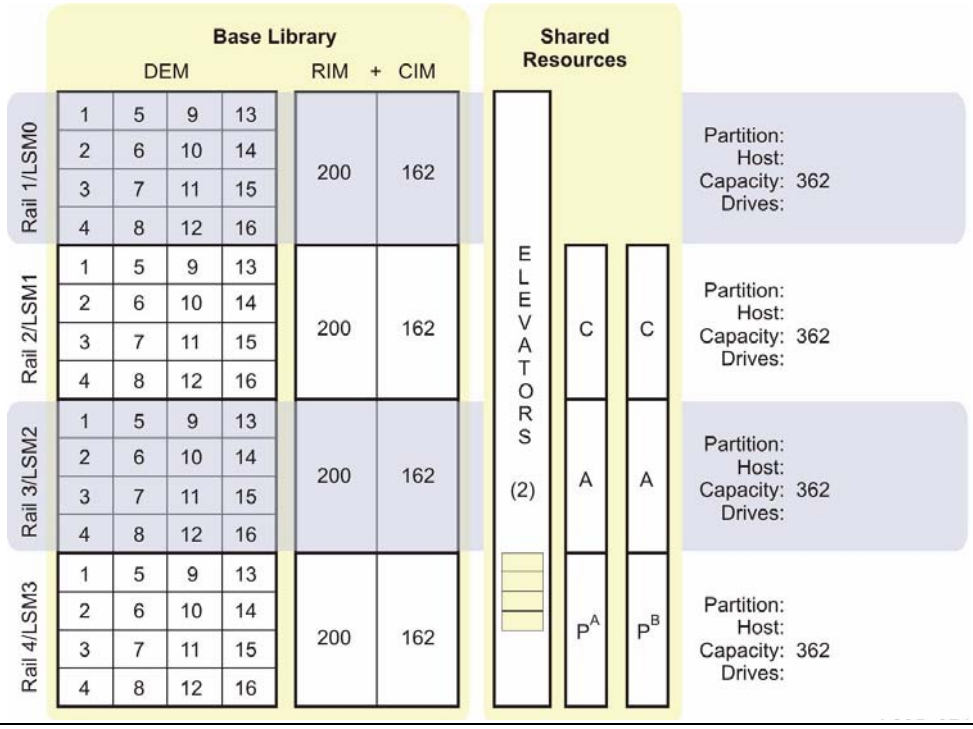
Rail 3 (ACS 1)	
Partition ID	**hli2** / Open Systems
Hosts	Solaris 9
ACSLS or HSC	ACSLS
Applications	Veritas NBU 4.5 Media Manager DataCenter
Cartridge capacity	1106
Free slots	552
Tape Drive types	12 HP LTO 3, 2Gb FC

Rail 4 (ACS 2)	
Partition ID	**hli3** / Encryption
Hosts	Solaris 10
ACSLS or HSC	ACSLS
Applications	Oracle, Siebel, SAP, SQL, NetWorker
Cartridge capacity	830
Free slots	828
Tape Drive types	4 T10K, 4Gb FC, Crypto

Figure 65 on page 215 through Figure 70 on page 220 provide work sheets for planning partitions with the six different library configurations.

Make copies as necessary.

Figure 65. Base Library Partition Planning



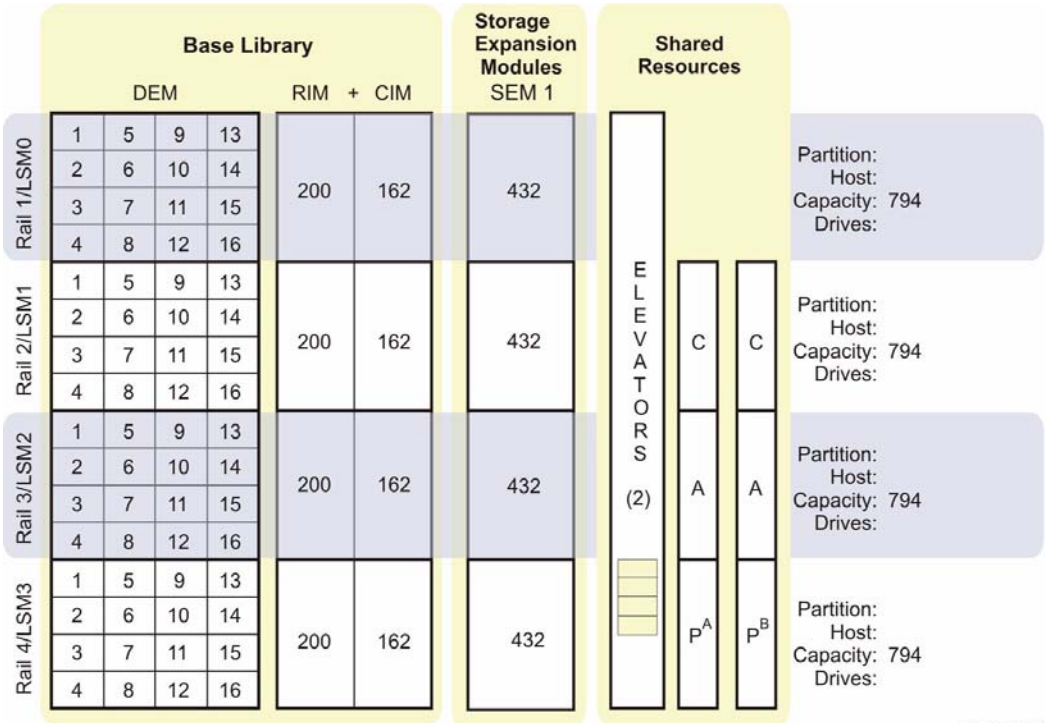
Rail 1	
Partition ID	
Hosts	
ACSLS or HSC	
ACS, LSM Address	
Applications	
Cartridge capacity	
Free slots	
Tape Drive types	

Rail 2	
Partition ID	
Hosts	
ACSLS or HSC	
ACS, LSM Address	
Applications	
Cartridge capacity	
Free slots	
Tape Drive types	

Rail 3	
Partition ID	
Hosts	
ACSLS or HSC	
ACS, LSM Address	
Applications	
Cartridge capacity	
Free slots	
Tape Drive types	

Rail 4	
Partition ID	
Hosts	
ACSLS or HSC	
ACS, LSM Address	
Applications	
Cartridge capacity	
Free slots	
Tape Drive types	

Figure 66. One Expansion Module Partition Planning



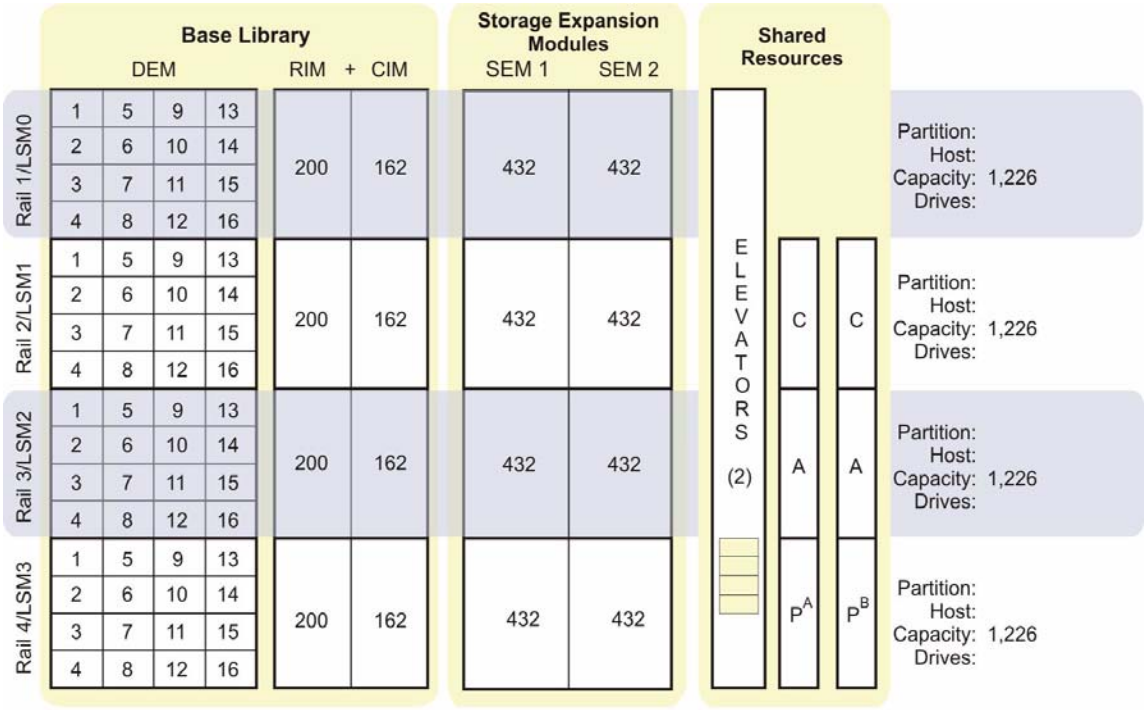
Rail 1	
Partition ID	
Hosts	
ACSLS or HSC	
ACS, LSM Address	
Applications	
Cartridge capacity	
Free slots	
Tape Drive types	

Rail 2	
Partition ID	
Hosts	
ACSLS or HSC	
ACS, LSM Address	
Applications	
Cartridge capacity	
Free slots	
Tape Drive types	

Rail 3	
Partition ID	
Hosts	
ACSLS or HSC	
ACS, LSM Address	
Applications	
Cartridge capacity	
Free slots	
Tape Drive types	

Rail 4	
Partition ID	
Hosts	
ACSLS or HSC	
ACS, LSM Address	
Applications	
Cartridge capacity	
Free slots	
Tape Drive types	

Figure 67. Two Expansion Modules Partition Planning



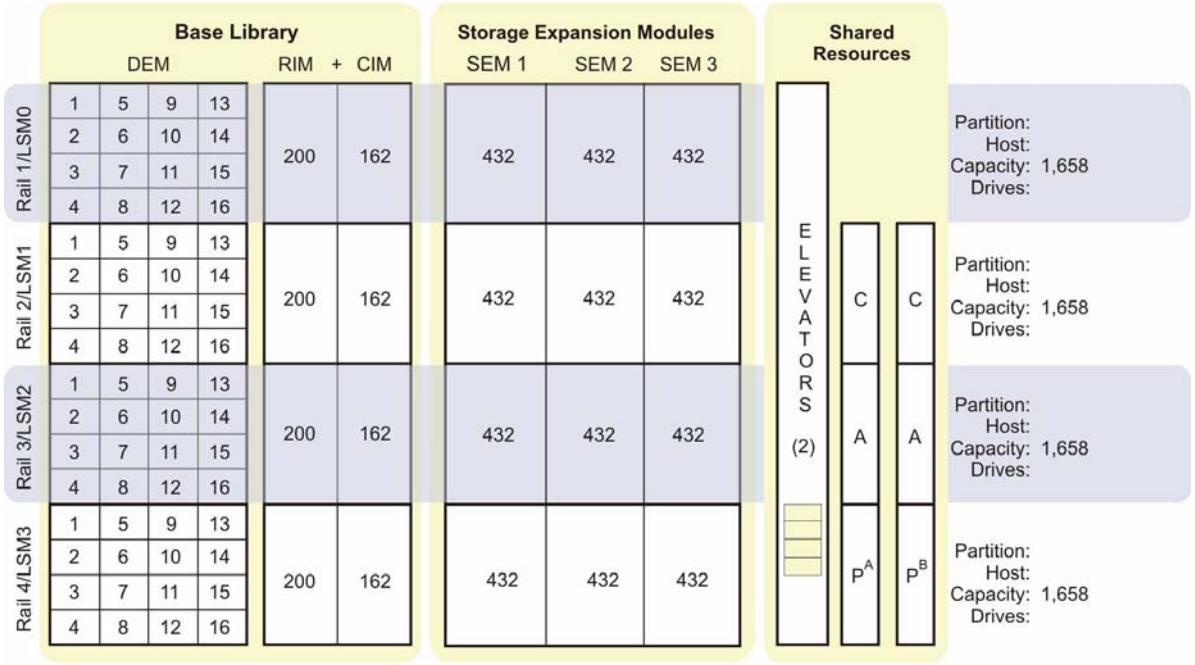
Rail 1	
Partition ID	
Hosts	
ACSLS or HSC	
ACS, LSM Address	
Applications	
Cartridge capacity	
Free slots	
Tape Drive types	

Rail 2	
Partition ID	
Hosts	
ACSLS or HSC	
ACS, LSM Address	
Applications	
Cartridge capacity	
Free slots	
Tape Drive types	

Rail 3	
Partition ID	
Hosts	
ACSLS or HSC	
ACS, LSM Address	
Applications	
Cartridge capacity	
Free slots	
Tape Drive types	

Rail 4	
Partition ID	
Hosts	
ACSLS or HSC	
ACS, LSM Address	
Applications	
Cartridge capacity	
Free slots	
Tape Drive types	

Figure 68. Three Expansion Modules Partition Planning



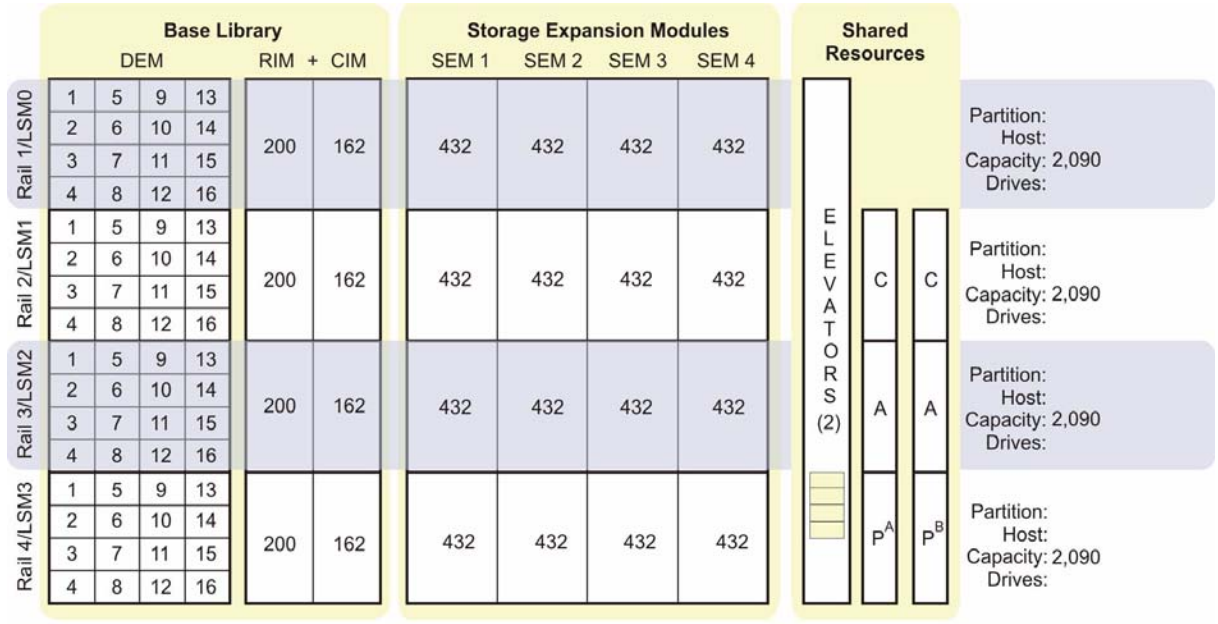
Rail 1	
Partition ID	
Hosts	
ACSLS or HSC	
ACS, LSM Address	
Applications	
Cartridge capacity	
Free slots	
Tape Drive types	

Rail 2	
Partition ID	
Hosts	
ACSLS or HSC	
ACS, LSM Address	
Applications	
Cartridge capacity	
Free slots	
Tape Drive types	

Rail 3	
Partition ID	
Hosts	
ACSLS or HSC	
ACS, LSM Address	
Applications	
Cartridge capacity	
Free slots	
Tape Drive types	

Rail 4	
Partition ID	
Hosts	
ACSLS or HSC	
ACS, LSM Address	
Applications	
Cartridge capacity	
Free slots	
Tape Drive types	

Figure 69. Four Expansion Modules Partition Planning



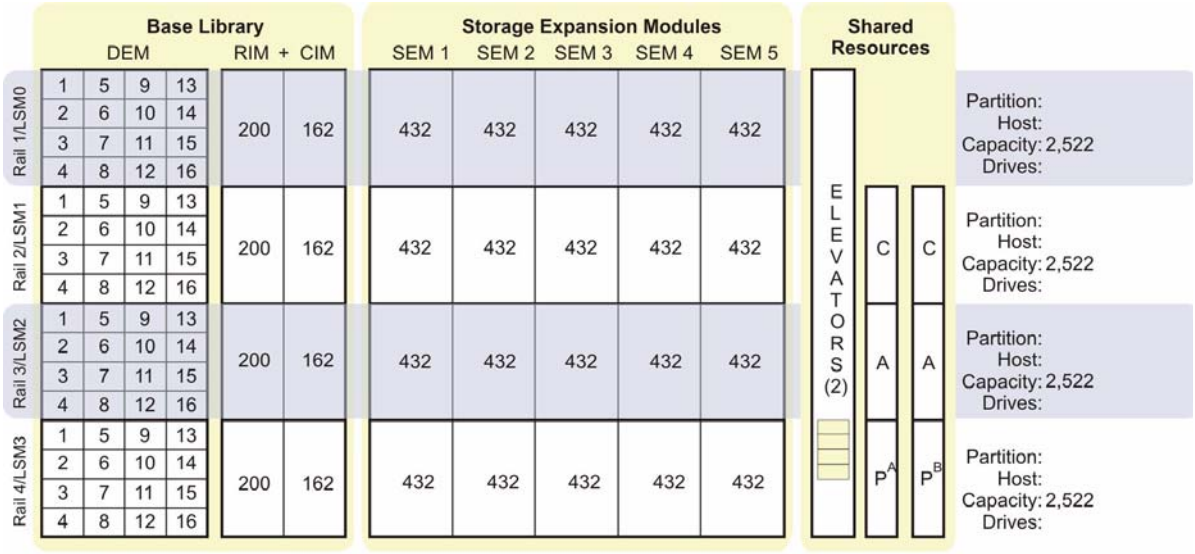
Rail 1	
Partition ID	
Hosts	
ACSLS or HSC	
ACS, LSM Address	
Applications	
Cartridge capacity	
Free slots	
Tape Drive types	

Rail 2	
Partition ID	
Hosts	
ACSLS or HSC	
ACS, LSM Address	
Applications	
Cartridge capacity	
Free slots	
Tape Drive types	

Rail 3	
Partition ID	
Hosts	
ACSLS or HSC	
ACS, LSM Address	
Applications	
Cartridge capacity	
Free slots	
Tape Drive types	

Rail 4	
Partition ID	
Hosts	
ACSLS or HSC	
ACS, LSM Address	
Applications	
Cartridge capacity	
Free slots	
Tape Drive types	

Figure 70. Five Expansion Modules Partition Planning



Rail 1	
Partition ID	
Hosts	
ACSLS or HSC	
ACS, LSM Address	
Applications	
Cartridge capacity	
Free slots	
Tape Drive types	

Rail 2	
Partition ID	
Hosts	
ACSLS or HSC	
ACS, LSM Address	
Applications	
Cartridge capacity	
Free slots	
Tape Drive types	

Rail 3	
Partition ID	
Hosts	
ACSLS or HSC	
ACS, LSM Address	
Applications	
Cartridge capacity	
Free slots	
Tape Drive types	

Rail 4	
Partition ID	
Hosts	
ACSLS or HSC	
ACS, LSM Address	
Applications	
Cartridge capacity	
Free slots	
Tape Drive types	

Multi-Host Connectivity

I

The newest host connectivity feature to an SL8500 Library Complex is the Multi-Host feature. This feature allows up to *four* connections to a library complex that contains 2 or more libraries.

Requirements

Order numbers for multiple host connections to an SL8500 library are:

- Number: XSL8500-MTCPIP

Requirements include the following levels or *higher*:

- Library firmware **FRS_3.95**
- StorageTek Library Console at Version FRS_3.38

- ACSLS Versions 7.1 and 7.1.1 with PUT0701
- ACSLS HA 2 also requires PTF 6514766

or

- NCS (NearLine Control Solution) Version 6.1
- HSC (MVS) Version 6.1 with PTF L1H13GW and L1H13JK
- HSC (VM) Version 6.1 with PTF L1H13GX and L1H13JJ

Note: Upgrading library firmware can be a disruption to customer operations. You may want to schedule time to perform this service.

Hosts without the latest level of software (ACSLS or HSC) or without the latest PUTs and PTFs will not be able to use multiple connections to a library complex.

Software and firmware levels can be downloaded and ready in advance of activation. When the time and window is available, these codes can be activated. This preparation can limit down time of the library and operating system.

Library Management Software

Both ACSLS **or** HSC can support up to *four* connections to an SL8500 Library Complex, also called an ACS.

Specifics for ACSLS

When ACSLS has two connections to one SL8500, you must configure the SL8500 and ACSLS server routing tables. Refer to the *ACSLS Installation, Configuration, and Administrator Guide* ➪ ACSLS Dual TCP/IP Support section for more information.

Make the first connection that you specify in `acsss_config` or `config acs new` to the SL8500 library with the most activity.

Specifics for HSC

When HSC has two connections to one SL8500, refer to the: *HSC Systems Programmers Guide* ➪ Appendix A: HSC Support for the SL8500 Library ➪ TCP/IP Communications ➪ Important Considerations section for more information.

Optimization: HSC will distribute communications to the libraries evenly. Connections to multiple libraries distribute the communication with HSC among all of the connected libraries, as opposed to having one library handle all communication with HSC.

The following example shows multiple LMUADDR parameters consisting of four IP addresses. In this case, the first, second, third, and fourth IP addresses indicate a TCP/IP connection to each of four separate SL8500 libraries connected in ACS 00.

Table 96. HSC LMU Path and Address Parameters

LMUPATH ACS(00) LMUADDR(123.456.789.012,123.456.789.013,123.456.789.014,123.456.789.015)

Host Connections

For example, connections can be:

- Four connections to four separate SL8500 libraries (Figure 71.)
- Two connections each of two SL8500 libraries (Figure 72.)
- Two connections to one library plus two other connections (Figure 73.)

Important:
To optimize library performance and minimize inter-library communication among the SL8500s, ***connect to the libraries with the most activity.***

Multi-Host Network Entries Work Sheet

When preparing the network and connections—as a best practice—complete a network entries worksheet for each port of the SL8500 library.

Description		IP Address / Name
Connection 1	HBC Card Port: 2A ❑ 2B ❑	
	Host name	
	Gateway	
	Netmask	
Connection 2	HBC Card Port: 2A ❑ 2B ❑	
	Host name	
	Gateway	
	Netmask	
Connection 3	HBC Card Port: 2A ❑ 2B ❑	
	Host name	
	Gateway	
	Netmask	
Connection 4	HBC Card Port: 2A ❑ 2B ❑	
	Host name	
	Gateway	
	Netmask	

Important:

- When connecting more than one interface to an SL8500 library or library complex, the connections should be at least two different subnets for redundancy.

  If one subnet fails, communications between the hosts and the libraries continue over the other subnets.

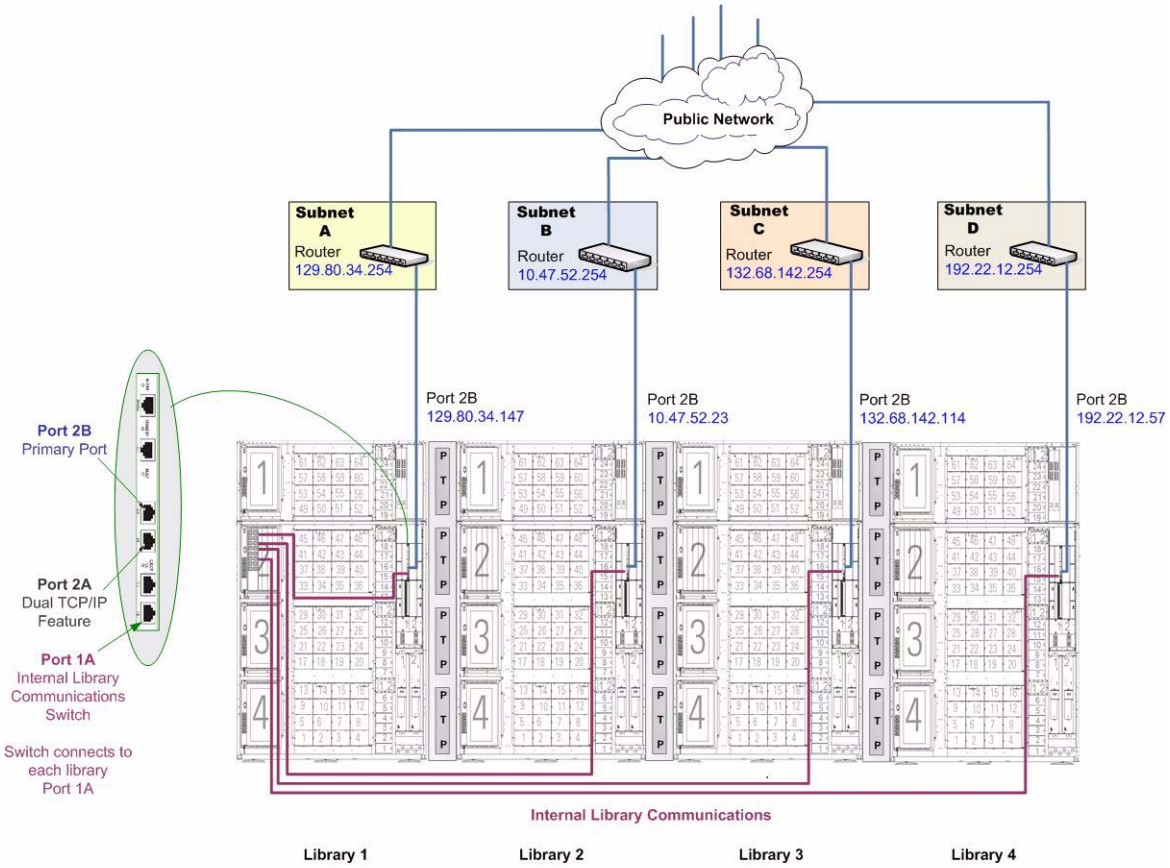
- When connecting an interface to Port 2A, a service representative must configure routing and possibly assign policies for that port using the command line interface.

  Port 2B is the default port for the library, no routing tables are required when connecting to that port.

- **The ports need to be on different Layer 2 broadcast domains**.

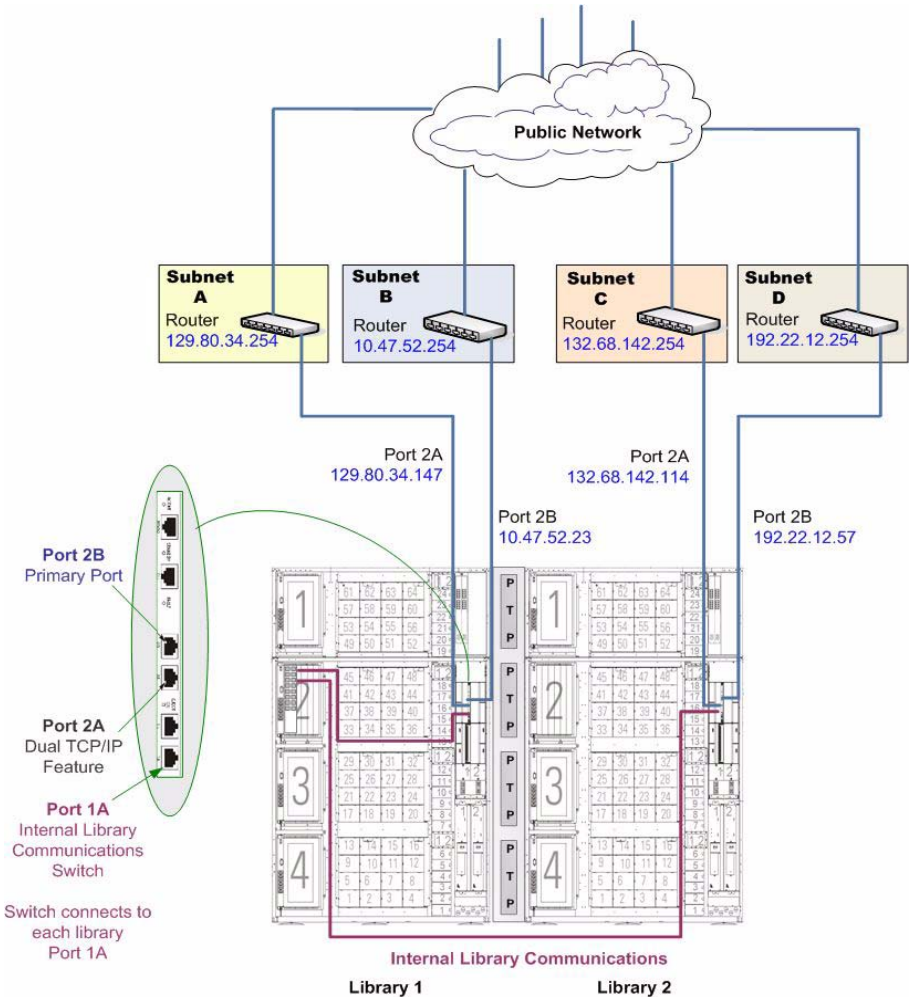
Configuration Examples

Figure 71. Multi-Host Configuration—Four Libraries with Four Host Connections



Components	Library 1	Library 2	Library 3	Library 4
Expansion Modules	One	Two	Three	Three
Library Firmware	FRS_3.96	FRS_3.96	FRS_3.96	FRS_3.96
Library Console	3.38	3.38	3.38	3.38
Software	ACSLS 7.1 or HSC 6.1	ACSLS 7.1 or HSC 6.1	ACSLS 7.1 or HSC 6.1	ACSLS 7.1 or HSC 6.1
IP Address	129.80.34.147	10.47.52.23	132.68.142.114	192.22.12.57
LSMs	0, 1, 2, 3	4, 5, 6, 7	8, 9, 10, 11	12, 13, 14, 15
Features:				
Pass-thru Port	Yes	Yes	Yes	—
Dual TCP/IP	No — The Multi-Host feature provides this connectivity.			
Partitioning	Not supported	Not supported	Not supported	Not supported
Multi-Host	Yes — Optional feature that supports up to four host connections to a library complex.			

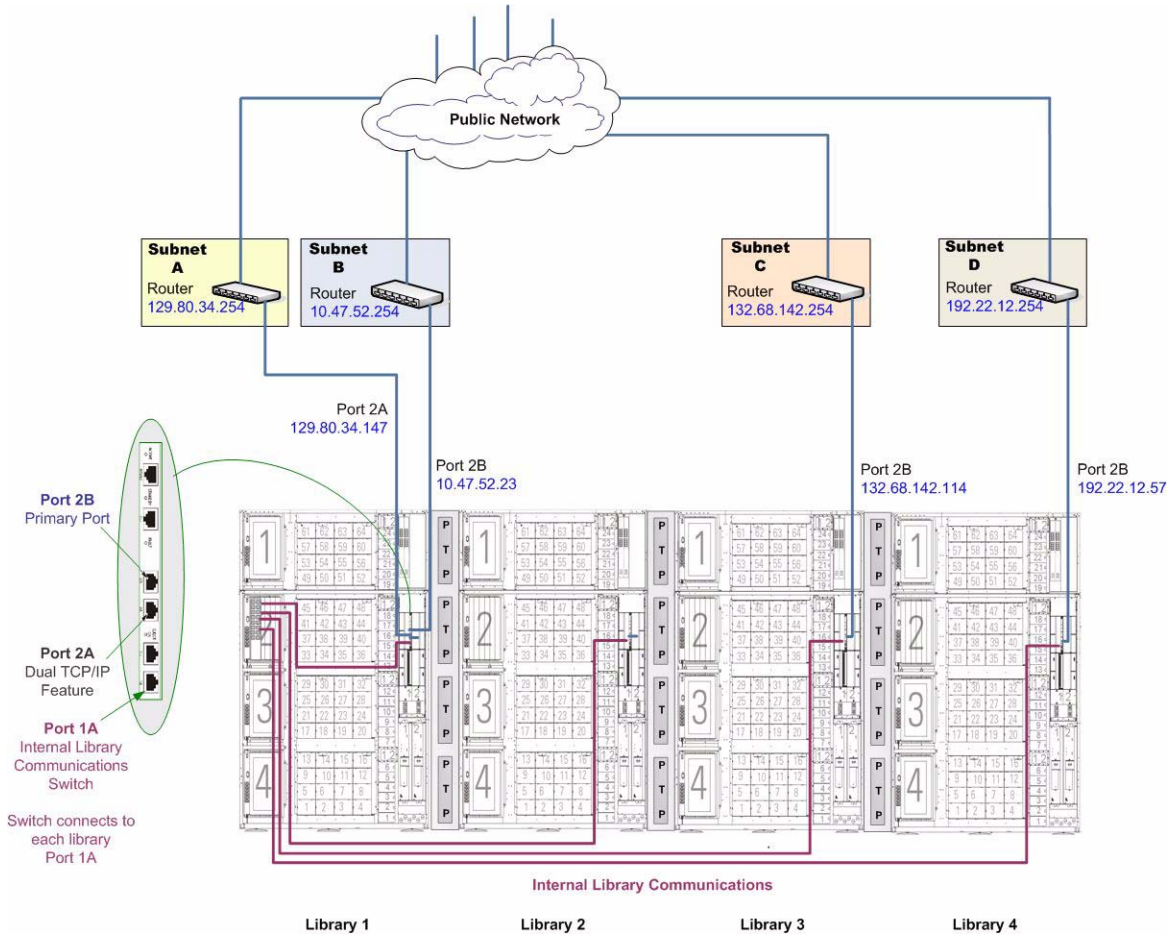
Figure 72. Multi-Host Configuration—Two Libraries with Four Host Connections



Components	Library 1		Library 2	
Expansion Modules	One		Two	
Library Firmware	FRS_3.96		FRS_3.96	
Software	ACSLS 7.1 or HSC 6.1		ACSLS 7.1 or HSC 6.1	
Port: IP Address	**2A:** 129.80.34.147	**2B:** 10.47.52.23	**2A:** 132.68.142.114	**2B:** 192.22.12.57
LSMs	0, 1, 2, 3		4, 5, 6, 7	
Features:				
Pass-thru Port	Yes		—	
Dual TCP/IP	No — The Multi-Host feature provides this connectivity.			
Partitioning	Not supported		Not supported	
Multi-Host	Yes — Optional feature that supports up to four host connections to a library complex.			

- Note: Because both Library 1 and Library 2 have a connection to Port 2A, a service representative must configure routing tables and possibly assign policies for those ports using the command line interface.

Figure 73. Multi-Host Configuration—with Two Plus Two Host Connections



Components	Library 1	Library 2	Library 3	Library 4
Expansion Modules	One	Two	Three	Three
Library Firmware	FRS_3.96	FRS_3.96	FRS_3.96	FRS_3.96
Library Console	3.38	3.38	3.38	3.38
Software	ACSLS 7.1 or HSC 6.1	ACSLS 7.1 or HSC 6.1	ACSLS 7.1 or HSC 6.1	ACSLS 7.1 or HSC 6.1
IP Address	129.80.34.147	10.47.52.23	132.68.142.114	192.22.12.57
LSMs	0, 1, 2, 3	4, 5, 6, 7	8, 9, 10, 11	12, 13, 14, 15
Features:				
Pass-thru Port	Yes	Yes	Yes	—
Dual TCP/IP	No — The Multi-Host feature provides this connectivity.			
Partitioning	Not supported	Not supported	Not supported	Not supported
Multi-Host	Yes — Optional feature that supports up to four host connections to a library complex.			

- Note: Because Library 1 has a connection to Port 2A, a service representative must configure routing and possibly assign policies for that port using the command line interface.

Work Sheets

J

This appendix provides work sheets to help plan the host connections, content and partition planning for the SL8500 and includes:

- “Host Selection Checklist” on page 228
- “Network Entries Work Sheet” on page 229
- “Multi-Host Network Entries Work Sheet” on page 230
- “Content Management Work Sheet” on page 231
- “Partition Planning—Base Library” on page 232
- “Partition Planning—One Expansion Module” on page 233
- “Partition Planning—Two Expansion Modules” on page 234
- “Partition Planning—Three Expansion Modules” on page 235
- “Partition Planning—Four Expansion Modules” on page 236
- “Partition Planning—Five Expansion Modules” on page 237

Host Selection Checklist

Table 97. Host Selection Checklist and Requirements

Configuration	Port	Firmware	Comments
Single	Port 2B only	All versions	This is the simplest type of host connection to the library. *Supports:* Single host/library management software (ACSLS or HSC).
Library Complex	Port 2B only	FRS_2.00	*Optional Feature.* Connects two or more libraries together using pass-thru ports. Connect up to 10 libraries together for the complex. *Supports:* Single host/library management software (ACSLS or HSC).
Dual TCP/IP	Port 2B primary Port 2A optional	FRS_3.08	*Optional Feature.* Provides two separate paths for host connections to the library or complex. Separate, not redundant. Redundancy is provided in the network design. *Supports:* Single host/library management software (ACSLS or HSC).
Partitioned	Port 2B primary Port 2A optional	FRS_3.7x	*Optional Feature.* *Supports:* Dual TCP/IP feature (ACSLS and/or HSC).
Multi-Host	Port 2B primary Port 2A optional	FRS_3.95	*Optional Feature.* Provides up to *four* separate paths for host connections to a library complex. Separate, not redundant. Redundancy is provided in the network design. *Supports:* Single host/library management software (ACSLS or HSC).
Redundant Electronics See page 38	**HBC1:** Port 2B primary Port 2A optional **HBC2:** Port 2B primary Port 2A optional	FRS_6.xx	*Optional Feature.* Provides a second set of electronics in the event that the first set becomes inoperable. *Supports:* A dual set of electronics. *Supports:* Single host/library management software (ACSLS or HSC). If using a partitioning feature supports Dual host/library management software (ACSLS and/or HSC).
Note: The SL8500 library uses a TCP/IP protocol over an Ethernet physical interface to manage and communicate with the host and library management applications. This interface enables either: - Open system platforms with ACSLS or - Enterprise-level mainframes with HSC to connect to and communicate with the SL8500.			

Network Entries Work Sheet

When preparing the network and connections—as a best practice—complete a network entries worksheet for each port of the SL8500 library.

Description		IP Address
Port 2B	Host name to Port 2B	
	HBC Card Port 2B	
	Gateway Port 2B	
	Netmask	
Port 2A	Host name to Port 2A	
	HBC Card Port 2A	
	Gateway Port 2A	
	Netmask	

Important:

- When connecting more than one interface to an SL8500 library, the connections should be through different subnets for redundancy.

  If one subnet fails, communications between the hosts and the libraries continue over the other subnets.

- When connecting an interface to Port 2A, a service representative must configure routing and possibly assign policies for that port using the command line interface.

  Port 2B is the preferred port for host attachments to the library, no routing tables are required when connecting to that port.

- **The ports need to be on different Layer 2 broadcast domains**.

Multi-Host Network Entries Work Sheet

When preparing the network and connections—as a best practice—complete a network entries worksheet for each port of the SL8500 library.

Description		IP Address / Name
Connection 1	HBC Card Port: 2A ❑ 2B ❑	
	Host name	
	Gateway	
	Netmask	
Connection 2	HBC Card Port: 2A ❑ 2B ❑	
	Host name	
	Gateway	
	Netmask	
Connection 3	HBC Card Port: 2A ❑ 2B ❑	
	Host name	
	Gateway	
	Netmask	
Connection 4	HBC Card Port: 2A ❑ 2B ❑	
	Host name	
	Gateway	
	Netmask	

Important:

- When connecting more than one interface to an SL8500 library or library complex, the connections should be at least two different subnets for redundancy.

  If one subnet fails, communications between the hosts and the libraries continue over the other subnets.

- When connecting an interface to Port 2A, a service representative must configure routing and possibly assign policies for that port using the command line interface.

  Port 2B is the preferred port for host attachments to the library, no routing tables are required when connecting to that port.

- **The ports need to be on different Layer 2 broadcast domains**.

Figure 74. Content Management Work Sheet

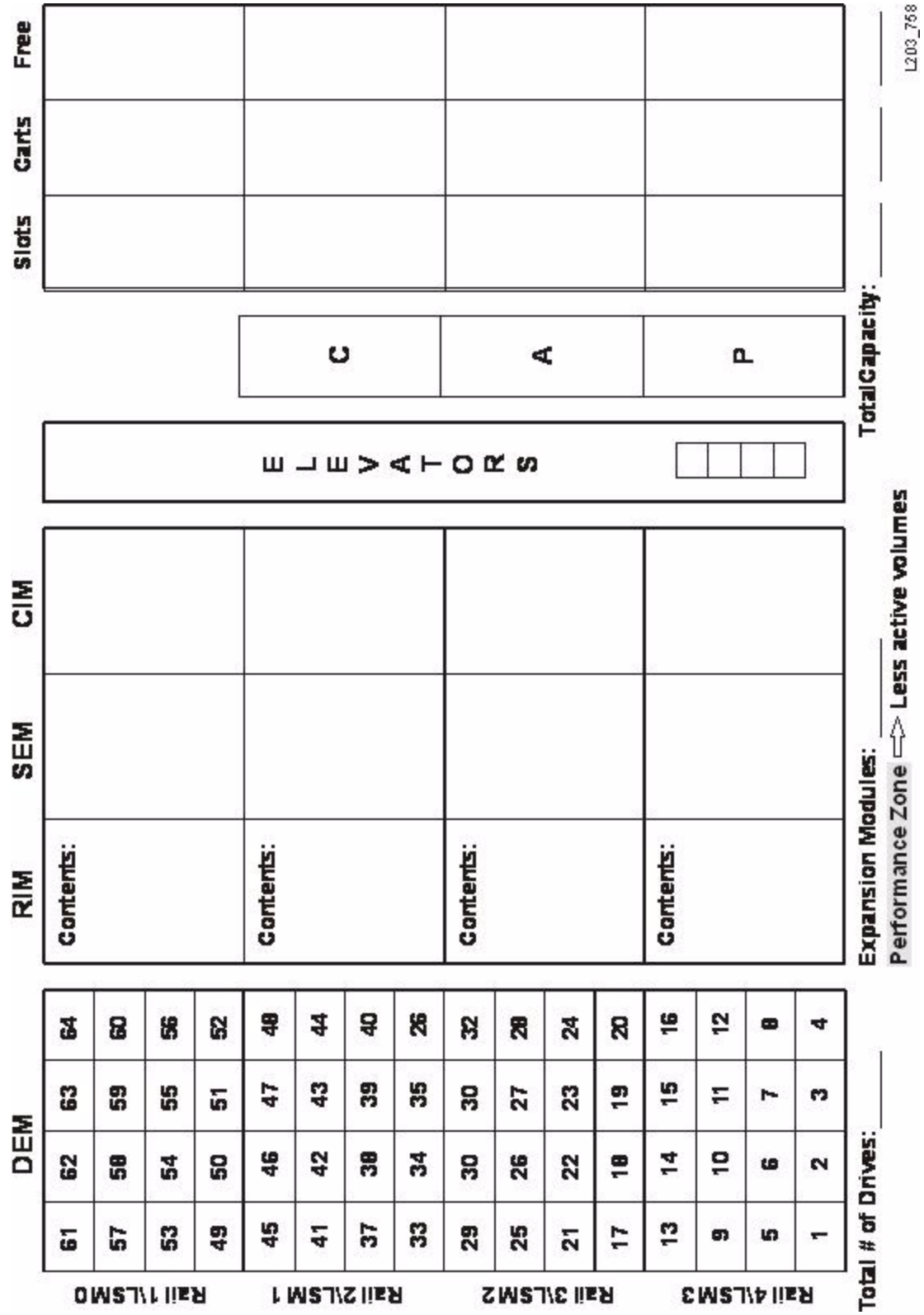
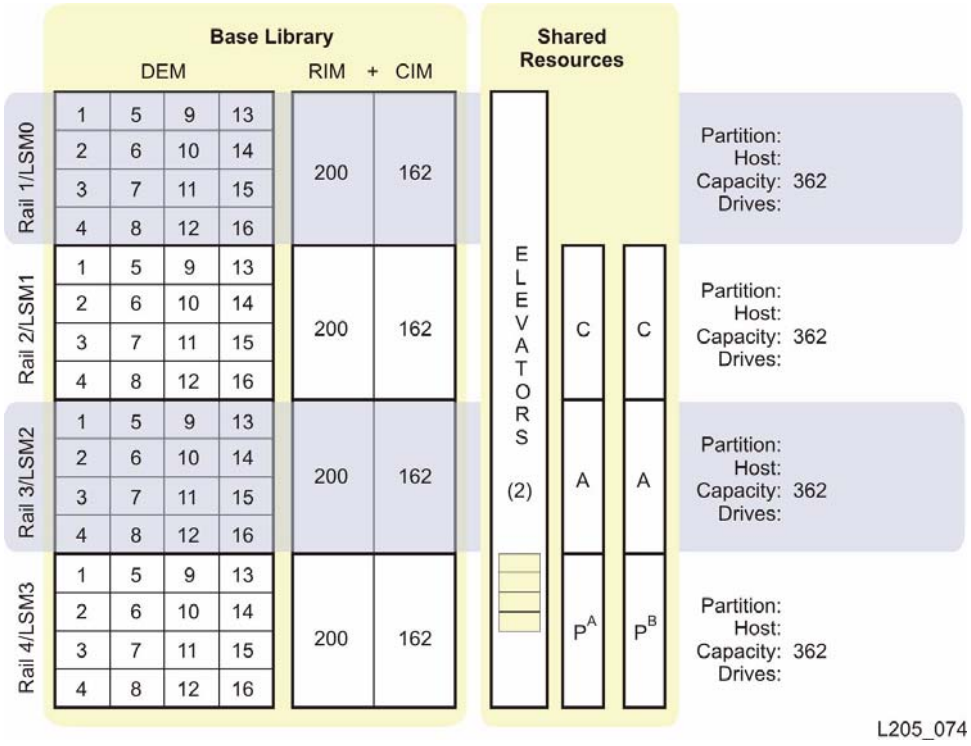


Figure 75. Partition Planning—Base Library



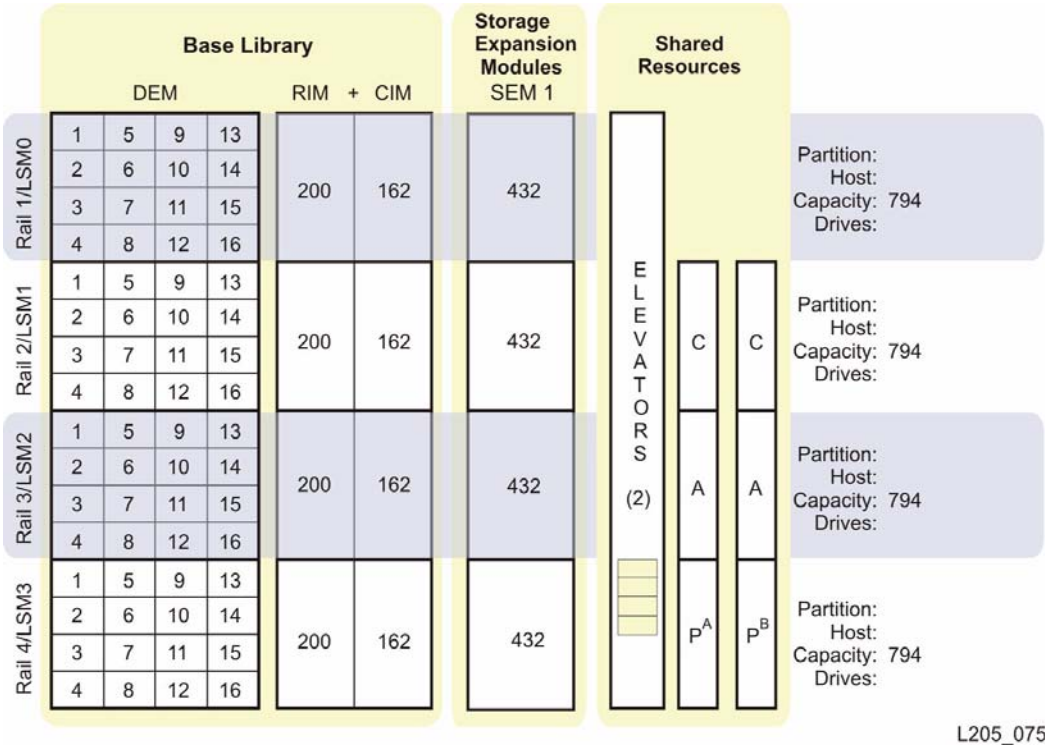
Rail 1
Partition ID
Hosts
ACSLS or HSC
ACS, LSM Address
Applications
Cartridge capacity
Free slots
Tape Drive types

Rail 2
Partition ID
Hosts
ACSLS or HSC
ACS, LSM Address
Applications
Cartridge capacity
Free slots
Tape Drive types

Rail 3
Partition ID
Hosts
ACSLS or HSC
ACS, LSM Address
Applications
Cartridge capacity
Free slots
Tape Drive types

Rail 4
Partition ID
Hosts
ACSLS or HSC
ACS, LSM Address
Applications
Cartridge capacity
Free slots
Tape Drive types

Figure 76. Partition Planning—One Expansion Module



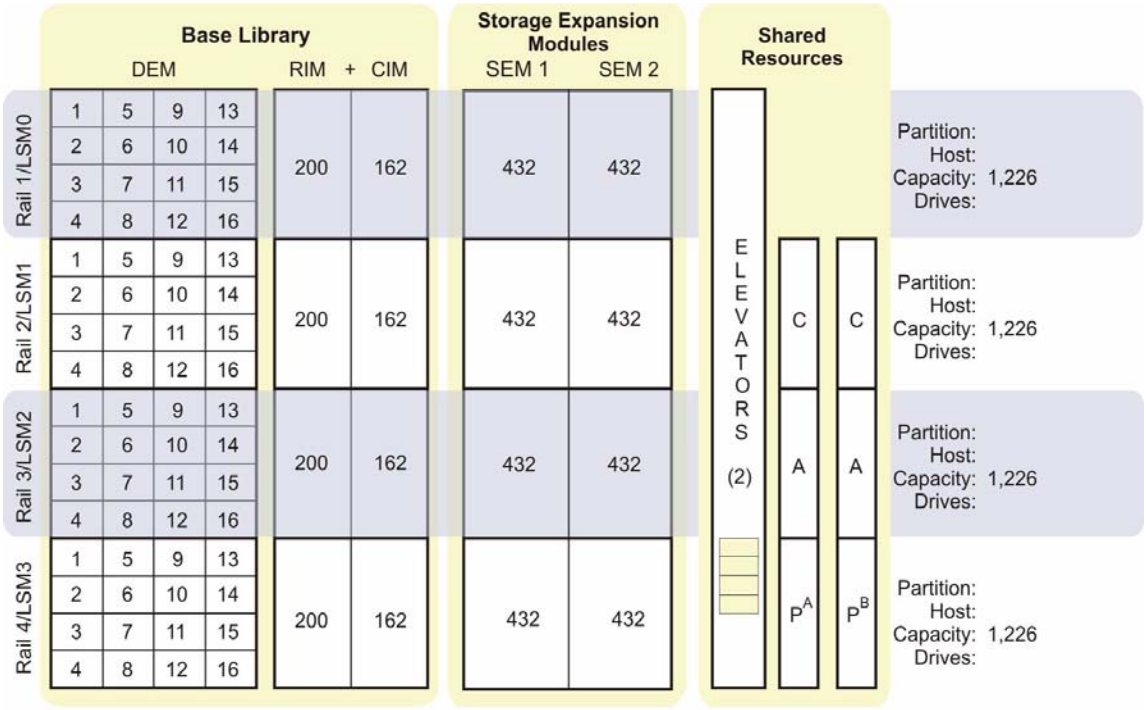
Rail 1
Partition ID
Hosts
ACSLS or HSC
ACS, LSM Address
Applications
Cartridge capacity
Free slots
Tape Drive types

Rail 2
Partition ID
Hosts
ACSLS or HSC
ACS, LSM Address
Applications
Cartridge capacity
Free slots
Tape Drive types

Rail 3
Partition ID
Hosts
ACSLS or HSC
ACS, LSM Address
Applications
Cartridge capacity
Free slots
Tape Drive types

Rail 4
Partition ID
Hosts
ACSLS or HSC
ACS, LSM Address
Applications
Cartridge capacity
Free slots
Tape Drive types

Figure 77. Partition Planning—Two Expansion Modules



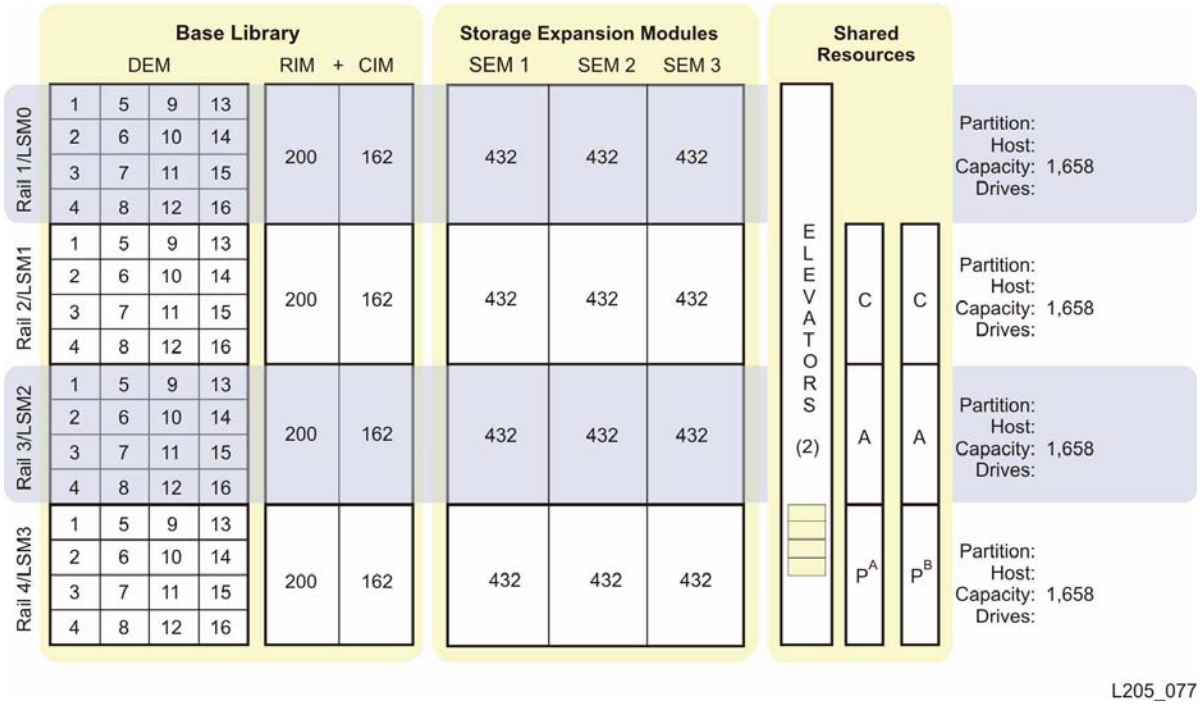
Rail 1
Partition ID
Hosts
ACSLS or HSC
ACS, LSM Address
Applications
Cartridge capacity
Free slots
Tape Drive types

Rail 2
Partition ID
Hosts
ACSLS or HSC
ACS, LSM Address
Applications
Cartridge capacity
Free slots
Tape Drive types

Rail 3
Partition ID
Hosts
ACSLS or HSC
ACS, LSM Address
Applications
Cartridge capacity
Free slots
Tape Drive types

Rail 4
Partition ID
Hosts
ACSLS or HSC
ACS, LSM Address
Applications
Cartridge capacity
Free slots
Tape Drive types

Figure 78. Partition Planning—Three Expansion Modules



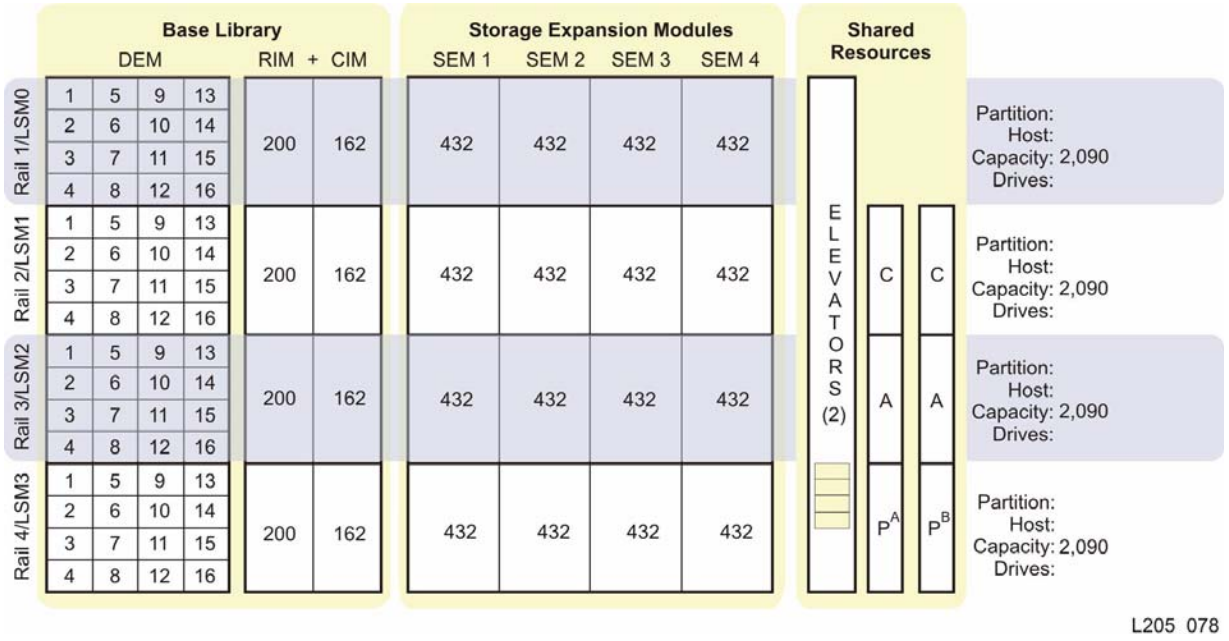
Rail 1
Partition ID
Hosts
ACSLS or HSC
ACS, LSM Address
Applications
Cartridge capacity
Free slots
Tape Drive types

Rail 2
Partition ID
Hosts
ACSLS or HSC
ACS, LSM Address
Applications
Cartridge capacity
Free slots
Tape Drive types

Rail 3
Partition ID
Hosts
ACSLS or HSC
ACS, LSM Address
Applications
Cartridge capacity
Free slots
Tape Drive types

Rail 4
Partition ID
Hosts
ACSLS or HSC
ACS, LSM Address
Applications
Cartridge capacity
Free slots
Tape Drive types

Figure 79. Partition Planning—Four Expansion Modules



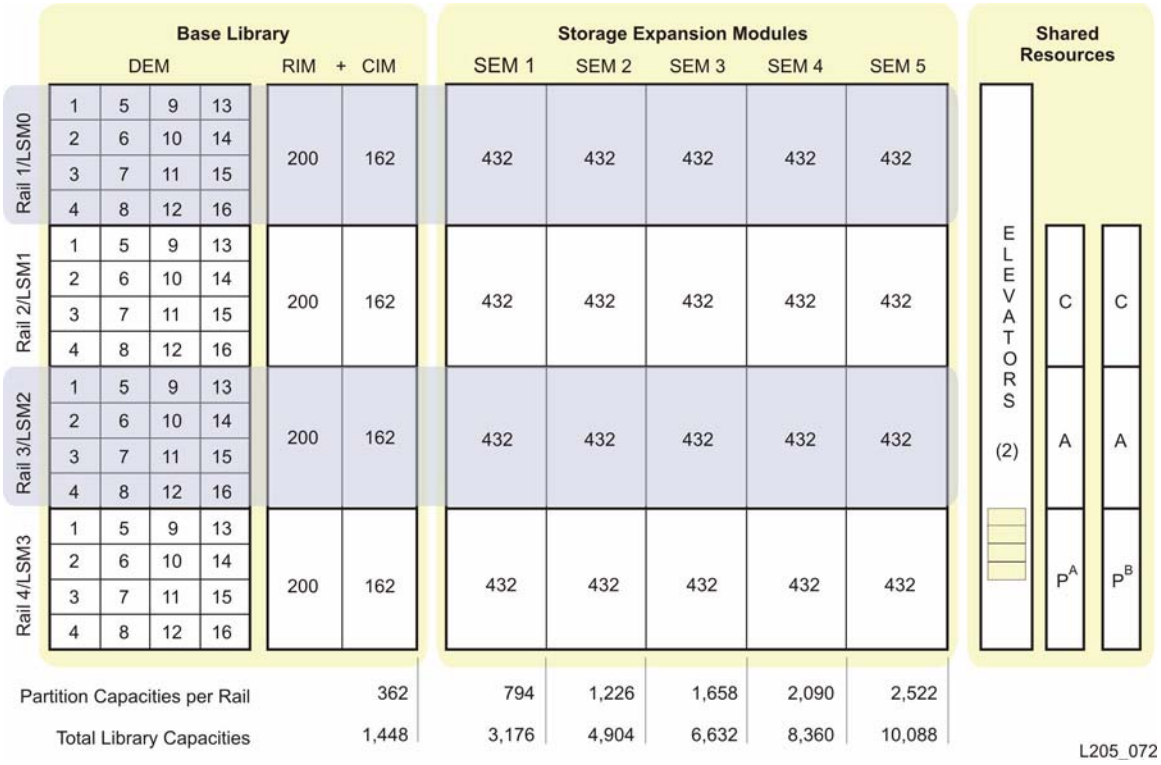
Rail 1
Partition ID
Hosts
ACSLS or HSC
ACS, LSM Address
Applications
Cartridge capacity
Free slots
Tape Drive types

Rail 2
Partition ID
Hosts
ACSLS or HSC
ACS, LSM Address
Applications
Cartridge capacity
Free slots
Tape Drive types

Rail 3
Partition ID
Hosts
ACSLS or HSC
ACS, LSM Address
Applications
Cartridge capacity
Free slots
Tape Drive types

Rail 4
Partition ID
Hosts
ACSLS or HSC
ACS, LSM Address
Applications
Cartridge capacity
Free slots
Tape Drive types

Figure 80. Partition Planning—Five Expansion Modules



Rail 1
Partition ID
Hosts
ACSLS or HSC
ACS, LSM Address
Applications
Cartridge capacity
Free slots
Tape Drive types

Rail 2
Partition ID
Hosts
ACSLS or HSC
ACS, LSM Address
Applications
Cartridge capacity
Free slots
Tape Drive types

Rail 3
Partition ID
Hosts
ACSLS or HSC
ACS, LSM Address
Applications
Cartridge capacity
Free slots
Tape Drive types

Rail 4
Partition ID
Hosts
ACSLS or HSC
ACS, LSM Address
Applications
Cartridge capacity
Free slots
Tape Drive types

Redundant Electronics Network Entries Worksheet

When preparing the network and connections—as a best practice—complete a network entries worksheet for each port of the SL8500 library.

Description			IP Address
HBC 1	Port 2B	Host name to Port 2B	
		HBC Card Port 2B	
		Gateway Port 2B	
		Netmask	
	Port 2A	Host name to Port 2A	
		HBC Card Port 2A	
		Gateway Port 2A	
		Netmask	
HBC 2	Port 2B	Host name to Port 2B	
		HBC Card Port 2B	
		Gateway Port 2B	
		Netmask	
	Port 2A	Host name to Port 2A	
		HBC Card Port 2A	
		Gateway Port 2A	
		Netmask	

Important:

- When connecting more than one interface to an SL8500 library, the connections should be through **different subnets** for redundancy.

  If one subnet should fail, communications between the hosts and the libraries continue over the other subnet.

Glossary

This glossary defines terms and abbreviations in this and other SL8500 library related publications.

Numerics

2N A power configuration that gives the Product Name library full AC and DC power redundancy. This configuration allows AC line cords on two separate circuits, either of which can power the entire system. *See also* N+1.

A

access door A door on either side of the front facade through which service personnel can enter the library. Optional CAPs are attached to the right access door.

accessory rack An area of the drive and electronics module that is used for Product Name library electronic and power equipment and for other standard 19-inch rack-mount electronic equipment. Up to four racks are permitted in the electronics/drive assembly. Rack-mount equipment must be on the approved equipment list.

ACSLS *See* Automated Cartridge System Library Software.

Any Cartridge Any Slot™ technology The StorageTek technology that allows seamless sharing of different media types and drives without hard partitions.

array A partitioned unit that holds multiple objects, such as cartridges or tape drive tray assemblies.

Automated Cartridge System Library Software (ACSLS) Software that manages ACS library contents and controls ACS library hardware to mount and dismount cartridges on ACS drives.

B

barcode line scan camera A component of the robot that is used for cartridge identification and position calibration.

C

camera In an Product Name library, one of two types:

- The barcode line scanner that is part of the robot hand assembly.
- The two LibCam monitoring cameras that display activity inside the library on the touch screen operator control panel.

CAP *See* cartridge access port.

cartridge access port (CAP) A device in the library that allows an operator to insert or remove cartridges during library operations.

cartridge array An array that holds multiple cartridges. The SL8500 library contains 8, 13, or 14 slots, depending on their location.

cartridge tape A container holding magnetic tape that can be processed without separating the tape from the container.

The library uses data, diagnostic, and cleaning cartridges. These cartridges are not interchangeable.

cleaning cartridge A tape cartridge that contains special material to clean the tape path in a transport or drive.

CLI Command line interface.

CompactPCI (cPCI®) Industry standard bus used for card-to-card bus expansion.

controller The module that houses the controls for the elevators, CAPs, turntables, and service safety door.

cPCI *See* CompactPCI.

customer interface module (CIM) The front module of the SL8500 library at which the customer has access to the touch screen operator panel and CAPs, and service personnel have access to the library and service bay.

D

data cartridge A term used to distinguish a cartridge onto which a tape drive may write data from a cartridge used for cleaning or diagnostic purposes.

diagnostic cartridge A data cartridge with a “DG” label that is used for diagnostic routines.

drive and electronics module The module in an Product Name library that contains the electronics control module, power distribution units (PDUs), power supplies, accessory racks and equipment, and tape drives for the library.

drive bay A partitioned section of the tape drive array assembly that holds one tape drive tray assembly.

drop-off slots Slots used to hold a cartridge in the event of a robot failure that occurs while a cartridge is in the robot hand.

dWWN *See* dynamic World Wide Name.

dynamic World Wide Name A feature that applies dynamic names to network devices rather than fixed names. When a dWWN-named device is replaced, it is assigned the same WWN as the one replaced, preventing reconfiguration of the network.

E

ECM *See* electronics control module.

electronics control module (ECM) The assembly that:

- Processes commands from a host system
- Coordinates the activities of robots, elevators, pass-thru ports, and tape drives
- Monitors status inputs from sensors and switches

elevator The device that transports cartridges vertically, across rail boundaries.

emergency power-off (EPO) (1) A safety scheme that allows a “power down” of a subsystem or a system as a whole instead of powering it down component-by-component.

(2) A safety switch on a machine or in a data center that allows a user to immediately power down a machine or a data center power supply by cutting off the external source power.

Emergency Robotics Stop A button on the Customer Interface Module keypad that removes power to the robotics power grid, leaving the remaining library power on.

Enterprise Systems Connection (ESCON) A set of fiber-optic based products and services developed by IBM that allows devices within a storage environment to be dynamically configured. A channel-to-control unit I/O interface that uses optical cables as a transmission medium.

ESCON *See* Enterprise Systems Connection.

Ethernet A local-area, packet-switched network technology. Originally designed for coaxial cable, it is now found running over shielded, twisted-pair cable. Ethernet is a 10- or 100-megabytes-per-second LAN.

export The action in which the library places a cartridge into the cartridge access port so that the operator can remove the cartridge from the library.
Synonymous with eject.

F

failover The act of moving to a secondary or redundant path when the primary path fails.

Fibre Channel A bidirectional, full-duplex, point-to-point, serial data channel structured for high performance capacity. The Fibre Channel is an interconnection of multiple communication ports, called N_Ports. These N_Ports are interconnected by a switching network, called a fabric, to a point-to-point link, or an arbitrated loop.

Fibre Channel is a generalized transport mechanism with no protocol of its own. A Fibre Channel does not have a native input/output command set, but can transport existing Upper Level Protocols (ULP) such as SCSI and IPI. Fibre Channel operates at speeds of 100 MB per second (full speed), 50 MB per second (half speed), 25 MB (quarter speed), or 12.5 MB (eighth speed). Fibre Channel operates over distances of up to 100 m over copper media or up to 10 km over optical links.

fibre connection (FICON) An IBM S/390-based channel architecture that provides up to 256 channels in a single connection, each having a capacity of 100 MB per second.

FICON *See* fibre connection.

G

get An activity in which a robot obtains a cartridge from a slot or drive.

gripper (1) The portion of the hand assembly that grasps the cartridge.

H

hand assembly A part of the library robot whose function is to grasp cartridges and move them between storage slots and drives. A bar-code line scan camera on the hand assembly reads cartridge volume labels.

HandBot™ High performance small robot. Four or eight HandBots are used in an SL8500 library. *Contrast with* TallBot™.

HBZ module *See* controller.

HLI-PRC address A four-digit, comma-separated value (L,P,R,C) that represents LSM, Panel, Row, and Column. This addressing scheme is used by host LMU interface (HLI) clients, including ACSLS and HSC, to represent library components accessible to those HLI clients.

host audit The process of updating the cartridge VOLIDs and locations (collected by a security audit) in a host CDS. This audit is initiated by a host command.

hot swap Removal and replacement of a system component while system power remains on and system operations continue. *Contrast with* cold swap. *Contrast with* hot-pluggable.

Synonymous with online servicing.

hot-pluggable The capability that allows a service representative to replace FRUs while power to the FRU is maintained. This feature allows hardware maintenance actions and hardware upgrades to proceed without disrupting subsystem availability. *Contrast with* hot swap.

I

import The process of placing a cartridge into the cartridge access port so that the library can insert it into a storage slot. *Synonymous with* enter.

interlock switch A switch that disconnects power to library mechanisms, excluding tape drives, when the front door is opened.

initial program load (IPL) A process that activates a machine reset and loads system programs to prepare a computer system for operation. Processors having diagnostic programs activate these programs at initial program load execution. Devices running firmware usually reload the functional firmware from a diskette or disk drive at initial program load execution. *Synonymous with* initial microprogram load (IML).

K

keypad interface *See* membrane keypad.

L

LibCam Monitoring A feature that provides two cameras, one for each leg of the horseshoe, for viewing activity inside the library. The touch screen operator control panel is required. *Not available at this time. Do not use this definition*.

library camera *See* LibCam Monitoring.

library complex Two or more Product Name libraries attached to each other with PTPs.

library console *See* Library Console™.

library controller The HBC card within the Product Name library that controls operations and communicates with the operator panel.

library operator panel *See* touch screen operator control panel.

library storage module (LSM) A term used to identify each level of the SL8500, including the rail assembly, robotics, tape drives, power supplies, electronics modules, and accessory rack. The LSMs are numbered top-to-bottom, 0–3.

M

magazine A removable array that holds cartridges and is placed into the cartridge access port (CAP). Each SL8500 CAP holds up to three magazines, each of which holds up to 13 cartridges.

master (pass-thru port) The side of a pass-thru port (PTP) that contains the electronics that control the actions of the PTP. *See also* standby (pass-thru port).

membrane keypad A keypad mounted on the front facade used to monitor the status of the SL8500 library and to operate the CAPs.

N

N+1 A power configuration that provides AC power and redundant DC power by adding a second DC power supply to each DC bus. *See also* 2N.

O

operator panel *See* touch screen operator control panel.

P

pass-thru port (PTP) A mechanism that enables a cartridge to pass through from one library to another in a multiple modular library complex.

PCI Peripheral component interconnect.

PDU *See* power distribution unit.

physical library A single Product Name library consisting of a customer interface module, robotics interface module, and a

drive and electronics module, with one to five storage expansion modules optional. *See also* logical library.

power distribution unit (PDU) A device for the distribution of AC line power from one inlet to multiple outlets. Multiple PDUs provide higher availability because the power continues if one PDU (or its alternating current [AC] source if the PDUs use separate AC sources) loses power.

power grid A power circuit that minimizes power failures that cause the library to cease operations. An Product Name library has five power grids, two for AC power and three for DC power.

power/communication bus rail A rail that sits on the robot track to provide 48 VDC power and communication to the robot.

primary library interface (PLI) The communication path between the operator panel and the library controller (the HBC card.) This consists of Ethernet with TCP/IP and XML.

put An activity in which a robot places a cartridge into a slot or drive.

R

RaceTrack™ architecture The design and implementation of the SL8500 library's multiple high performance robotics.

rail That portion of the upper robot track assembly that provides power and communication to the robot.

rail assembly The mechanism on which the robot travels between cartridge arrays and tape drives.

reach mechanism A component of the robot that moves the gripper to get or put a cartridge at a designated location.

RealTime Growth™ capability The capability to add pass-thru ports dynamically while the library is operating.

Redundant Electronics Redundant electronics is a hardware activated and software controlled optional feature for the SL8500 Library. This feature supplies automatic and manual switch over for failing HBC and HBT controller cards.

remote operator console The customer's operator panel that interfaces with the PLI. *See also* security software layer.

reserved slots Cartridge slots that are used only for cleaning and diagnostic cartridges and as drop-off slots.

robot A mechanism that moves horizontally along a track in the Product Name to transport tape cartridges to and from other locations in the library. *Also called* an HandBot or TallBot.

robotics interface module (RIM) The module containing the curved rails and pass-through port (PTP) assemblies. *See also* RaceTrack™.

S

security audit The process of reading and storing in Product Name library memory the VOLIDs and locations of all cartridges in the library. *See also* host audit.

service area An area between the access doors of the customer interface assembly and the service safety door in which an inoperable robot is stored for service and other mechanisms can be repaired or replaced.

service safety door A motor-driven barrier that separates the service areas of the front interface assembly from the rest of the library so that service personnel can safely repair or replace failed library mechanisms while the library continues normal operations. *Synonymous with* safety barrier.

SL8500 *See* SL8500 modular library system.

SL8500 address A five-digit, comma-separated value (L,C,R,S,W) that represents Library, Rail, Column, Side, and Row. This addressing scheme is used by SL8500 firmware and internal communications to represent all devices and locations within the library.

slot Location in the library in which a tape cartridge is stored. *Synonymous with* cell.

standby (pass-thru port) The side of a pass-thru port (PTP) that operates in response to actions initiated by the master side of the PTP. *See also* master (pass-thru port).

storage expansion module An optional module for the Product Name library that provides up to 1728 additional cartridge storage slots. Up to five modules can be attached to each SL8500 library.

Library Console™ The operator panel software application used for the SL8500.

RaceTrack™ The design and implementation of the SL8500 library's multiple high performance robotics.

RealTime Growth™ The capability to add pass-thru ports dynamically while the library is operating.

SL8500 modular library system An automated tape library comprised of:

- Customer interface module
- Robotics interface module
- Drive and electronics module
- Storage expansion module (optional)

T

TallBot™ High capacity tall robot. One or two TallBots are used in an SL8500 library. *Contrast with* HandBot™.

tape drive An electromechanical device that moves magnetic tape and includes mechanisms for writing and reading data to and from the tape.

tape drive tray assembly The mechanical structure that houses a tape drive, fan assembly, power and logic cards, cables, and connectors for data and logic cables. *Synonymous with* drive tray assembly.

touch screen operator control panel An optional feature consisting of a flat-panel display with a touch screen interface and a panel mount computer. This feature is attached to the front facade.

turntable A mechanism that transfers cartridges between the aisles within a single library.

U

U A standard unit of measurement of vertical space inside a rack-mount cabinet equal to 44.5 mm (1.75 in.).

unlocked In the SL8500, status indicating that software has made a CAP available for operator use. An LED is lit when a CAP is unlocked.

V

vacancy plate A plate that covers an unused bay, such as a drive bay or power supply bay.

W

World Wide Name A 64-bit integer that identifies a Fibre Channel port. *See also* dynamic World Wide Name (dWWN).

wrist (1) A mechanism in the robot assembly that allows the robot to access the outer and inner storage walls.

Index

Numerics

2N power configuration
    about the, 11
    block diagram of, 11
    feature codes for, 123
3 of 9 code, 168
39-slot cartridge access port, 20
9310
    library specifications, 182
9741e Drive Cabinet, 183
9840
    cartridge specifications, 163
    tape cartridge, 162
    tape drive, 156
9940
    tape cartridge, 163

A

AC power
    connections, 15
    EPO switches, 28, 53
    factors and concerns, 81
    feature codes, 123
    site planning, 89
accessory rack
    about the, 25
    feature codes, 121
    planning guidelines, 87
    power block diagram, 87
ACSLS
    feature codes, 152
    general information gathering, 67
    introduction to, 47
    levels, 149
    versions, 35, 210
ACSLS, software compatibility, 41
activation password, 103
address, tape drives
    dWWN, 128, 159
addressing
    scheme, 5
adjustable jacks, 113
agencies, safety and ESD, 55
alley limitations, 79
American Eagle, cartridge labels by, 52
Amperes, finding values for, 175
ANSI label specifications, 52
Any Cartridge, Any Slot, 52, 170
applications, 64
archive software, types of, 65
archiving cartridges, 137
ARCserve, 151
arrays
    locating the cartridges, 4
    targets, 4
ASM, 151
assessment, 213
audit
    time estimates, 18
auditing and non-labeled cartridges, 52
Auto Clean, 147
Automated Cartridge System Library Software
    feature codes, 152
    introduction to, 47
    levels, 149
Automatic Identification Manufacturers specification, 169

B

backup and archive software types of, 65
barcode labels, 168
base configuration
    description of, 1
block kit assembly, 106
Branch Circuit Requirements, 104
British Thermal Unit, finding values for, 177
Btu/hr, 85
building code requirements, 82

C

CA BrightStor, 151
cable routing, 94, 95
cable survey, 75
cables
  ESCON, 131
  Ethernet, 129
  interface, 129
  plenum, 129
  riser, 129
cabling tape drives, 100
camera feature, 122
cameras
  optional feature code for, 122
Canadian Emissions, 55
Canadian Standards Association, 55
CAP
  about the, 20
  feature codes, 120
  optimization guidelines, 140
capacity
  CAP, 20
  cartridge tapes, 161
  tape drives, 155
Capacity on Demand
  using ACSLS, 149
  with HSC, 148
carpet, survey question, 81
cartridge
  access port, 20
  survey, 70
cartridge access port, 20
cartridge access ports
  enter/eject cartridges, 137
  guidelines, 140
  optimization, 138
cartridges
  data locations, 4
  optimization, 137
  per square foot/meter, 181
  placement in cells, 4
Cartridges Access Port, ordering, 120
cautions, meaning of, 229, 230
CB Scheme, 55
CE Mark, 55
cells
  capacities, 7
  locations in a library, 4
  partitioning, 211
  planning, 211, 213
  targets, 4
checklists
  applications, 64
  before you install, 79
  cables and connectors, 75
  cartridge tapes, 70
  connectivity, 71
  data base, 68
  ESCON, 73
  existing hardware, 69
  FICON, 74
  library, 69
  media, 70
  network, 71
  site planning, 79
  system assurance, 57
  system configuration, 62
  tape drives, 69
circuit breakers, ratings, 15
Class 1 Laser Products, 56
cleaning cartridges, 172
clearances, 97
CLI, 99
Client System Component, 42, 47
clustering
  cartridges, 137
  drives, 138
code, 17
Code 39 Barcode Specification, 52
Code 39 label standard, 168
code, functional, 17
Colorflex, labels by, 52
combining workloads, 136
Command Line Interface Port, 99
communication
  HBC controller, 16
CommVault Galaxy, 151
comparison
  capacity, 181
  power requirements, 185
comparisons
  library specifications, 182
  media, 174
comparisons between libraries, 179, 182
components
  Host Software, 43
  robotic, 19

software, 41
library management applications, 41
Storage Management, 43
conduit elbows, 14, 89
configuration
AC power options, 10
flash memory, 16
tape drive, 100
configuring
elevators, 21
partitions, 211
connections
interface cable types, 129
power, 15
connectivity, 61
factors for pre-installation, 82
interface cables, 129
connectors
and power plugs, 15
Fibre Channel, 130
power, 15
console, library, 27
content management
cartridges, 137
drives, 137
elevators, 139
media, 137
pass-thru port, 139
philosophy, 135
planning, 140, 213
rails, 136
tape cartridges, 137
tape drives, 138
contrasts between libraries, 179, 182
conversions, of electrical values, 175, 187
Cooling Requirements, 86
co-planar, 92
crossover cable, 106
CSA, 55
CSC
description, 47
PTFs, 148
C-Tick Mark, 55
customer
applications, 64
contact sheet, 58
floor requirements, 105
hardware configuration, 69
platforms they use, 61
satisfaction and the
system assurance process, xix, 57
software, 64
system configuration, 63
Customer Interface Module
components in, 3
length of, 84
customer interface module (CIM)
capacity, 9, 211
cut-outs, floor, 80

D

Data Base Management Systems, types of, 68
data base questions, 68
data cartridge
capacities, 161
specifications, 161
Data Facility/System Managed Storage, 66
DC power
feature codes for the handbots, 124
grids, 13
delivery dock, 79
delivery of the hardware, 79
Department of Defense Disclaimers, 167
depths of the library, 84
DF/SMS, 66
diagnostic cartridges, 172
dimensions
for shipping, 108
directors, 74
ESCON, 73
FICON, 74
disclaimer, 161
distribution pad weight, 91
DLT
tape cartridges, 166
DLTtape, 166
dock availability, 79
domain, media labels, 170
door
cutouts, 94, 95
lock, 54
notches for cable routing, 94
safety for, 28, 54
switches and safety features, 53
doorway, height, 80
drive addresses

dWWN, 128, 159
Drive and Electronics Module, 3
length of, 84
planning, 98
drive and electronics module (DEM)
capacity, 9, 211
drive tray, 88
drives
dWWN requirement, 128
models supported, 51
duplicate VOLSERs, 209
dWWN
drive addressing, 128, 159
required for drives, 128
dynamic slots upgrades, 149

E

earthquakes, 86
ECM, 16, 99
EDP Trioptic, 173
eject
cartridges, 137
optimization, 137
Eject OK LEDs, 99
electrical conversions, 175, 187
electrician, 104
electromagnetic agencies, 55
Electronic Control Module
planning, 99
Electronics Control Module
overview, 16
elevators, 147
configuration, 21
content management, 139
description, 19
elevators, survey question, 79
ELS, 46
ELS, software compatibility, 41
EMC Law, 55
emergency robotic stop, 28, 53
EN60825-1, 56
encryption-capable, 51
Engineered Data Products, labels by, 52
Engineering Design Standard, 56
enter
cartridges, 137
optimization, 137
Enterprise Library Software, 46
Enterprise Systems Connection, definition of, 51
environmental factors and concerns, 81
error-free installation, xix, 57
ERS, 28, 53
ESCON
cables, 131
definition, 51
Director survey, 73
Ethernet
cables, part number for, 129
the physical interface, 29
European Community, 55
ExHPDM, 44
ExHPDM, software compatibility, 41
ExLM, 45
ExLM version, 210
Expansion Module
feature codes, 119
Expert Library Manager, 45
Expert Performance Reporter, 45
ExPR, 45
ExPR version, 210
ExPR, software compatibility, 41
Extended High Performance Data Mover, 44
extractor tool, used for power rails, 106

F

Fast Load capability, 19
FCC, 55
features
base power codes, 123
capacity, 9
fire suppression, 54, 101
lighting, 54
power supplies, robot, 124
robots, 124
safety, 53
Federal Communications Commission, 55
Fiber Connection, definition of, 51
Fibre Channel, 51
connector, 130
Fibre Channel switch survey, 72
FICON
definition of, 51
survey, 73
FICON Directors, 74
Fire Suppression System, comments about,

54, 101
firmware, 17
  downloading, 17
  flash memory versions, 16
firmware upgrade, 17
flash memory, 16
flash memory, discussed, 16
float
  enabling, 139
  optimization, 137
floor
  co-planar requirement/tolerance, 92
  customer, installation requirements, 105
  variations, 92
  weight capacity, 91, 105
floor cutouts, 93
floor planning template, 106
floor template, 91
floor tile cut-outs availability, 80
floor tile cutouts for routing, 94, 95
forklifts, 80
Front Frame Power Grid, 13
functional code, 17

H

HandBot configurations, 19
HandBots
  workload optimization, 138
handling factors, 79
hardware
  tools required for installation, 105
hardware configuration, customers, 69
HBC Card, 16, 99
HBK card, 16
HBT Card, 16, 99
Health Insurance Portability and Accountability Act, 167
height of the library, 84
height, library limits
  requirement/tolerance, 92
Hewlett-Packard LTO tape drives, 157
High Performance Robotics, 19
HLI–PRC, description of, 5
horizontal pass-thru operations, 22
host connections, 99
host interface connections, 29
host selection, 31, 228
Host Software Component, 43
Hot-Swap indicator, 99
HP
  DataProtector, 151
HP LTO
  description, 157
HSC
  description, 43
  feature codes, 153
  PTFs, 148
HSC, software compatibility, 41
HTTP Server, 44
Hubbell, plugs and connectors, 15
hubs and switches, 71
HVD, 128

I

IBM LTO
  description, 158
IBM TotalStorage 3580 LTO tape drives, 158
ICES, 55
impact testing, 56
inner walls, 4
installation
  Library Console, 103
  preparing for, 104
  site planning checklist, 79
  tool kit, 105
installing redundant HandBots, 138
Inter-character Gap for barcode labels, 168
interface
  cable routing, 94, 95
  cables, 129
  connections, 29
  types supported, 51
interior lighting, 54
interlocks, 54
internal addresses
  description, 5
interoperability, 61

J

jack assembly part number, 105
jacks, 113
JCL changes, 66
JES2, 66
JES3, 66

K

keypad, 26, 121
kilowatts, finding values for, 176
kit
    installation tools, 105
kVA, finding values for, 176
kW, finding values for, 176

L

label, laser product, 56
labels, 168
    ordering, 173
    requirements for, 170
laptop cross-over and serial cables, 106
laptop shelf, 106
laser product label, 56
laser-leveled before receiving, 80
LC to SC adapter, 130
Legato NetWorker, 151
lengths of modules, 84
lengths of the library, 84
Lib Station, software compatibility, 41
LibCam feature, 122
library
    capacities, 7
    capacities, cartridge tapes, 4
    codes for ordering, 117
    console, 27
    controller, 16
    features, 117
    firmware, 35, 210
    module types, 2
    moving, 114
    moving unpacked components, 110
    optional features, 117
    ordering, 117
    planning, 211
    system assurance, xix, 57, 212
Library Console
    CD part number, 103
    feature codes, 121
    loading software, 103
    memory requirements, 27
    software application, 103
library console, 27
library management software, types of, 65
library specifications, 182
library survey, 69
library to ceiling clearances, 97
library weights and measures, 84
LibraryStation, 48
    PTFs for, 148
licensed electrician, 104
lights, 54
Load Sharing Power Supplies
    about the, 13
    number required, 13
loading per pad, 183
logic cards, 16
LSM prefencing, 147
LTO
    cartridge types, 165
    HP drives, 157
    IBM drives, 158
    labels, 170
    media, 165
    tape cartridges, 165
    tapes, 165
LVD, 128

M

Main AC Power Distribution Unit Feature Codes, 123
Management Information Base. See MIB
management software, library management software, 143
managing cartridges
    for optimization, 137
mass of the library, 84
master PTP, 102
matrix and sales tools, 61
maximum
    height specification, 96
    possible configuration, 1
maximum capacity, 208
measurements, library, 84
media, 52, 165
    domain labels, 170
    ID labels, 170
    Service Center, 173
    survey, 70
media optimization, 137
media *See also* tape cartridge
Media Usage Disclaimer, 161
MIB

described
microcode, 17
minimizing pass-thru activity
for optimization, 139
minimum
current requirement, 15
height specification, 96
working area, 105
minimum capacity, 208
mixed media, 170
module
electronic cards, 16
module depths, individual, 84
modules
capacities, 9
Customer Interface, 3
planning, 211
Robotics Interface, 3
Storage Expansion, 3
modules in the library, 2
moving an installed library, 114
moving unpacked components, 110
MVS general information, 66, 67
MVS versions, 35, 210
MVS/CSC, 47

N

N+1 Power Distribution Unit, 10
NCO, 43, 148
Near Continuous Operation, 43, 148
network
SNMP, 49
survey, 71
network management software, types of, 65
non-labeled cartridges and the audit, 52
numbering, cartridge cell locations, 4

O

One Gigabit Fiber Optic
Cable Order Worksheet, 130
open systems software package, 47
operating systems and configurations, 62
operator panel
feature codes, 121
types of, 26
optimization guidelines
audits, 18
cartridges, 137
details, 135
elevators, 139
initialization, 18
media, 137
pass-thru ports, 139
planning, 76, 140
rails, 136
tape cartridges, 137
tape drives, 138
top rail, 136
options, AC power configurations, 10
order number, 210
ordering the library, 117
outer walls, 4
overhead clearances, 97
overview
Super DLT, 158

P

pad, weight per leveling, 91
pallet jacks, 80
pallets, 80
panel numbering, 6
panel, row, column addressing, 5
panel. *See* walls
panels, 26
panels, keypad and operator, 121
part number
installation tools, 106
Library Console CD, 103
tool kit, 105
part numbers
1 Gb fiber optic cables, 130
Ethernet cables, 129
Hubbell plugs and connectors, 15
partitioning
capacities, 208
definition, 35, 207
guidelines, 208
requirements, 210
partner contact sheet, 59
pass-thru port
feature codes, 122
model number, 122
requirements, 102

specifications, 84
pass-thru port planning, 102
Pass-thru Ports
configuration, 22
content management, 139
locations, 2
pass-thru ports
description, 22
pass-thru ports, optional feature code, 122
password
procedure for obtaining, 103
PDUs, 10
philosophy for content management, 135
photo-electric smoke detector, 53, 101
physical
concerns for site planning, 80
placement factors for site planning, 80
physical audit, 18
physical planning, 84
placement of data cartridges, 4
planning
AC power, 89
checklist, 79
physical, 84
shipping weights and dimensions, 108
planning for content, 140, 213
planning meetings, for system assurance, 57
platform configurations, 61
plenum cables, 129
plugs and connectors, 15
plugs, for power, 15
populating the rails, 136
Powderhorn and SL8500 power requirements, 185
power
AC configurations, 10
accessory rack, 87
configuration drawing, 10
configurations, 10
connections, 15
connectors, 15
distribution units, 10
factors for pre-installation planning, 81
options, 12
planning, 89
plugs, 15
power rails, extractor tool, 106
pre-installation planning
AC power, 89
checklist, 79
physical, 84
shipping weights and dimensions, 108
preparing for the installation, 104
process, for system assurance, xix, 57, 212
PTFs, 148
PTP
installation considerations, 22
PTP management, 139
PTPs
description, 22
requirements, 102

R

rack
descriptions, 25
feature codes, 121
rack hardware kit, 106
rack requirements, 87
RAID configuration, what kind, 68
rail optimization, 136
raised floor loading, 183
ramps or slopes, 79
recirculation, 86
regulatory agencies, 55
remote console, 27
remote site planning, 82
remote support, 115
replacing existing libraries, 69
requirements
for the system assurance process, 57
reserved slots
capacities, 9
riser cables, 129
Robot and Pass-thru Port Power Grid, 13
robot configurations, 19
robot feature codes, 120
robot power supplies, 124
robotic rail assemblies, descriptions, 19
Robotics Interface Module
length of, 84
robotics interface module (RIM)
capacity, 9, 211
Robotics Interface Module, components in, 3
routing for interface cables, 94
RS232 Serial Port, 99

S

safety
agencies, 55
barrier, 54
door, feature code for, 120
features, 53
laser product label, 56
Sarbanes-Oxley Act, 167
SC Duplex connectors, 130
SC to LC adapter, 130
scratch
cartridge optimization, 137
SCSI tape drives, 128
SDLT
definition of, 51
SDLT, tape types I and II, 166
SDP, 115
Seagate
cartridge tape, 165
Securities Exchange Commission, 167
security system, 103
security, obtaining a password, 103
seismic compatibility, 86
separating rails, 136
serial cable, 106
Service Delivery Platform, 115
service mode, 28, 53
service safety door, 54, 120
shipping
dimensions, 108
pallets, 80
shock tests, 56
Simple Network Management Protocol, 49
site planning checklist, 79
SL8500 library complex, 22
SLC
firmware requirements, 210
slopes, 92
slot upgrades, 149
slots
addressing, 5
capacities, 7
cells, xix
partitioning, 211
planning, 211, 213
SMC, 42, 43
SMC, software compatibility, 41
smoke detector, 53, 101
SNMP, 49
software
library management applications, 41
software components, 41
software, library management, 143
Solaris, loading Library Console, 103
space between the walls, 4
specifications, 182
sport cartridge, 164
square foot/meter of the library, 182
ST connectors, 131
standby mode, 99
stand-by, PTP, 102
steps for partitioning, 212
storage area network, existing, 71
Storage Expansion Module
capacity, 9
components in, 3
length of, 84
number of cartridge slots in, 3
Storage Management Component, 42, 43
storage media, 52
StorageTek
contact sheet, 59
HTTP Server, 44
Technical Excellence Center, 115
Super DLT
description, 51, 158
drive specifications, 158
label requirements, 170
overview, 158
tape cartridges, 166
supply reel, 162
supported tape drives, 51
survey, 74
switches and hubs
existing network components, 71
Syncsort Backup Express, 151
system assurance
customer contact sheet, 58
planning meeting, 57
process overview, xix, 57, 212
StorageTek contact sheet, 59
system configuration worksheet, 63
system power distribution units, 10

T

T10000
cleaning cartridges, 164
description, 157
labels, 170
tape cartridges, 164
T9840
description, 156
tape cartridges, 162
T9940
description, 156
labels, 170
tape cartridges, 163
take-up reels, 162
tape cartridge content management, 137
tape cartridges
9840, 162
9940, 163
Any Cartridge, Any Slot, 170
comparisons, 174
DLT, 166
labels, 168
LTO, 165
ordering, 173
Super DLT, 166
T10000, 164
tape drive
content management, 138
planning, 98
survey, 69
tape drive controller, 16
Tape Drive Power Grid, 13
tape drive power kit, 106
tape drives
HP LTO, 157
HVD, 128
IBM LTO, 158
LVD, 128
model numbers, 128
partitioning, 208
SCSI, 128
specifications, 156
supported models, 51
T10000, 157
T9840, 156
T9940, 156
tape drives *See* drives and specific drive manufacturer
targets, 4
targets, firmware loading, 17
tasks for partitioning, 212
team members, 212
TEC, 115
Technical Excellence Center, 115
terminal block, 89
terminology, 179
terminology in manual, xix
Tivoli Storage Manager, 151
tolerance, floor, 92
tools
required for installation, 105
top rail usage, 136, 140
torque specifications, 104
total area, area of the library, 182
total weight of the library, for comparison, 182
TotalStorage 3580, 158
Touch Screen Operator Panel, 121
tray, tape drive, 88
Tricode, labels by, 52
T-Series
T10000, 157
T9840, 156
T9940, 156
TUV Rheinland, 55
Two Gigabit Fiber Optic Cable Order Worksheet, 130

U

UL, 55
Ultrium cartridges, 165
Underwriters Laboratories, 55
Uniform Symbology Specification, 169
unpacked components, 110
upgrade number, 210
upgrades, slots (Capacity on Demand), 149
upgrading firmware, 17

V

VA, finding values for, 176
variations, floor, 92
verified audit, 18
VERITAS NetBackup, 151
vertical pass-thru operations, 21

vibration testing, 56
virtual audit, 18
VLAN, 205
VM version, 35, 210
VolSafe, 164, 167
VOLSER, 168
VOLSER, description of a volume serial number, 173
VOLSERs, 209
Volts, finding values for, 175
volume serial number, 168
volume serial numbers, 173
Voluntary Control Council
    for Interference, 55
VPN, 205
VSM, software compatibility, 41
VTCS, software compatibility, 41
VTL, software compatibility, 41

W

walls, space between, 4
Watts, 185
Watts, finding values for, 175
WebCam feature, 122
weight
    floor capacity, 91, 105
weights of the individual modules, 84
weights of the library, 84
width of the library, 84
Windows, loading
    Library Console, 103
working area, 105
workload optimization, 136
worksheet
    1Gb cables, 130
    system configuration, 63
WORM, 167
write once, read many, 167
Writeline, labels by, 52

Oracle Corporation
Worldwide Headquarters
500 Oracle Parkway
Redwood Shores, CA 94065
U.S.A